



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



EducT 918.99.203



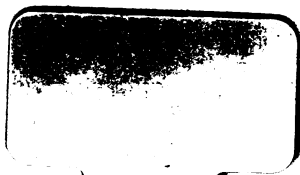
3 2044 097 078 190

HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY



FROM THE LIBRARY OF  
EDWIN WILLIAM FRIEND

DECEMBER 10, 1936



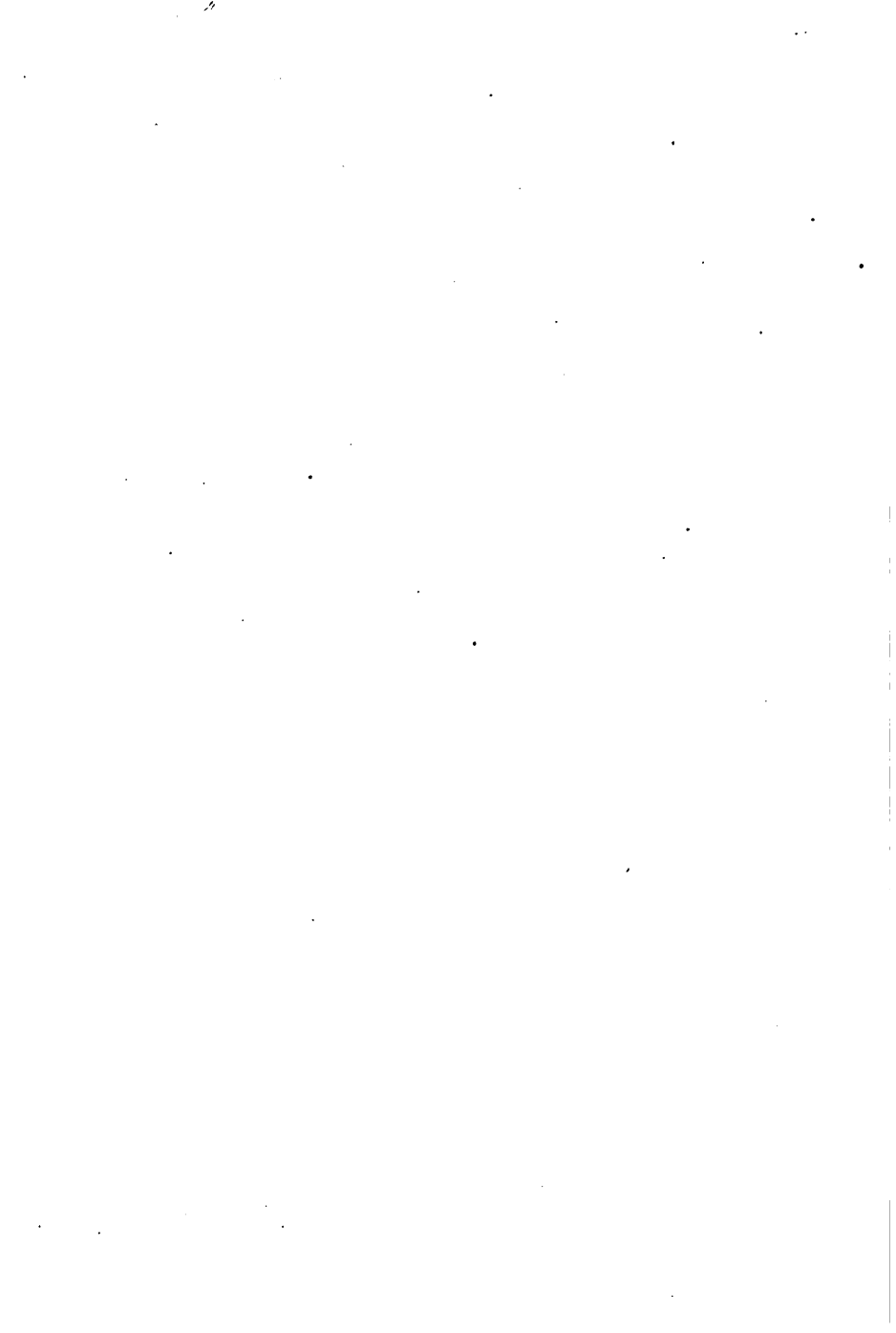
Edwin Fried.

3222 N. Dix St.

Indfil's, Ind.

Indfil's High School.

Home.



A

# LATIN GRAMMAR

BY

CHARLES E. BENNETT

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN CORNELL UNIVERSITY

ALLYN AND BACON

Boston and Chicago

EducT 918.99.203  
v

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
FROM THE LIBRARY OF  
EDWIN WILLIAM FRIEND  
DECEMBER 10, 1936

First edition printed February, 1895.  
Reprinted April and September, 1895; April, 1896;  
July, 1897; April, 1898; May, 1899.

COPYRIGHT, 1895,  
By CHARLES E. BENNETT.

Norwood Press  
J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith  
Norwood Mass. U.S.A.

## PREFACE.

---

THE object of this book is to present *the essential facts* of Latin grammar in a direct and simple manner, and within the smallest compass consistent with scholarly standards. While intended primarily for the secondary school, it has not neglected the needs of the college student, and aims to furnish such grammatical information as is ordinarily required in undergraduate courses.

The experience of German educators in recent years has tended to restrict the size of school-grammars of Latin, and has demanded an incorporation of the main principles of the language in compact manuals of 250 pages.<sup>1</sup> Within the past decade, several grammars of this scope have appeared which have amply met the exacting demands of the full Gymnasial Latin course, — a period of study representing quite as much reading as that covered by the average American undergraduate.

The publication in this country of a grammar of similar plan and scope seems fully justified at the present time, as all recent editions of classic texts summarize in introductions the special idioms of grammar and style peculiar to individual authors. This makes it feasible to dispense with the enumeration of many *minutiae* of usage which would otherwise demand consideration in a student's grammar.

In the chapter on Prosody, I have designedly omitted all special treatment of the lyric metres of Horace and Catullus, as

---

<sup>1</sup> One of the most eminent of living Latinists, Professor Eduard Wölfflin, of Munich, has expressed the opinion that the essentials may be given within even smaller compass than this. See his Preface to the Schmalz-Wagener *Lateinische Grammatik*, 1891.



well as of the measures of the comic poets. Our standard editions of these authors all give such thorough consideration to versification that repetition in a separate place seems superfluous.

In the matter of 'hidden quantities,' I have conformed to Lewis's *Latin Dictionary for Schools*, and the same editor's later *Elementary Latin Dictionary*. In several cases this procedure has involved a sacrifice of convictions as to the actual quantity of vowels; but the advantages of uniformity in our educational practice seemed, for the present at least, to warrant this concession of personal views.

The discussion of inflectional forms and of the development of case and mood constructions has been reserved for the *Appendix for Teachers*, where these and some other matters receive full and systematic consideration.

To several of my colleagues, who have generously assisted me with their advice and criticism during the preparation and printing of this book, I desire to offer my sincerest thanks, especially to Professors H. C. Elmer and B. I. Wheeler, of Cornell University, Professor Alfred Gudeman, of the University of Pennsylvania, Professor George L. Hendrickson, of the University of Wisconsin, and Professors Francis W. Kelsey and John C. Rolfe, of the University of Michigan.

C. E. B.

ITHACA, N. Y., Dec. 15, 1894.

---

#### PREFACE TO FOURTH EDITION.

In this edition I have marked all long vowels in conformity with the lists contained in my *Appendix for Teachers* (p. 52 ff.). Lewis, whose *Latin Dictionaries* I had originally followed, has meanwhile, in the last edition of the *Elementary Dictionary*, accepted my markings in a majority of the cases wherein I had expressed dissent from him.

C. E. B.

ITHACA, Feb. 10, 1896.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## PART I.

### SOUNDS, ACCENT, QUANTITY, ETC.

	PAGE
The Alphabet . . . . .	I
Classification of Sounds . . . . .	I
Sounds of the Letters . . . . .	3
Syllables . . . . .	4
Quantity . . . . .	4
Accent . . . . .	5
Vowel Changes . . . . .	6
Consonant Changes . . . . .	7
Peculiarities of Orthography . . . . .	7

## PART II.

### INFLECTIONS.

#### CHAPTER I. — *Declension.*

##### A. NOUNS.

Gender of Nouns . . . . .	10
Number . . . . .	11
Cases . . . . .	11
The Five Declensions . . . . .	12
First Declension . . . . .	13
Second Declension . . . . .	14
Third Declension . . . . .	18
Fourth Declension . . . . .	28
Fifth Declension . . . . .	29
Defective Nouns . . . . .	30

##### B. ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions . . . . .	34
Adjectives of the Third Declension . . . . .	36

	PAGE
Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	40
Formation and Comparison of Adverbs . . . . .	43
Numerals . . . . .	45

## C. PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns . . . . .	48
Reflexive Pronouns . . . . .	49
Possessive Pronouns . . . . .	49
Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . .	50
The Intensive Pronoun . . . . .	51
The Relative Pronoun . . . . .	51
Interrogative Pronouns . . . . .	52
Indefinite Pronouns . . . . .	52
Pronominal Adjectives. . . . .	53

CHAPTER II. — *Conjugation.*

Verb-Stems . . . . .	54
The Four Conjugations . . . . .	55
Conjugation of <i>Sum</i> . . . . .	56
First Conjugation . . . . .	58
Second Conjugation . . . . .	62
Third Conjugation . . . . .	66
Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	70
Verbs in <i>-iō</i> of the Third Conjugation . . . . .	74
Deponent Verbs . . . . .	76
Semi-Deponents . . . . .	78
Periphrastic Conjugation . . . . .	78
Peculiarities of Conjugation . . . . .	79
Formation of the Verb-Stems . . . . .	80
List of the Most Important Verbs with Principal Parts . . . . .	83
Irregular Verbs . . . . .	95
Defective Verbs . . . . .	102
Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	104

## PART III.

## PARTICLES.

Adverbs . . . . .	106
Prepositions . . . . .	107
Interjections . . . . .	108

## PART IV.

## WORD FORMATION.

## I. DERIVATIVES.

	PAGE
Nouns . . . . .	109
Adjectives . . . . .	111
Verbs . . . . .	113
Adverbs . . . . .	114

## II. COMPOUNDS.

Examples of Compounds . . . . .	115
---------------------------------	-----

## PART V.

## SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I. — *Sentences.*

Classification of Sentences . . . . .	117
Form of Interrogative Sentences . . . . .	117
Subject and Predicate . . . . .	119
Simple and Compound Sentences . . . . .	119

CHAPTER II. — *Syntax of Nouns.*

Subject . . . . .	120
Predicate Nouns . . . . .	120
Appositives . . . . .	121
The Nominative . . . . .	122
The Accusative . . . . .	122
The Dative . . . . .	129
The Genitive . . . . .	134
The Ablative . . . . .	142
The Locative . . . . .	152

CHAPTER III. — *Syntax of Adjectives.*

Agreement of Adjectives . . . . .	153
Adjectives used Substantively . . . . .	154
Adjectives with the Force of Adverbs . . . . .	156
Comparatives and Superlatives . . . . .	156
Other Peculiarities . . . . .	156

CHAPTER IV. — *Syntax of Pronouns.*

	PAGE
Personal Pronouns . . . . .	157
Possessive Pronouns . . . . .	157
Reflexive Pronouns . . . . .	158
Reciprocal Pronouns . . . . .	159
Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . .	159
Relative Pronouns . . . . .	161
Indefinite Pronouns . . . . .	163
Pronominal Adjectives . . . . .	164

CHAPTER V. — *Syntax of Verbs.*

Agreement of Verbs . . . . .	165
Voices . . . . .	167
Tenses . . . . .	167
Of the Indicative . . . . .	167
Of the Subjunctive . . . . .	171
Of the Infinitive . . . . .	174
Moods . . . . .	176
In Independent Sentences . . . . .	176
Volitive Subjunctive . . . . .	176
Optative Subjunctive . . . . .	178
Potential Subjunctive . . . . .	179
Imperative . . . . .	180
In Dependent Sentences . . . . .	181
Clauses of Purpose . . . . .	181
Clauses of Characteristic . . . . .	182
Clauses of Result . . . . .	184
Causal Clauses . . . . .	185
Temporal Clauses . . . . .	187
Introduced by <i>Postquam, Ut, Ubi, etc.</i> . . . . .	187
<i>Cum</i> -Clauses . . . . .	188
Introduced by <i>Antequam</i> and <i>Priusquam</i> . . . . .	190
Introduced by <i>Dum, Dñec, Quoad</i> . . . . .	191
Substantive Clauses . . . . .	192
Developed from the Volitive . . . . .	192
Developed from the Optative . . . . .	194
Of Result . . . . .	195
After <i>nñ dubitō, etc.</i> . . . . .	195
Introduced by <i>Quod</i> . . . . .	196
Indirect Questions . . . . .	197
Conditional Sentences . . . . .	198
Use of <i>Sĩ, Nisi, Sin.</i> . . . . .	202

# Table of Contents.

ix

	PAGE
Conditional Clauses of Comparison . . . . .	203
Concessive Clauses . . . . .	203
Adversative Clauses with <i>Quamvis, Quamquam, etc.</i> . . . .	203
Clauses of Wish and Proviso . . . . .	205
Relative Clauses . . . . .	205
Indirect Discourse . . . . .	206
Moods in Indirect Discourse . . . . .	206
Tenses in Indirect Discourse . . . . .	208
Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse . . . . .	209
Implied Indirect Discourse . . . . .	211
Subjunctive by Attraction . . . . .	212
Noun and Adjective Forms of the Verb . . . . .	212
Infinitive . . . . .	213
Participles . . . . .	217
Gerund . . . . .	220
Supine . . . . .	223

## CHAPTER VI. — *Particles.*

Coördinate Conjunctions . . . . .	223
Adverbs . . . . .	227

## CHAPTER VII. — *Word-Order and Sentence-Structure.*

Word-Order . . . . .	227
Sentence-Structure . . . . .	232

## CHAPTER VIII. — *Hints on Latin Style.*

Nouns . . . . .	233
Adjectives . . . . .	235
Pronouns . . . . .	236
Verbs . . . . .	236
The Cases . . . . .	238

## PART VI.

### PROSODY.

Quantity of Vowels and Syllables . . . . .	240
Verse-Structure . . . . .	243
The Dactylic Hexameter . . . . .	245
The Dactylic Pentameter . . . . .	246
Iambic Verses . . . . .	246

**SUPPLEMENTS TO THE GRAMMAR.**

	<b>PAGE</b>
I. Roman Calendar . . . . .	247
II. Abbreviations of Proper Names . . . . .	249
III. Figures of Syntax and Rhetoric . . . . .	249

# PART I.

## SOUNDS, ACCENT, QUANTITY.

### THE ALPHABET.

1. The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English, except that the Latin has no **w**.

1. **K** occurs only in *Kalendae* and a few other words; **y** and **z** were introduced from the Greek about 50 B.C., and occur only in foreign words — chiefly Greek.

2. With the Romans, who regularly employed only capitals, **I** served both as vowel and consonant; so also **V**. For us, however, it is more convenient to distinguish the vowel and consonant sounds, and to write **i** and **u** for the former, **j** and **v** for the latter. Yet some scholars prefer to employ **i** and **u** in the function of consonants as well as vowels.

### CLASSIFICATION OF SOUNDS.

2. 1. The Vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. The other letters are Consonants. The Diphthongs are **ae, oe, ei, au, eu, ui**.

2. Consonants are further subdivided into Mutes, Liquids, Nasals, and Spirants.

3. The Mutes are **p, t, c, k, q; b, d, g; ph, th, oh**. Of these, —

a) **p, t, c, k, q** are voiceless,<sup>1</sup> *i.e.* sounded *without* voice or vibration of the vocal chords.

b) **b, d, g** are voiced,<sup>2</sup> *i.e.* sounded *with* vibration of the vocal chords.

---

<sup>1</sup> For 'voiceless,' 'surd,' 'hard,' or 'tenuis' are sometimes used.

<sup>2</sup> For 'voiced,' 'sonant,' 'soft,' or 'media' are sometimes used.



- c) **ph, th, oh** are aspirates. These are confined almost exclusively to words derived from the Greek, and were equivalent to **p + h, t + h, c + h**, *i.e.* to the corresponding voiceless mutes with a following breath, as in Eng. *loop-hole, hot-house, block-house*.

4. The Mutes admit of classification also as

Labials,	<b>p, b, ph.</b>
Dentals (or Linguals),	<b>t, d, th.</b>
Gutturals (or Palatals),	<b>c, k, q, g, oh.</b>

5. The Liquids are **l, r**. These sounds were voiced.

6. The Nasals are **m, n**. These were voiced. Besides its ordinary sound, **n**, when followed by a palatal mute, also had another sound,—that of **ng** in *sing*,—the so-called *n adulterinum*; as,—

**anceps**, *double*, pronounced **anceps**.

7. The Spirants (sometimes called Fricatives) are **f, s, h**. These were voiceless.

8. The Semivowels are **j** and **v**. These were voiced.

9. Double Consonants are **x** and **z**. Of these, **x** was equivalent to **cs**, while the equivalence of **z** is uncertain. See § 3. 3.

10. The following table will indicate the relations of the consonant sounds:—

	VOICELESS.	VOICED.	ASPIRATES.	
Mutes,	{ <b>p,</b> <b>t,</b> <b>c, k, q,</b>	{ <b>b,</b> <b>d,</b> <b>g,</b>	{ <b>ph,</b> <b>th,</b> <b>ch,</b>	(Labials). (Dentals). (Gutturals).
Liquids,		<b>l, r,</b>		
Nasals,		<b>m, n,</b>		
Spirants	{ <b>f,</b> <b>s,</b> <b>h,</b>			(Labial). (Dental). (Guttural).
Semivowels,		<b>j, v.</b>		

- a. The Double Consonants, **x** and **z**, being compound sounds, do not admit of classification in the above table.

## SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

3. The following pronunciation (often called Roman) is substantially that employed by the Romans at the height of their civilization; *i.e.* roughly, from 50 B.C. to 50 A.D.

### 1. Vowels.

ā as in <i>father</i> ;	ǣ as in the first syllable of <i>ahd</i> ;
ē as in <i>they</i> ;	ē as in <i>met</i> ;
ī as in <i>machine</i> ;	ī as in <i>pin</i> ;
ō as in <i>note</i> ;	ō as in <i>obey, melody</i> ;
ū as in <i>rude</i> ;	ū as in <i>put</i> ;
y like French <i>u</i> , German <i>ü</i> .	

### 2. Diphthongs.

ae like <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> ;	eu with its two elements, ē and ū, pronounced in rapid succession;
oe like <i>oi</i> in <i>oil</i> ;	ui occurs almost exclusively in <i>cui</i> and <i>huic</i> . These words are pronounced as though written <i>kwee</i> and <i>wheek</i> .
ei as in <i>rein</i> ;	
au like <i>ow</i> in <i>how</i> ;	

### 3. Consonants.

- b, d, f, h, k, l, m, n, p, qu are pronounced as in English, except that  
 bs, bt are pronounced *ps, pt*.  
 c is always pronounced as *k*.  
 t is always a plain *t*, never with the sound of *sh* as in Eng. *oration*.  
 g always as in *get*; when ngu precedes a vowel, gu has the sound of *gw*, as in *anguis, languidus*.  
 j has the sound of *y* as in *yet*.  
 r was probably slightly trilled with the tip of the tongue.  
 s always voiceless as in *sin*; in *suādeō, suāvis, suāscō*, and in compounds and derivatives of these words, su has the sound of *sw*.  
 v like *w*.  
 x always like *ks*; never like Eng. *gx* or *z*.  
 z uncertain in sound; possibly like Eng. *zd*, possibly like *z*. The latter sound is recommended.  
 The aspirates **ph, ch, th** were pronounced very nearly like our stressed Eng. *p, c, t* — so nearly so, that, for practical purposes, the latter sounds suffice.  
 Doubled letters, like **ll, mm, tt, etc.**, should be so pronounced that both members of the combination are distinctly articulated.

## SYLLABLES.

4. There are as many syllables in a Latin word as there are separate vowels and diphthongs.

In the division of words into syllables, —

1. A single consonant is joined to the following vowel; as, **vo-lat, ge-rit**.

2. Doubled consonants, like **tt, ss, etc.**, are always separated; as, **vit-ta, mis-sus**.

3. In case of other combinations of consonants, such as can stand at the beginning of a word are joined to the following vowel; as, **ma-gi-stri, dī-gnus, tē-xi**.

4. But compounds are separated into their component parts; as, **per-it, ab-rādit**.

## QUANTITY.

## 5. A. Quantity of Vowels.

A vowel is *long* or *short* according to the length of time required for its pronunciation. No absolute rule can be given for determining the quantity of Latin vowels. This knowledge must be gained, in large measure, by experience; but the following principles are of aid: —

1. **A vowel is long,**<sup>1</sup> —

a) before **nf, ns**, and before **gn** in nouns and adjectives in **-gnus, -gna, -gnum**; as, **infāns, dignus, signum**.

b) when the result of contraction; as, **nīlum** for **nihilum**.

c) before **j**; as, **hūjus**.

2. **A vowel is short,** —

a) before **nt, nd**; as, **amant, amandus**. A few rare exceptions occur in cases of compounds whose first member has a long vowel; as, **nōndum** (**nōn dum**).

b) before another vowel, or **h**; as, **meus, trahō**. Some exceptions occur, chiefly in proper names derived from the Greek; as, **Aenēās**.

NOTE.—Occasionally we meet with vowels that are sometimes long, sometimes short. Such vowels are called *common*. The variation appears only in poetry. Examples are the first vowel in **Dīāna, ōhō**.

<sup>1</sup> In this book, long vowels are indicated by a horizontal line above them; as, **ā, ī, ō, etc.** Vowels not thus marked are short. Occasionally a curve is set above short vowels; as, **ē, ŏ, ŭ**.

## B. Quantity of Syllables.

Syllables are distinguished as *long* or *short* according to the length of time required for their pronunciation. Their quantity is governed by the following principles:—

1. **A syllable is long,**<sup>1</sup>—

- a) if it contains a long vowel; as, **māter, māgnus, dīus.**
- b) if it contains a diphthong; as, **causae, foedus.**
- c) if it contains a short vowel followed by **x, z,** or any two consonants (except a mute with **l** or **r**); as, **axis, gaza, restō.**

2. **A syllable is short,** if it contains a short vowel followed by a vowel or by a single consonant; as, **mea, amat.**

3. Sometimes a syllable varies in quantity, *viz.* when its vowel is short and is followed by a mute with **l** or **r**, *i.e.* by **pl, cl, tl; pr, cr, tr, etc.**; as, **āgrī, volūcris.**<sup>2</sup> Such syllables are called *common*. In prose they were regularly short, but in verse they might be treated as long at the option of the poet.

NOTE. — These distinctions of *long* and *short* are not arbitrary and artificial, but are purely natural. Thus, a syllable containing a short vowel followed by two consonants, as **ng**, is long, because such a syllable requires *more time* for its pronunciation; while a syllable containing a short vowel followed by one consonant is short, because it takes *less time* to pronounce it. In case of the common syllables, the mute and the liquid blend so easily as to produce a combination which takes scarcely more time than a single consonant. Yet by separating the two elements (as **ag-rī**) the poets were able to use such syllables as long.

## ACCENT.

6. 1. Words of two syllables are accented upon the first; as, **tégit, mórem.**

2. Words of more than two syllables are accented upon the penult (next to the last) if that is a long syllable, otherwise upon the antepenult (second from the last); as, **amāvī, amántis, míserum.**

3. The enclitics **-que, -ne, -ve, -ce, -met, -dum** always throw an accent back upon the preceding syllable, when the simple word is accented on the antepenult; as, **miseráque, hominéque.**

4. Sometimes the final **-e** of **-ne** and **-ce** disappears, but without affecting the accent; as, **tantón, istíc, illíc, vidén** (for **vidésne**).

<sup>1</sup> To avoid confusion, the quantity of *syllables* is not indicated by any sign.

<sup>2</sup> But if the **l** or **r** introduces the second part of a compound, the preceding syllable is always long; as, **abrupō.**

5. In *utrāque*, *each*, and *plērāque*, *most*, *-que* is not properly an enclitic; yet these words accent the penult, owing to the influence of their other cases, — *utérque*, *utrámque*, *plērámque*.

6. But in other words, *-que* does not throw back an accent unless it is a true enclitic, meaning *and*. Thus, regularly, *dénique*, *úndique*, *útique*, *ítaque*; but if *ítaque* means *and . . . so* (*-que* being enclitic), it is accented *ítáque*.

## VOWEL CHANGES.<sup>1</sup>

### 7. 1. In Compounds, —

- a) *ě* before a single consonant becomes *ī*; as, —  
*colligō* for *con-legō*.
- b) *ā* before a single consonant becomes *ī*; as, —  
*adigō* for *ad-agō*.
- c) *ā* before two consonants becomes *ě*; as, —  
*expers* for *ex-pars*.
- d) *ae* becomes *ī*; as, —  
*conquīrō* for *con-quaerō*
- e) *au* becomes *ū*, sometimes *ō*; as, —  
*conclūdō* for *con-claudō*;  
*explōdō* for *ex-plaudō*.

2. **Contraction.** Concurrent vowels were frequently contracted into one long vowel. The first of the two vowels regularly prevailed; as, —

- |                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>trēs</i> for <i>tre-es</i> ;       | <i>cōpia</i> for <i>co-opia</i> ;     |
| <i>mālō</i> for <i>ma(v)elō</i> ;     | <i>cōgō</i> for <i>co-agō</i> ;       |
| <i>amāstī</i> for <i>amā(v)istī</i> ; | <i>cōmō</i> for <i>co-emō</i> ;       |
| <i>dēbeō</i> for <i>dē(h)abeō</i> ;   | <i>jūnior</i> for <i>ju(v)enior</i> . |
| <i>nīl</i> for <i>nihil</i> ;         |                                       |

3. **Parasitic Vowels.** In the environment of liquids and nasals a parasitic vowel sometimes develops; as, —

*vinculum* for earlier *vinclum*.

So *pericoulum*, *saeculum*.

- 4. **Syncope.** Sometimes a vowel drops out by syncope; as, —  
*ārdor* for *āridor* (cf. *āridus*);  
*valdē* for *validē* (cf. *validus*).

<sup>1</sup> Only the simplest and most obvious of these are here treated.

# CONSONANT CHANGES.<sup>1</sup>

8. 1. **Rhotacism.** An original *s* between vowels became *r*; as, —

*arbōs*, Gen. *arboris* (for *arboſis*);  
*genus*, Gen. *generis* (for *genesis*);  
*dirimō* (for *dis-emō*).

2. *dt*, *tt*, *ts* each give *s* or *ss*; as, —

*pēnsum* for *pend-tum*;  
*versum* for *vert-tum*;  
*miles* for *milet-s*;  
*sessus* for *sedtus*;  
*passus* for *pattus*.

3. Final consonants were often omitted; as, —

*cor* for *cord*;  
*lāc* for *lāct*.

4. **Assimilation of Consonants.** Consonants are often assimilated to a following sound. Thus: *accurrō* (*adc-*); *aggerō* (*adg-*); *asserō* (*ads-*); *allātus* (*adl-*); *apportō* (*adp-*); *attuli* (*adt-*); *arrideō* (*adr-*); *afferō* (*adf-*); *occurrō* (*obc-*); *suppōnō* (*subp-*); *offerō* (*obf-*); *corruō* (*comr-*); *collātus* (*coml-*); *etc.*

5. **Partial Assimilation.** Sometimes the assimilation is only partial. Thus: —

- a*) *b* before *s* or *t* becomes *p*; as, —

*scripsi* (*scrib-si*), *scriptum* (*scrib-tum*).

- b*) *g* before *s* or *t* becomes *c*; as, —

*actus* (*āg-tus*).

- c*) *m* before a dental or guttural becomes *n*; as, —

*eundem* (*eum-dem*); *princeps* (*prim-ceps*).

## PECULIARITIES OF ORTHOGRAPHY.

9. Many words have variable orthography.

1. Sometimes the different forms belong to different periods of the language. Thus, *quom*, *voltus*, *volnus*, *volt*, *etc.*, were the prevailing

<sup>1</sup> Only the simplest and most obvious of these are here treated.

forms almost down to the Augustan Age; after that, **cum**, **vultus**, **vulnus**, **vult**, *etc.* So **optumus**, **māxumus**, **lubet**, **lubidō**, *etc.*, down to about the same era; later, **optimus**, **māximus**, **libet**, **libidō**, *etc.*

2. In some words the orthography varies at one and the same period of the language. Examples are **expectō**, **expectō**; **existō**, **existō**; **epistula**, **epistola**; **adulēscēns**, **adolēscēns**; **paulus**, **paulus**; **cottidiē**, **cotidiē**; and, particularly, prepositional compounds, which, even in those cases where actual assimilation took place in the spoken language (§ 8. 4), often made a concession to the etymology in the spelling; as, —

<b>ad-gerō</b>	or <b>aggerō</b> ;	<b>ad-serō</b>	or <b>asserō</b> ;
<b>ad-liciō</b>	or <b>alliciō</b> ;	<b>in-lātus</b>	or <b>illātus</b> ;
<b>ad-rogāns</b>	or <b>arrogāns</b> ;	<b>sub-moveō</b>	or <b>summoveō</b> ;

and many others.

3. Compounds of **jaciō** were usually written **ēiciō**, **dēiciō**, **adiciō**, **obiciō**, *etc.*, but were probably pronounced as though written **adjiciō**, **objiciō**, *etc.*

4. Adjectives and nouns in **-quus**, **-quum**; **-vus**, **-vum**; **-uus**, **-uum** preserved the earlier forms in **-quos**, **-quom**; **-vos**, **-vom**; **-uos**, **-uom**, down through the Ciceronian age; as, **antiquos**, **antiquom**; **saevos**; **perpetuos**; **equos**; **servos**. Similarly verbs in the 3d plural present indicative exhibit the terminations **-quont**, **-quontur**; **-vont**, **-vontur**; **-uont**, **-uontur**, for the same period; as, **relinquont**, **loquontur**; **vivont**, **metuont**.

The older spelling, while generally followed in editions of Plautus and Terence, has not yet been adopted in our prose texts.

## PART II.

---

### INFLECTIONS.

---

10. The Parts of Speech in Latin are the same as in English, *viz.* Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections; but the Latin has no article.

11. Of these eight parts of speech the first four are capable of **Inflection**, *i.e.* of undergoing change of form to express modifications of meaning. In case of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns, this process is called **Declension**; in case of Verbs, **Conjugation**.

---

### CHAPTER I. — *Declension.*

#### A. NOUNS.

12. A Noun is the name of a *person, place, thing, or quality*; as, **Caesar**, *Caesar*; **Rōma**, *Rome*; **penna**, *feather*; **virtūs**, *courage*.

1. Nouns are either Proper or Common. Proper nouns are permanent names of persons or places; as, **Caesar**, **Rōma**. Other nouns are Common; as, **penna**, **virtūs**.

2. Nouns are also distinguished as Concrete or Abstract.

a) Concrete nouns are those which designate individual objects; as, **mōns**, *mountain*; **pēs**, *foot*; **diēs**, *day*; **mēns**, *mind*.



Under concrete nouns are included, also, collective nouns ; as, *legiō, legion* ; *oomitātus, retinue*.

- b) Abstract nouns designate qualities ; as, *cōstantia, steadfastness* ; *paupertās, poverty*.

## GENDER OF NOUNS.

13. There are three Genders, — Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter. Gender in Latin is either natural or grammatical.

### Natural Gender.

14. The gender of nouns is natural when it is based upon sex. Natural gender is confined entirely to names of persons ; and these are —

1. Masculine, if they denote males ; as, —  
*nauta, sailor* ; *agricola, farmer*.
2. Feminine, if they denote females ; as, —  
*māter, mother* ; *rēgina, queen*.

### Grammatical Gender.

15. Grammatical gender is determined not by sex, but by the general signification of the word, or the ending of its Nominative Singular. By grammatical gender, nouns denoting things or qualities are often Masculine or Feminine, simply by virtue of their signification or the ending of the Nominative Singular. The following are the general principles for determining grammatical gender : —

#### A. Gender determined by Signification.

1. Names of *Rivers, Winds, and Months* are Masculine ; as, —

*Sēquana, Seine* ; *Eurus, east wind* ; *Aprilis, April*.

2. Names of *Trees, and such names of Countries, Towns, and Islands* as end in *-us*, are Feminine ; as, —  
*quercus, oak* ; *Pontus, Pontus* ; *Corinthus, Corinth* ; *Rhodus, Rhodes*.

Other names of countries, towns, and islands follow the gender of their endings (see *B*, below); as, —

**Delphī**, m.; **Leuctra**, n.; **Latium**, n.; **Tībur**, n.; **Carthāgō**, f.

3. Indeclinable nouns are Neuter; as, —

**nihil**, *nothing*; **nefās**, *wrong*.

(*crisis*) NOTE. — Exceptions to the above principles sometimes occur; as, **Allia** (the river), f.

*B. Gender determined by Ending of Nominative Singular.*

The gender of other nouns is determined by the ending of the Nominative Singular.<sup>1</sup>

NOTE 1. — *Common Gender*. Certain nouns are sometimes Masculine, sometimes Feminine. Thus, **sacerdōs** may mean either *priest* or *priestess*, and is Masculine or Feminine accordingly. So also **civis**, *citizen*; **parēns**, *parent*; etc. The gender of such nouns is said to be *common*.

NOTE 2. — Names of animals usually have grammatical gender, according to the ending of the Nominative Singular, but the one form may designate either the male or female; as, **ānser**, m., *goose* or *gander*. So **vulpēs**, f., *fox*; **aquila**, f., *eagle*.

NUMBER.

16. The Latin has two Numbers, — the Singular and Plural. The Singular denotes one object; the Plural, more than one.

CASES.

17. There are six Cases in Latin: —

<b>Nominative</b> ,	Case of Subject;
<b>Genitive</b> ,	Objective with <i>of</i> ;
<b>Dative</b> ,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> ;
<b>Accusative</b> ,	Case of Direct Object;
<b>Vocative</b> ,	Case of Address;
<b>Ablative</b> ,	Objective with <i>by</i> , <i>from</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>with</i> .

<sup>1</sup> The great majority of all Latin nouns come under this category. The principles for determining their gender are given under the separate declensions.

1. **LOCATIVE.** Vestiges of another case, the **Locative** (denoting place where), occur in names of towns and in a few other words.

2. **OBLIQUE CASES.** The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called **Oblique Cases**.

3. **STEM AND CASE-ENDINGS.** The different cases are formed by appending certain **case-endings** to a fundamental part called the **Stem**.<sup>1</sup> Thus, **portam** (Accusative Singular) is formed by adding the case-ending **-m** to the stem **porta-**. But in most cases the final vowel of the stem has coalesced so closely with the actual case-ending that the latter has become more or less obscured. The apparent case-ending thus resulting is called a **termination**.

### THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

18. There are five Declensions in Latin, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the Stem, and also by the Termination of the Genitive Singular, as follows:—

DECLENSION.	FINAL LETTER OF STEM.	GEN. TERMINATION.
<b>First</b>	<b>ā</b>	<b>-ae</b>
<b>Second</b>	<b>ō</b>	<b>-i</b>
<b>Third</b>	<b>i</b> { Some consonant	<b>-is</b>
<b>Fourth</b>	<b>ū</b>	<b>-ūs</b>
<b>Fifth</b>	<b>e</b>	<b>-ei</b>

### Cases alike in Form.

19. 1. The Vocative is regularly like the Nominative, except in the Singular of nouns in **-us** of the Second Declension.

2. The Dative and Ablative Plural are always alike.

3. In Neuters the Accusative and Nominative are always alike, and in the Plural end in **-a**.

4. In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions, the Accusative Plural is regularly like the Nominative.

<sup>1</sup> The Stem is often derived from a more primitive form, called the **Root**. Thus, the stem **porta-** goes back to the root **per-, por-**. Roots are monosyllabic. The addition made to a root to form a stem is called a **Suffix**. Thus in **porta-** the suffix is **-ta-**.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

***ā*-Stems.**

20. Pure Latin nouns of the First Declension regularly end, in the Nominative Singular, in *-ā*, weakened from *-a*, and are of the Feminine Gender. They are declined as follows:—

**Porta, gate; stem, portā-.**

SINGULAR.		
CASES.	MEANINGS.	TERMINATIONS.
<i>Nom.</i> porta	<i>a gate</i> (as subject)	<i>-ā</i>
<i>Gen.</i> portae	<i>of a gate</i>	<i>-ae</i>
<i>Dat.</i> portae	<i>to or for a gate</i>	<i>-ae</i>
<i>Acc.</i> portam	<i>a gate</i> (as object)	<i>-am</i>
<i>Voc.</i> porta	<i>O gate!</i>	<i>-ā</i>
<i>Abl.</i> portā	<i>with, by, from, in a gate</i>	<i>-ā</i>
PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i> portae	<i>gates</i> (as subject)	<i>-ae</i>
<i>Gen.</i> portārum	<i>of gates</i>	<i>-ārum</i>
<i>Dat.</i> portis	<i>to or for gates</i>	<i>-is</i>
<i>Acc.</i> portās	<i>gates</i> (as object)	<i>-ās</i>
<i>Voc.</i> portae	<i>O gates!</i>	<i>-ae</i>
<i>Abl.</i> portis	<i>with, by, from, in gates</i>	<i>-is</i>

1. The Latin has no article, and *porta* may mean either *a gate* or *the gate*; and in the Plural, *gates* or *the gates*.

**Peculiarities of Nouns of the First Declension.**

21. 1. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER. Nouns denoting males are Masculine; as, *nauta*, *sailor*; *agricola*, *farmer*; also *Hadria*, *Adriatic Sea*.

2. Rare Case-Endings,—

a) An old form of the Genitive Singular in *-ās* is preserved in the combination *pater familiās*, *father of a family*; also in *māter familiās*, *filius familiās*, *filia familiās*. But the regular form of the Genitive in *-ae* is also admissible in these expressions; as, *pater familiae*.

b) In poetry a Genitive in *-āī* also occurs; as, *aulāī*.

- c) The Locative Singular ends in *-ae*; as, *Rōmae*, at Rome.
- d) A Genitive Plural in *-um* instead of *-arum* sometimes occurs; as, *Dardanidum* instead of *Dardanidarum*. This termination *-um* is not a contraction of *-arum*, but represents an entirely different case-ending.
- e) Besides the regular ending *-is*, we find also *-abus* in the Dative and Ablative Plural of *dea*, goddess, and *filia*, daughter, especially when it is important to distinguish these nouns from the corresponding forms of *deus*, god, and *filius*, son. A few other words sometimes have the same peculiarity; as, *libertabus* (from *liberta*, freedwoman), *equabus* (mares), to avoid confusion with *libertis* (from *libertus*, freedman), and *equis* (from *equus*, horse).

## Greek Nouns.

22. These end in *-ē* (Feminine); *-ās* and *-ēs* (Masculine). In the Plural they are declined like regular Latin nouns of the First Declension. In the Singular they are declined as follows:—

*Archias*, *Archias*. *Epitomē*, *epitome*. *Comētēs*, *comet*.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Archias</i>	<i>epitomē</i>	<i>comētēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Archiae</i>	<i>epitomēs</i>	<i>comētae</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Archiae</i>	<i>epitomae</i>	<i>comētae</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Archiam</i> (or <i>-ān</i> )	<i>epitomēn</i>	<i>comētēn</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Archia</i>	<i>epitomē</i>	<i>comētē</i> (or <i>-ā</i> )
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Archia</i>	<i>epitomē</i>	<i>comētē</i> (or <i>-ā</i> )

1. But most Greek nouns in *-ē* become regular Latin nouns in *-a*, and are declined like *porta*; as, *grammatica*, grammar; *mūsica*, music; *rhētorica*, rhetoric.

2. Some other peculiarities occur, especially in poetry.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

*ō*-Stems.

23. Pure Latin nouns of the Second Declension end in *-us*, *-er*, *-ir*, Masculine; *-um*, Neuter. Originally *-us* in the Nominative of the Masculines was *-os*, and *-um* of the Neuters *-om*. So also in the Accusative.

Nouns in **-us** and **-um** are declined as follows:—

**Hortus, garden;**  
stem, hortō-

**Bellum, war;**  
stem, bellō-

SINGULAR.

		TERMINATION.		TERMINATION.
<i>Nom.</i>	hortus	-us	bellum	-um
<i>Gen.</i>	hortī	-ī	bellī	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	hortō	-ō	bellō	-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	hortum	-um	bellum	-um
<i>Voc.</i>	horte	-e	bellum	-um
<i>Abl.</i>	hortō	-ō	bellō	-ō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	hortī	-ī	bella	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	hortōrum	-ōrum	bellōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	hortīs	-īs	bellīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	hortōs	-ōs	bella	-a
<i>Voc.</i>	hortī	-ī	bella	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	hortīs	-īs	bellīs	-īs

Nouns in **-er** and **-ir** are declined as follows:—

**Puer, boy;**      **Ager, field;**      **Vir, man;**  
stem, puerō-.      stem, agrō-.      stem, virō-.

SINGULAR.

	SINGULAR.			TERMINATION.
<i>Nom.</i>	puer	ager	vir	Wanting
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	agrum	virum	-um
<i>Voc.</i>	puer	ager	vir	Wanting
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	-ōs
<i>Voc.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs

1. Note that in words of the type of **puer** and **vir** the final vowel of the stem has disappeared in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

In the Nominative and Vocative Singular of **ager**, the stem is further modified by the development of **e** before **r**.

2. The following nouns in **-er** are declined like **puer**: **adulter**, *adulterer*; **gener**, *son-in-law*; **Liber**, *Bacchus*; **socer**, *father-in-law*; **vesper**, *evening*; and compounds in **-fer** and **-ger**, as **signifer**, *armiger*.

### Nouns in **-vus**, **-vum**, **-quus**.

24. Nouns ending in the Nominative Singular in **-vus**, **-vum**, **-quus**, exhibited two types of inflection in the classical Latin,—an earlier and a later,—as follows:—

*Earlier Inflection (including Caesar and Cicero).*

**Servos**, m., *slave*. **Aevom**, n., *age*. **Equos**, m., *horse*.

#### SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	servos	aevom	equos
<i>Gen.</i>	servī	aevī	equī
<i>Dat.</i>	servō	aevō	equō
<i>Acc.</i>	servom	aevom	equom
<i>Voc.</i>	serve	aevom	eque
<i>Abl.</i>	servō	aevō	equō

*Later Inflection (after Cicero).*

#### SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	servus	aevum	equus
<i>Gen.</i>	servī	aevī	equī
<i>Dat.</i>	servō	aevō	equō
<i>Acc.</i>	servum	aevum	equum
<i>Voc.</i>	serve	aevum	eque
<i>Abl.</i>	servō	aevō	equō

1. The Plural of these nouns is regular, and always uniform.

### Peculiarities of Inflection in the Second Declension.

25. 1. Proper names in **-ius** regularly form the Genitive Singular in **-i** (instead of **-ii**), and the Vocative Singular in **-i** (for **-ie**); as, **Vergīi**, *of Vergil*, or *O Vergil* (instead of **Vergīii**, **Vergīie**). In such words the accent stands upon the penult, even though that be short.

2. Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium**, until after the beginning of the reign of Augustus (31 B.C.), regularly formed the Genitive Singular in **-i** (instead of **-ii**); as,—

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ingenium</i>	<i>filius</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ingénī</i>	<i>filī</i>

These Genitives accent the penult, even when it is short.

3. **Filius** forms the Vocative Singular in **-ī** (for **-īe**); viz., **filī**, *O son!*

4. **Deus**, *god*, lacks the Vocative Singular. The Plural is inflected as follows:—

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>dī</b>	( <b>deī</b> )
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>deōrum</b>	( <b>deum</b> )
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>dīs</b>	( <b>deīs</b> )
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>deōs</b>	
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>dī</b>	( <b>deī</b> )
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>dīs</b>	( <b>deīs</b> )

5. The Locative Singular ends in **-ī**; as, **Corinthī**, *at Corinth*.

6. The Genitive Plural has **-um**, instead of **-ōrum**,—

- a) in words denoting money and measure; as, **talentum**, *of talents*; **modium**, *of pecks*.
- b) in **duumvir**, **triumvir**, **decemvir**; as, **duumvirum**.
- c) sometimes in other words; as, **liberum**, *of the children*; **socium**, *of the allies*.

### Exceptions to Gender in the Second Declension.

26. 1. The following nouns in **-us** are Feminine by exception:—

a) Names of **countries, towns, islands, trees**—according to the general rule laid down in § 15. 2.

b) Five special words,—

**alvus**, *belly*;  
**carbasus**, *flax*;  
**colus**, *distaff*;  
**humus**, *ground*;  
**vannus**, *winnowing-fan*.

c) A few Greek Feminines; as,—

**atomus**, *atom*;  
**diphthongus**, *diphthong*.

2. The following nouns in **-us** are Neuter:—

**pelagus**, *sea*;  
**virus**, *poison*;  
**vulgus**, *crowd*.



## Greek Nouns of the Second Declension.

27. These end in **-os, -ōs**, Masculine or Feminine; and **-on**, Neuter. They are mainly proper names, and are declined as follows:—

<b>Barbitos</b> , m. and f., <i>lyre.</i>	<b>Androgeōs</b> , m., <i>Androgeos.</i>	<b>Īlion</b> , n., <i>Troy.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> barbitos	Androgeōs	Īlion
<i>Gen.</i> barbitŭ	Androgeōs, -ī	Īliŭ
<i>Dat.</i> barbitō	Androgeō	Īliō
<i>Acc.</i> barbiton	Androgeōs, -ōn	Īlion
<i>Voc.</i> barbite	Androgeōs	Īlion
<i>Abl.</i> barbitō	Androgeō	Īliō

1. Nouns in **-os** sometimes form the Accusative Singular in **-um**, instead of **-on**; as, **Dēlum**, *Delos*.

2. The Plural of Greek nouns, when it occurs, is usually regular.

3. For other rare forms of Greek nouns the lexicon may be consulted.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

28. Nouns of the Third Declension end in **-a, -ē, -ī, -ō, -y, -ō, -ī, -n, -r, -s, -t, -x**. The Third Declension includes several distinct classes of Stems, —

I. Pure Consonant-Stems.

II. **ī**-Stems.

III. Consonant-Stems which have partially adapted themselves to the inflection of **ī**-Stems.

IV. A very few Stems ending in a long vowel or a diphthong.

V. Irregular Nouns.

## I. Consonant Stems.

29. 1. In these the stem appears in its unaltered form in all the oblique cases; so that the actual case-endings may be clearly recognized.

*Penn.*

Sections 10-27 (inclusive.)

Omit: Sections 22, 24, 25(c), 26(I), b, c.

Read: 10-15(u).

Learn: 15 A(1, 2, 3), 20, 21(1), c, e, 23, 25 and 26

Outline review:-

Gender by meaning:

1. Mas. - Rivers, winds, months.

-us

2. Fem. - Trees, Countries, Islands, towns in.

First Dec. - Generally feminine.

Endings: -ā, -ae, -ae, am, ā, ā; -ae, -arum, is, as and is.

Second dec. - Mas. - -us, -er, -ir; Neut., -um.

Endings: -us(-, -um), -i, -o, um, -o; -i(-a), -orum, -is, -os, and -is.

Translate: Caesar, Chap. I.

Vocabulary:

Roma, -ae, f., Rome.

penna, -ae, f., feather.

Sequana, -ae, f., Seq.

mensa, -ae, f., table.

Hadria, -ae, M. Adriatic

porta, -ae, f. gate.

nauta, -ae, M. sailor.

stella, -ae, f. star.

agricola, -ae, M. farmer

agila, -ae, c. eagle.

regina, -ae, f., queen.

grammatica, -ae, f. gram<sup>mar</sup>.

filia, -ae, f. daughter.

musica, -ae, f. music.

filius, -i, m. son.

rhetorica, -ae, f. rhetoric.

puer, -eri, m. boy.

dea, -ae, f. goddess.

vir, -i, m. man.

deus, -i, m. god.

virus, -i, N. poison.

hortus, -i, m. garden.

pelagus, -i, N. sea.

bellum, -i, n. war.

ulus, -i, n. ~~large~~ <sup>annulus</sup>

ager, -i, m. field.

(c.m.)

(S) (U)

- 10 -

100-443887-100

100-1170109-500  
100-1170109-500  
100-1170109-500

1. The first step in the process is to identify the problem or issue that needs to be addressed. This involves gathering information and understanding the context of the problem.

• 1980-81 •

• 1981-82 •

...the ...

1. The first step in the process is to identify the problem or issue that needs to be addressed. This involves gathering information and understanding the context of the problem.

...office | ...

... ..

... ..

[illegible][illegible]

6894 111-525

! m3j

Write in Lat in:

1. Caesar saw (vidit) the crowd at Rome.
2. The sailors sent gifts (dona miserunt) to the daughters of the farmers.
3. The feathers were on the table (abl.)
4. The men drank (biberunt) poison.
5. the boy entered (intravit) the garden gate.

Adl. remige

remigious

duce

duciuous

101 101 101 101

101

101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101  
101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101  
101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101  
101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101  
101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101  
101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101  
101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101  
101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101  
101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101  
101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101

2. Consonant-Stems fall into several natural subdivisions, according as the stem ends in a **Mute**, **Liquid**, **Nasal**, or **Spirant**.

*A. Mute-Stems.*

30. Mute-Stems may end, —

1. In a Labial (b or p); as, **trab-s**; **princep-s**.
2. In a Guttural (g or c); as, **rēmex** (**rēmeg-s**); **dux** (**duc-s**).
3. In a Dental (d or t); as, **lapis** (**lapid-s**); **mīles** (**mīlet-s**).

1. STEMS IN A LABIAL MUTE (b, p).

31. **Trabs**, f., *beam*.

**Princeps**, m., *chief*.

	SINGULAR.	TERMINATION.
<i>Nom.</i> trabs	prīnceps	-s
<i>Gen.</i> trabis	prīncipis	-is
<i>Dat.</i> trabī	prīncipī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i> trabem	prīncipem	-em
<i>Voc.</i> trabs	prīnceps	-s
<i>Abl.</i> trabe	prīncipe	-e

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> trabēs	prīncipēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i> trabum	prīncipum	-um
<i>Dat.</i> trabibus	prīncipibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i> trabēs	prīncipēs	-ēs
<i>Voc.</i> trabēs	prīncipēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i> trabibus	prīncipibus	-ibus

2. STEMS IN A GUTTURAL MUTE (g, c).

32. In these the termination **-s** of the Nominative Singular unites with the guttural, thus producing **-x**.

**Rēmex**, m., *rower*.

**Dux**, c., *leader*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> rēmex	rēmigēs		<i>Nom.</i> dux	ducēs	
<i>Gen.</i> rēmigis	rēmigum		<i>Gen.</i> ducis	ducum	
<i>Dat.</i> rēmigī	rēmigibus		<i>Dat.</i> ducī	ducibus	
<i>Acc.</i> rēmigem	rēmigēs		<i>Acc.</i> ducem	ducēs	
<i>Voc.</i> rēmex	rēmigēs		<i>Voc.</i> dux	ducēs	
<i>Abl.</i> rēmige	rēmigibus		<i>Abl.</i> duce	ducibus	

3. STEMS IN A DENTAL MUTE (**d**, **t**).

**33.** In these the final **d** or **t** of the stem disappears in the Nominative Singular before the ending **-s**.

<b>Lapis</b> , m., <i>stone</i> .		<b>Miles</b> , m., <i>soldier</i> .	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> lapis	lapidēs	mīles	militēs
<i>Gen.</i> lapidis	lapidum	militis	militum
<i>Dat.</i> lapidī	lapidibus	militī	militibus
<i>Acc.</i> lapidem	lapidēs	militem	militēs
<i>Voc.</i> lapis	lapidēs	mīles	militēs
<i>Abl.</i> lapide	lapidibus	militē	militibus

*B. Liquid Stems.*

**34.** These end in **-l** or **-r**.

<b>Vigil</b> , m., <i>watchman</i> .	<b>Victor</b> , m., <i>conqueror</i> .	<b>Aequor</b> , n., <i>sea</i> .
SINGULAR.		
<i>Nom.</i> vigil	victor	aequor
<i>Gen.</i> vigili	victōris	aequoris
<i>Dat.</i> vigilī	victōrī	aequorī
<i>Acc.</i> vigilem	victōrem	aequor
<i>Voc.</i> vigil	victor	aequor
<i>Abl.</i> vigile	victōre	aequore
PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i> vigilēs	victōrēs	aequora
<i>Gen.</i> vigilum	victōrum	aequorum
<i>Dat.</i> vigilibus	victōribus	aequoribus
<i>Acc.</i> vigilēs	victōrēs	aequora
<i>Voc.</i> vigilēs	victōrēs	aequora
<i>Abl.</i> vigilibus	victōribus	aequoribus

1. Masculine and Feminine stems ending in a liquid form the Nominative and Vocative Singular without termination. •

2. The termination is also lacking in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of **all** **neuters** of the Third Declension.

## C. Nasal Stems.

35. These end in -n,<sup>1</sup> which often disappears in the Nom. Sing.

Leō, m., lion.		Nōmen, n., name.	
	SINGULAR. PLURAL.	SINGULAR. PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i>	leō leōnēs	nōmen nōmina	
<i>Gen.</i>	leōnis leōnum	nōminis nōminum	
<i>Dat.</i>	leōni leōnibus	nōmini nōminibus	
<i>Acc.</i>	leōnem leōnēs	nōmen nōmina	
<i>Voc.</i>	leō leōnēs	nōmen nōmina	
<i>Abl.</i>	leōne leōnibus	nōmine nōminibus	

## D. s-Stems.

36. Mōs, m., custom. Genus, n., race. Honor, m., honor.

SINGULAR.		
<i>Nom.</i>	mōs genus	honor
<i>Gen.</i>	mōris generis	honōris
<i>Dat.</i>	mōri generi	honōri
<i>Acc.</i>	mōrem genus	honōrem
<i>Voc.</i>	mōs genus	honor
<i>Abl.</i>	mōre genere	honōre
PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	mōrēs genera	honōrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	mōrum generum	honōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	mōribus generibus	honōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	mōrēs genera	honōrēs
<i>Voc.</i>	mōrēs genera	honōrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	mōribus generibus	honōribus

1. Note that the final *s* of the stem becomes *r* (between vowels) in the oblique cases. In some words (*honor*, *color*, and the like) the *r* of the oblique cases has, by analogy, crept into the Nominative, displacing the earlier *s*, though the forms *honōs*, *colōs*, etc., also occur, particularly in early Latin and in poetry.

<sup>1</sup> There is only one stem ending in -m, — *hiems*, *hiemis*, *winter*.



II. *i*-Stems.A. *Masculine and Feminine i*-Stems.

37. These regularly end in *-is* in the Nominative Singular, and always have *-ium* in the Genitive Plural. Originally the Accusative Singular ended in *-im*, the Ablative Singular in *-i*, and the Accusative Plural in *-is*; but these endings have been largely displaced by *-em*, *-e*, and *-ēs*, the endings of Consonant-Stems.

38. **Tussis**, *f., cough*; **Īgnis**, *m., fire*; **Hostis**, *c., enemy*;  
 stem, *tussi-*.      stem, *igni-*.      stem, *hosti-*.

SINGULAR.				TERMINATION.
<i>Nom.</i>	tussis	ignis	hostis	-is
<i>Gen.</i>	tussis	ignis	hostis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	tussi	igni	hosti	-i
<i>Acc.</i>	tussim	ignem	hostem	-im, -em
<i>Voc.</i>	tussis	ignis	hostis	-is
<i>Abl.</i>	tussi	igni or -e	hoste	-e, -i
PLURAL.				
<i>Nom.</i>	tussēs	ignēs	hostēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	tussium	ignium	hostium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	tussibus	ignibus	hostibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	tussis or -ēs	ignis or -ēs	hostis or -ēs	-is, -ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	tussēs	ignēs	hostēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	tussibus	ignibus	hostibus	-ibus

1. To the same class belong —

* <i>amussis</i> , rule.	<i>corbis</i> , basket.	<i>scobis</i> , sawdust.
<i>apis</i> , bee.	<i>crātis</i> , hurdle.	* <i>secūris</i> , axe.
<i>auris</i> , ear.	* <i>febris</i> , fever.	<i>sēmentis</i> , sowing.
<i>avis</i> , bird.	<i>orbis</i> , circle.	* <i>sitis</i> , thirst.
<i>axis</i> , axle.	<i>ovis</i> , sheep.	<i>torris</i> , brand.
* <i>būris</i> , plough-beam.	<i>pelvis</i> , basin.	* <i>turris</i> , tower.
<i>clāvis</i> , key.	<i>puppis</i> , stern.	<i>trudis</i> , pole.
<i>collis</i> , hill.	<i>restis</i> , rope.	<i>vectis</i> , lever.

and many others.

Words marked with a star have Acc. *-im*, Abl. *-i*. Of the others, many at times show *i*-forms. Town and river names in *-is* regularly have *-im*, *-i*.

2. Not all nouns in **-is** are **ī**-Stems. Some are genuine consonant-stems, and have the regular consonant terminations throughout, notably, **canis**, *dog*; **juvenis**, *youth*.<sup>1</sup>

3. Some genuine **ī**-Stems have become disguised in the Nominative Singular; as, **pars**, *part*, for **par(t)is**; **anas**, *duck*, for **ana(t)is**; so also **mors**, *death*; **dōs**, *dowry*; **nox**, *night*; **sors**, *lot*; **mēns**, *mind*; **ars**, *art*; **gēns**, *tribe*; and some others.

### B. Neuter **ī**-Stems.

39. These end in the Nominative Singular in **-e**, **-al**, and **-ar**. They always have **-ī** in the Ablative Singular, **-ia** in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, and **-ium** in the Genitive Plural, thus holding more steadfastly to the **ī**-character than do Masculine and Feminine **ī**-Stems.

**Sedīle**, *seat*; **Animal**, *animal*; **Calcar**, *spur*;  
stem, **sedīli-**. stem, **animāli-**. stem, **calcāri-**.

SINGULAR.				TERMINATION.
<i>Nom.</i>	sedile	animal	calcar	Wanting
<i>Gen.</i>	sedilis	animālis	calcāris	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	sedilī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	sedile	animal	calcar	Wanting
<i>Voc.</i>	sedile	animal	calcar	Wanting
<i>Abl.</i>	sedilī	animālī	calcārī	-ī

PLURAL.				
<i>Nom.</i>	sedilia	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	sedilium	animālium	calcārium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	sedilibus	animālibus	calcāribus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	sedilia	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Voc.</i>	sedilia	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	sedilibus	animālibus	calcāribus	-ibus

1. In most words of this class the final **-i** of the stem is lost in the Nominative Singular; in others it appears as **-e**.

2. Proper names in **-e** form the Ablative Singular in **-e**; as, **Sōracte**, *Soracte*; so also sometimes **mare**, *sea*.

<sup>1</sup> **Mēnsis**, *month*, originally a consonant-stem (**mēns-**), has in the Genitive Plural both **mēnsium** and **mēnsum**. The Accusative Plural is **mēnsēs**.



## IV. Stems in -ī, -ū, and Diphthongs.

41.	<b>Vīs, f.,</b> <i>force ;</i> stem, <b>vī-</b> .	<b>Sūs, c.,</b> <i>swine ;</i> stem, <b>sū-</b> .	<b>Bōs, c.,</b> <i>ox, cow ;</i> stem, <b>bou-</b> .	<b>Jūpiter, m.,</b> <i>Jupiter ;</i> stem, <b>Jou-</b> .
-----	---	---	--	--

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>vīs</b>	<b>sūs</b>	<b>bōs</b>	<b>Jūpiter</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>vis</b>	<b>suīs</b>	<b>bovis</b>	<b>Jovis</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>vī</b>	<b>suī</b>	<b>bovī</b>	<b>Jovī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>vim</b>	<b>suem</b>	<b>bovem</b>	<b>Jovem</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>vīs</b>	<b>sūs</b>	<b>bōs</b>	<b>Jūpiter</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>vī</b>	<b>sue</b>	<b>bove</b>	<b>Jove</b>

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>vīrēs</b>	<b>suēs</b>	<b>bovēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>vīrium</b>	<b>suum</b>	<b>bovum</b> <b>boum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>vīribus</b>	<b>suībus</b> <b>subus</b>	<b>bōbus</b> <b>būbus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>vīrēs</b>	<b>suēs</b>	<b>bovēs</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>vīrēs</b>	<b>suēs</b>	<b>bovēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>vīribus</b>	<b>suībus</b> <b>subus</b>	<b>bōbus</b> <b>būbus</b>

1. Notice that the oblique cases of **sūs** have **ū** in the root syllable.
2. **Grūs** is declined like **sūs**, except that the Dative and Ablative Plural are always **gruibus**.
3. **Jūpiter** is for **Jou-pater**, and therefore contains the same stem as in **Jov-is**, **Jov-I**, etc.
4. **Nāvis** was originally a diphthong stem ending in **au-**, but it has passed over to the **I**-stems (§ 37).

## V. Irregular Nouns.

42.	<b>Senex, m., old man.</b>	<b>Carō, f., flesh.</b>	<b>os, n., bone.</b>
-----	----------------------------	-------------------------	----------------------

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>senex</b>	<b>carō</b>	<b>os</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>senis</b>	<b>carnis</b>	<b>ossis</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>senī</b>	<b>carnī</b>	<b>ossī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>senem,</b>	<b>carnem</b>	<b>os</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>senex</b>	<b>carō</b>	<b>os</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>• sene</b>	<b>carne</b>	<b>osse</b>

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	senēs	carnēs	ossa
<i>Gen.</i>	senum	carnium	ossium
<i>Dat.</i>	senibus	carnibus	ossibus
<i>Acc.</i>	senēs	carnēs	ossa
<i>Voc.</i>	senēs	carnēs	ossa
<i>Abl.</i>	senibus	carnibus	ossibus

1. *Iter*, *itineris*, n., *way*, is inflected regularly throughout from the stem *itiner-*.

2. *Supellex*, *supellectilis*, f., *furniture*, is confined to the Singular. The oblique cases are formed from the stem *supellectil-*. The Ablative has both -i and -e.

3. *Jecur*, n., *liver*, forms its oblique cases from two stems, — *jecor-* and *jecinor-*. Thus, Gen. *jecoris* or *jecinoris*.

4. *Femur*, n., *thigh*, usually forms its oblique cases from the stem *femor-*, but sometimes from the stem *femin-*. Thus, Gen. *femoris* or *feminis*.

## General Principles of Gender in the Third Declension.

43. 1. Nouns in -ō, -or, -ōs, -er, -ēs are Masculine.

2. Nouns in -ās, -ēs, -is, -ys, -x, -s (preceded by a consonant); -dō, -gō (Genitive -inis); -iō (abstract and collective), -ūs (Genitive -ūtis or -ūdis) are Feminine.

3. Nouns ending in -a, -e, -i, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -ūs are Neuter.

## Chief Exceptions to Gender in the Third Declension.

## 44. Exceptions to the Rule for Masculines.

1. Nouns in -ō.

a. Feminine: *carō*, *flesh*.

2. Nouns in -or.

a. Feminine: *arbor*, *tree*.

b. Neuter: *aequor*, *sea*; *cor*, *heart*; *marmor*, *marble*.

3. Nouns in -ōs.

a. Feminine: *dōs*, *dowry*.

b. Neuter: *ōs* (*ōris*), *mouth*

4. Nouns in -er.

a. Feminine: *linter*, *skiff*.

*b. Neuter: cadāver, corpse; iter, way; tūber, tumor; ūber, udder. Also botanical names in -er; as, acer, maple.*

5. Nouns in -ēs.

*a. Feminine: seges, crop.*

45. Exceptions to the Rule for Feminines.

1. Nouns in -ās.

*a. Masculine, ās, an as (coin); vās, bondsman.*

*b. Neuter: vās, vessel.*

2. Nouns in -ēs.

*a. Masculine: ariēs, ram; pariēs, wall; pēs, foot.*

3. Nouns in -is.

*a. Masculine: all nouns in -nis and -guis; as, amnis, river; ignis, fire; pānis, bread; sanguis, blood; unguis, nail.*

Also —

*axis, axle.*

*piscis, fish.*

*collis, hill.*

*postis, post.*

*fascis, bundle.*

*pulvis, dust.*

*lapis, stone.*

*orbis, circle.*

*mēnsis, month.*

*sentis, brier.*

4. Nouns in -x.

*a. Masculine: apex, peak; cōdex, tree-trunk; grex, flock; imbrex, tile; pollex, thumb; vertex, summit; calix, cup.*

5. Nouns in -s preceded by a consonant.

*a. Masculine: dēns, tooth; fōns, fountain; mōns, mountain; pōns, bridge.*

6. Nouns in -dō.

*a. Masculine: cardō, hinge; ōrdō, order.*

46. Exceptions to the Rule for Neuters.

1. Nouns in -l.

*a. Masculine: sōl, sun; sāl, salt.*

2. Nouns in -n.

*a. Masculine: pecten, comb.*

3. Nouns in -ur.

*a. Masculine: vultur, vulture.*

4. Nouns in -ūs.

*a. Masculine: lepus, hare.*

## Greek Nouns of the Third Declension.

47. The following are the chief peculiarities of these :—

1. The ending **-ā** in the Accusative Singular; as, **aetherā**, *aether*; **Salamīnā**, *Salamis*.
2. The ending **-ēs** in the Nominative Plural; as, **Phrygēs**, *Phrygians*.
3. The ending **-ās** in the Accusative Plural; as, **Phrygās**, *Phrygians*.
4. Proper names in **-ās** (Genitive **-antis**) have **-ā** in the Vocative Singular; as, **Atlās** (*Atlantis*), Vocative **Atlā**, *Atlas*.
5. Neuters in **-ma** (Genitive **-matis**) have **-is** instead of **-ibus** in the Dative and Ablative Plural; as, **poēmatīs**, *poems*.
6. **Orpheus**, and other proper names ending in **-eus**, form the Vocative Singular in **-eu** (*Orpheu*, etc.). But in prose the other cases usually follow the second declension; as, **Orpheī**, *Orpheō*, etc.
7. Proper names in **-ēs**, like **Periclēs**, form the Genitive Singular sometimes in **-is**, sometimes in **-ī**; as, **Periclis** or **Periclī**.
8. Feminine proper names in **-ō** have **-ūs** in the Genitive, but **-ō** in the other oblique cases; as, —

<i>Nom.</i>	Didō	<i>Acc.</i>	Didō
<i>Gen.</i>	Didūs	<i>Voc.</i>	Didō
<i>Dat.</i>	Didō	<i>Abl.</i>	Didō

9. The regular Latin endings often occur in Greek nouns.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

## ŭ-Stems.

48. Nouns of the Fourth Declension end in **-us** Masculine, and **-a** Neuter. They are declined as follows :—

Fructus, fruit.		Cornū, horn.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	fructus fructūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	fructūs fructuum	cornūs	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	fructuī fructibus	cornū	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fructum fructūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Voc.</i>	fructus fructūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	fructū fructibus	cornū	cornibus

## Peculiarities of Nouns of the Fourth Declension.

49. 1. Nouns in *-us*, particularly in early Latin, often form the Genitive Singular in *-ī*, following the analogy of nouns in *-us* of the Second Declension; as, *senātī*, *ōrnātī*. This is usually the case in Plautus and Terence.

2. Nouns in *-us* sometimes have *-ī* in the Dative Singular, instead of *-uī*; as, *fructū* (for *fructuī*).

3. The ending *-ubus*, instead of *-ibus*, occurs in the Dative and Ablative Plural of *artūs* (Plural), *limbs*; *tribus*, *tribe*; and in dissyllables in *-ous*; as, *artubus*, *tribubus*, *arcubus*, *lacubus*. But with the exception of *tribus*, all these words admit the forms in *-ibus* as well as those in *-ubus*.

4. *Domus*, *house*, is declined according to the Fourth Declension, but has also the following forms of the Second:—

*domī* (locative), *at home*; *domum*, *homewards, to one's home*;  
*domō*, *from home*; *domōs*, *homewards, to their (etc.) homes*.

5. The only Neuters of this declension in common use are: *cornū*, *genū*, and *verū*.

## Exceptions to Gender in the Fourth Declension.

50. The following nouns in *-us* are Feminine: *acus*, *needle*; *domus*, *house*; *manus*, *hand*; *porticus*, *colonnade*; *tribus*, *tribe*; *īdūs* (Plural), *Ides*.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

*ē*-Stems.

51. Nouns of the Fifth Declension end in *-ēs*, and are declined as follows:—

Diēs, m., <i>day</i> .		Rēs, f., <i>thing</i> .	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>Gen.</i> diēī	diērum	rēī	rērum
<i>Dat.</i> diēī	diēbus	rēī	rēbus
<i>Acc.</i> diem	diēs	rem	rēs
<i>Voc.</i> diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>Abl.</i> diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus



**Peculiarities of Nouns of the Fifth Declension.**

52. 1. The ending of the Genitive and Dative Singular is **-ī**, instead of **-ēī**, when a consonant precedes; as, **spēī**, **rēī**, **fidēī**.

2. A Genitive ending **-ī** (for **-ēī**) is found in **plēbī** (from **plēbēs** = **plēbs**) in the expressions **tribūnus plēbī**, *tribune of the people*, and **plēbī scitum**, *decree of the people*; sometimes also in other words.

3. A Genitive and Dative form in **-ē** sometimes occurs; as, **aciē**.

4. With the exception of **diēs** and **rēs**, most nouns of the Fifth Declension are not declined in the Plural. But **aciēs**, **seriēs**, **speciēs**, **spēs**, and a few others, are used in the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

**Gender in the Fifth Declension.**

53. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are regularly Feminine, except **diēs**, *day*, and **merīdiēs**, *mid-day*. But **diēs** is sometimes Feminine in the Singular, particularly when it means an *appointed day*.

**DEFECTIVE NOUNS.**

54. Here belong —

1. Nouns used in the Singular only.
2. Nouns used in the Plural only.
3. Nouns used only in certain cases.
4. Indeclinable Nouns.

**Nouns used in the Singular only.**

55. Many nouns, from the nature of their signification, are regularly used in the Singular only. Thus: —

1. **Proper names**; as, **Cicerō**, *Cicero*; **Italia**, *Italy*.
2. **Nouns denoting material**; as, **aes**, *copper*; **lāc**, *milk*.
3. **Abstract nouns**; as, **ignōrantia**, *ignorance*; **bonitās**, *goodness*.

4. But the above classes of words are sometimes used in the Plural. Thus: —

- a) **Proper names**, — to denote different members of a family, or specimens of a type; as, **Cicerōnēs**, *the Ciceros*; **Catōnēs**, *men like Cato*.

- b) Names of materials, — to denote objects made of the material, or different kinds of the substance; as, **aera**, *bronzes* (*i.e.* bronze figures); **ligna**, *woods*.
- c) Abstract nouns, — to denote instances of the quality; as, **ignōrantiae**, *cases of ignorance*.

### Nouns used in the Plural only.

56. Here belong —

1. Many geographical names; as, **Thēbae**, *Thebes*; **Leuctra**, *Leuctra*; **Pompēji**, *Pompeii*.
2. Many names of festivals; as, **Megalēsia**, *the Megalesian festival*.
3. Many special words, of which the following are the most important: —

<b>angustiae</b> , <i>narrow pass.</i>	<b>mānēs</b> , <i>spirits of the dead.</i>
<b>arma</b> , <i>weapons.</i>	<b>minae</b> , <i>threats.</i>
<b>dēliciae</b> , <i>delight.</i>	<b>moenia</b> , <i>city walls.</i>
<b>dīvitiae</b> , <i>riches.</i>	<b>nūptiae</b> , <i>marriage.</i>
<b>īdūs</b> , <i>Ides.</i>	<b>posterī</b> , <i>descendants.</i>
<b>indūtia</b> , <i>truce.</i>	<b>reliquiae</b> , <i>remainder.</i>
<b>insidiae</b> , <i>ambush.</i>	<b>tenebrae</b> , <i>darkness.</i>
<b>mājōrēs</b> , <i>ancestors.</i>	<b>verbera</b> , <i>blows.</i>

Also in classical prose regularly —

<b>cervicēs</b> , <i>neck.</i>	<b>nārēs</b> , <i>nose.</i>
<b>fidēs</b> , <i>lyre.</i>	<b>viscera</b> , <i>viscera.</i>

### Nouns used only in Certain Cases.

57. 1. **Used in only One Case.** Many nouns of the Fourth Declension are found only in the Ablative Singular; as, **jussū**, *by the order*; **injussū**, *without the order*; **nātū**, *by birth*.

2. **Used in Two Cases.**

- a. **Fors** (*chance*), Nom. Sing.; **forte**, Abl. Sing.
- b. **Spontis** (*free-will*), Gen. Sing.; **sponte**, Abl. Sing.

3. **Used in Three Cases.** **Nēmō**, *no one* (Nom.); has also the Dat. **nēmīnī** and the Acc. **nēmīnem**. The Gen. and Abl. are supplied by the corresponding cases of **nūllus**; *viz.* **nūllius** and **nūllō**.

4. **Impetus** has the Nom., Acc., and Abl. Sing., and the Nom. and Acc. Plu.; *viz.* **impetus, impetum, impetū, impetūs**.
5. *a.* **Precī, precem, prece**, lacks the Nom. and Gen. Sing.  
*b.* **Viciā, vicem, vice**, lacks the Nom. and Dat. Sing.
6. **Opis, dapis, and frūgis**, — all lack the Nom. Sing.
7. Many monosyllables of the Third Declension lack the Gen. Plu.; as, **cor, lūx, sōl, aes, ōs (ōris), rūs, sāl, tūs**.

### Indeclinable Nouns.

58. Here belong —

<b>fās</b> , n., <i>right</i> .	<b>nefās</b> , n., <i>impiety</i> .
<b>īnstar</b> , n., <i>likeness</i> .	<b>nihil</b> , n., <i>nothing</i> .
<b>māne</b> , n., <i>morning</i> .	<b>seculus</b> , n., <i>sex</i> .

1. With the exception of **māne** (which may serve also as Ablative, *in the morning*), the nouns in this list are simply Neuters confined in use to the Nominative and Accusative Singular.

### Heteroclitics.

59. These are nouns whose forms are partly of one declension, and partly of another. Thus:—

1. Several nouns have the entire Singular of one declension, while the Plural is of another; as,—

**vās, vāsīs** (*vessel*); Plu., **vāsa, vāsōrum, vāsīs, etc.**  
**jūgerum, jūgerī** (*acre*); Plu., **jūgera, jūgerum, jūgeribus, etc.**

2. Several nouns, while belonging in the main to one declension, have certain special forms belonging to another. Thus:—

- a)* Many nouns of the First Declension ending in **-ia** take also a Nom. and Acc. of the Fifth; as, **māteriās, māteriem, material**, as well as **māteria, māteriam**.
- b)* **Famēs, hunger**, regularly of the Third Declension, has the Abl. **famē** of the Fifth.
- c)* **Requīs, requiētis, rest**, regularly of the Third Declension, takes an Acc. of the Fifth, **requiem**, in addition to **requiētem**.
- d)* Besides **plēbs, plēbis, common people**, of the Third Declension, we find **plēbēs, plēbēī** (also **plēbī**, see § 52. 2), of the Fifth.

**Heterogeneous Nouns.****60. Heterogeneous nouns vary in Gender. Thus:—**

1. Several nouns of the Second Declension have two forms,— one Masc. in *-us*, and one Neuter in *-um*; as, *clipeus, clipeum, shield*; *carrus, carrum, cart*.

2. Other nouns have one gender in the Singular, another in the Plural; as,—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>balneum, n., bath</i> ;	<i>balneae, f., bath-house.</i>
<i>epulum, n., feast</i> ;	<i>epulae, f., feast.</i>
<i>frēnum, n., bridle</i> ;	<i>frēnī, m. (rarely frēna, n.), bridle.</i>
<i>jocus, m., jest</i> ;	<i>joca, n. (also joci, m.), jests.</i>
<i>locus, m., place</i> ;	<i>loca, n., places</i> ; <i>locī, m., passages</i> <i>or topics in an author.</i>
<i>rāstrum, n., rake</i> ;	<i>rāstri, m.</i> ; <i>rāstra, n., rakes.</i>

a. Heterogeneous nouns may at the same time be heteroclites, as in case of the first two examples above.

**Plurals with Change of Meaning.**

**61. The following nouns have one meaning in the Singular, and another in the Plural:—**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>aedēs, temple</i> ;	<i>aedēs, house.</i>
<i>auxilium, help</i> ;	<i>auxilia, auxiliary troops.</i>
<i>carcer, prison</i> ;	<i>carcerēs, stalls for racing-chariots.</i>
<i>castrum, fort</i> ;	<i>castra, camp.</i>
<i>cōpia, abundance</i> ;	<i>cōpiae, troops, resources.</i>
<i>finis, end</i> ;	<i>finēs, borders, territory.</i>
<i>fortūna, fortune</i> ;	<i>fortūnae, possessions, wealth.</i>
<i>grātia, favor</i> ;	<i>grātiae, thanks.</i>
<i>impedimentum, hindrance</i> ;	<i>impedimenta, baggage.</i>
<i>littera, letter (of the alphabet)</i> ;	<i>litterae, epistle, literature.</i>
<i>mōs, habit, custom</i> ;	<i>mōrēs, character.</i>
<i>opera, help, service</i> ;	<i>operae, laborers.</i>
<i>(ops) opis, help</i> ;	<i>opēs, resources.</i>
<i>pars, part</i> ;	<i>partēs, party, rôle.</i>
<i>sāl, salt</i> ;	<i>sālēs, wit.</i>

**B. ADJECTIVES.**

62. Adjectives denote *quality*. They are declined like nouns, and fall into two classes, —

1. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.
2. Adjectives of the Third Declension.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND  
DECLENSIONS.

63. In these the Masculine is declined like **hortus**, **puer**, or **ager**, the Feminine like **porta**, and the Neuter like **bellum**. Thus, Masculine like **hortus** : —

**Bonus**, *good*.

SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>bonus</b>	<b>bona</b>	<b>bonum</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>bonī</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>bonō</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonō</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>bonum</b>	<b>bonam</b>	<b>bonum</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>bone</b>	<b>bona</b>	<b>bonum</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>bonō</b>	<b>bonā</b>	<b>bonō</b>

PLURAL.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>bonī</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bona</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>bonōrum</b>	<b>bonārum</b>	<b>bonōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>bonōs</b>	<b>bonās</b>	<b>bona</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>bonī</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bona</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>

- a. The Genitive Singular Masculine and Neuter of Adjectives in **-ius** ends in **-ī** (not in **-I** as in case of Nouns; see § 25. 1; 2). So also the Vocative Singular of such Adjectives ends in **-īe**, not in **-I**. Thus **eximius** forms Genitive **eximī**; Vocative **eximīe**.

**64. Masculine like puer : —**

**Tener, tender.**

**SINGULAR.**

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	tener	tenera	tenerum
<i>Gen.</i>	tenerī	tenerae	tenerī
<i>Dat.</i>	tenerō	tenerae	tenerō
<i>Acc.</i>	tenerum	teneram	tenerum
<i>Voc.</i>	tener	tenera	tenerum
<i>Abl.</i>	tenerō	tenerā	tenerō

**PLURAL.**

<i>Nom.</i>	tenerī	tenerae	tenera
<i>Gen.</i>	tenerōrum	tenerārum	tenerōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	tenerīs	tenerīs	tenerīs
<i>Acc.</i>	tenerōs	tenerās	tenera
<i>Voc.</i>	tenerī	tenerae	tenera
<i>Abl.</i>	tenerīs	tenerīs	tenerīs

**65. Masculine like ager : —**

**Sacer, sacred.**

**SINGULAR.**

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	sacer	sacra	sacrum
<i>Gen.</i>	sacrī	sacrae	sacrī
<i>Dat.</i>	sacrō	sacrae	sacrō
<i>Acc.</i>	sacrum	sacram	sacrum
<i>Voc.</i>	sacer	sacra	sacrum
<i>Abl.</i>	sacrō	sacrā	sacrō

**PLURAL.**

<i>Nom.</i>	sacrī	sacrae	sacra
<i>Gen.</i>	sacrōrum	sacrārum	sacrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	sacrīs	sacrīs	sacrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	sacrōs	sacrās	sacra
<i>Voc.</i>	sacrī	sacrae	sacra
<i>Abl.</i>	sacrīs	sacrīs	sacrīs

1. Most adjectives in *-er* are declined like *sacer*. The following are declined like *tener*: *asper, rough; lacer, torn; liber, free;*

**miser, wretched; prōsper, prosperous;** compounds in **-fer** and **-ger**; sometimes **dexter, right**.

2. **Satur, full,** is declined: **satur, satura, saturum**.

### Nine Irregular Adjectives.

66. Here belong —

<b>alius, another;</b>	<b>alter, the other;</b>
<b>illius, any;</b>	<b>nūllus, none;</b>
<b>uter, which? (of two);</b>	<b>neuter, neither;</b>
<b>sōlus, alone;</b>	<b>tōtus, whole;</b>
<b>ūnus, one, alone.</b>	

They are declined as follows: —

SINGULAR.						
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>alius</b>	<b>alia</b>	<b>aliud</b>	<b>alter</b>	<b>altera</b>	<b>alterum</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>alterius</b>	<b>alterius</b>	<b>alterius</b> <sup>1</sup>	<b>alterius</b>	<b>alterius</b>	<b>alterius</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>aliī</b>	<b>aliī</b>	<b>aliī</b>	<b>alterī</b>	<b>alterī</b> <sup>2</sup>	<b>alterī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>alium</b>	<b>aliā</b>	<b>aliud</b>	<b>alterum</b>	<b>alterā</b>	<b>alterum</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>aliō</b>	<b>aliā</b>	<b>aliō</b>	<b>alterō</b>	<b>alterā</b>	<b>alterō</b>
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>uter</b>	<b>utra</b>	<b>utrum</b>	<b>tōtus</b>	<b>tōta</b>	<b>tōtum</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>utrius</b>	<b>utrius</b>	<b>utrius</b>	<b>tōtius</b>	<b>tōtius</b>	<b>tōtius</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>utrī</b>	<b>utrī</b>	<b>utrī</b>	<b>tōtī</b>	<b>tōtī</b>	<b>tōtī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>utrum</b>	<b>utrā</b>	<b>utrum</b>	<b>tōtum</b>	<b>tōtā</b>	<b>tōtum</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>utrō</b>	<b>utrā</b>	<b>utrō</b>	<b>tōtō</b>	<b>tōtā</b>	<b>tōtō</b>

1. All these words lack the Vocative. The Plural is regular.  
2. **Neuter** is declined like **uter**.

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

67. These fall into three classes, —

1. Adjectives of three terminations in the Nominative Singular, — one for each gender.
2. Adjectives of two terminations.
3. Adjectives of one termination.

<sup>1</sup> This is almost always used instead of **alius** in the Genitive.

<sup>2</sup> A Dative Singular Feminine **alterae** also occurs.

- a. With the exception of Comparatives, and a few other words mentioned below in § 70. 1, all Adjectives of the Third Declension follow the inflection of I-stems; *i.e.* they have the Ablative Singular in **-ī**, the Genitive Plural in **-ium**, the Accusative Plural in **-īs** (as well as **-ēs**) in the Masculine and Feminine, and the Nominative and Accusative Plural in **-ia** in Neuters.

### Adjectives of Three Terminations.

68. These are declined as follows:—

#### **Ācer, sharp.**

##### SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Voc.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

##### PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrēs, -īs	ācrēs, -īs	ācria
<i>Voc.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

1. Like **ācer** are declined **alacer**, *lively*; **campester**, *level*; **celeber**, *famous*; **equester**, *equestrian*; **palūster**, *marshy*; **pedester**, *pedestrian*; **puter**, *rotten*; **salūber**, *wholesome*; **silvester**, *woody*; **terrester**, *terrestrial*; **volucer**, *winged*; also names of months in **-ber**, as **September**.

2. **Celer**, **celeris**, **celere**, *swift*, retains the **e** before **r**, but lacks the Genitive Plural.

3. In the Nominative Singular of Adjectives of this class the Feminine form is sometimes used for the Masculine. This is regularly true of **salūbris**, **silvestris**, and **terrestris**. In case of the other words in the list, the use of the Feminine for the Masculine is confined chiefly to early and late Latin, and to poetry.



## Adjectives of Two Terminations.

69. These are declined as follows :—

Fortis, strong.			Fortior, stronger		
SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.		M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	fortis	forte		fortior	fortius
Gen.	fortis	fortis		fortiōris	fortiōris
Dat.	forti	forti		fortiōri	fortiōri
Acc.	fortem	forte		fortiōrem	fortius
Voc.	fortis	forte		fortior	fortius
Abl.	forti	forti		fortiōre, -i	fortiōre, -i
PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
Nom.	fortēs	fortia		fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Gen.	fortium	fortium		fortiōrum	fortiōrum
Dat.	fortibus	fortibus		fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Acc.	fortēs, -is	fortia		fortiōrēs, -is	fortiōra
Voc.	fortēs	fortia		fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Abl.	fortibus	fortibus		fortiōribus	fortiōribus

1. **Fortior** is the Comparative of **fortis**. All Comparatives are regularly declined in the same way. The Acc. Plu. in **-is** is rare.

## Adjectives of One Termination.

70. Felix, happy.			Prūdēns, prudent.		
SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.		M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	fēlix	fēlix		prūdēns	prūdēns
Gen.	fēlicis	fēlicis		prūdētis	prūdētis
Dat.	fēlici	fēlici		prūdēti	prūdēti
Acc.	fēlicem	fēlix		prūdētem	prūdēns
Voc.	fēlix	fēlix		prūdēns	prūdēns
Abl.	fēlici	fēlici		prūdēti	prūdēti
PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
Nom.	fēlicēs	fēlicia		prūdētēs	prūdēntia
Gen.	fēlicium	fēlicium		prūdētium	prūdētium
Dat.	fēlicibus	fēlicibus		prūdētibus	prūdētibus
Acc.	fēlicēs, -is	fēlicia		prūdētēs, -is	prūdēntia
Voc.	fēlicēs	fēlicia		prūdētēs	prūdēntia
Abl.	fēlicibus	fēlicibus		prūdētibus	prūdētibus

	Vetus, old.		Plūs, more.	
	SINGULAR.			
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	vetus	vetus	—	plūs
<i>Gen.</i>	veteris	veteris	—	plūris
<i>Dat.</i>	veterī	veterī	—	—
<i>Acc.</i>	veterem	vetus	—	plūs
<i>Voc.</i>	vetus	vetus	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	vetere	vetere	—	plūre
	PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	veterēs	vetera	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	veterum	veterum	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	veteribus	veteribus	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	veterēs	vetera	plūrēs, -īs	plūra
<i>Voc.</i>	veterēs	vetera	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	veteribus	veteribus	plūribus	plūribus

1. It will be observed that **vetus** is declined as a pure Consonant-Stem; *i.e.* Ablative Singular in **-e**, Genitive Plural in **-um**, Nominative Plural Neuter in **-a**, and Accusative Plural Masculine and Feminine in **-ēs** only. In the same way are declined **compos**, *controlling*; **dīves**, *rich*; **particeps**, *sharing*; **pauper**, *poor*; **prīnceps**, *chief*; **sōspes**, *safe*; **superstes**, *surviving*. Yet **dīves** always has Neut. Plu. **dītia**.

2. **Inops**, *needy*, and **memor**, *mindful*, have Ablative Singular **inopī**, **memorī**, but Genitive Plural **inopum**, **memorum**.

3. Participles in **-āns** and **-ēns** follow the declension of **ī**-stems. But they do not have **-ī** in the Ablative, except when employed as adjectives; when used as participles or as substantives, they have **-e**; as, —

**ā sapientī virō**, *by a wise man*; but

**ā sapiente**, *by a philosopher*;

**Tarquiniō rēgnante**, *under the reign of Tarquin*.

4. **Plūs**, in the Singular, is always a noun.

5. In the Ablative Singular, adjectives, when used as substantives, —

a) usually retain the adjective declension; as, —

**aequālis**, *contemporary*, Abl. **quālī**.

**cōnsulāris**, *ex-consul*, Abl. **cōnsulārī**.

So names of Months; as, **Aprīlī**, *April*; **Decembrī**, *December*.

b) But adjectives used as proper names have **-e** in the Ablative Singular; as, **Celere**, *Celer*; **Juvenāle**, *Juvenal*.

- c) Patrials in **-ās, -ātis** and **-Is, -Itis**, when designating places, regularly have **-I**; as, in **Arpināti**, *on the estate at Arpinum*; yet **-e**, when used of persons; as, **ab Arpināte**, *by an Arpinatian*.

6. A very few indeclinable adjectives occur, the chief of which are **frūgi**, *frugal*, **nōquam**, *worthless*.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

71. 1. There are three degrees of Comparison, — the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

2. The Comparative is regularly formed by adding **-ior** (Neut. **-ius**), and the Superlative by adding **-issimus** (**-a, -um**), to the Stem of the Positive deprived of its final vowel; as, —

altus, <i>high</i> ,	altior, <i>higher</i> ,	altissimus, { <i>highest</i> , <i>very high</i> .
fortis, <i>brave</i> ,	fortior,	fortissimus.
fēlix, <i>fortunate</i> ,	fēlicior,	fēlicissimus.
dives, <i>rich</i> ,	divitior,	divitissimus.

So also Participles, when used as Adjectives; as, —

doctus, <i>learned</i> ,	doctior,	doctissimus.
egēns, <i>needy</i> ,	egentior,	egentissimus.

3. Adjectives in **-er** form the Superlative by appending **-rimus** to the Nominative of the Positive. The Comparative is regular. Thus: —

asper, <i>rough</i> ,	asperior,	asperrimus.
pulcher, <i>beautiful</i> ,	pulchrior,	pulcherrimus.
ācer, <i>sharp</i> ,	ācrior,	ācerrimus.
celer, <i>swift</i> ,	celerior,	celerrimus.
pauper, <i>poor</i> ,	pauperior,	pauperrimus.

a. Notice **mātūrus**, **mātūrior**, **mātūrissimus** or **mātūrrimus**.

4. Five Adjectives in **-ilis** form the Superlative by adding **-ilimus** to the Stem of the Positive deprived of its final vowel. The Comparative is regular. Thus: —

facilis, <i>easy</i> ,	facilior,	facillimus.
difficilis, <i>difficult</i> ,	difficilior,	difficillimus.
similis, <i>like</i> ,	similior,	simillimus.
dissimilis, <i>unlike</i> ,	dissimilior,	dissimillimus.
humilis, <i>low</i> ,	humilior,	humillimus.

5. Adjectives in **-dīcus**, **-fīcus**, and **-volus**, form the Comparative and Superlative as though from forms in **-dīcēns**, **-fīcēns**, **-volēns**. Thus:—

maledicus, <i>slandorous</i> ,	maledīcentior,	maledīcentissimus.
māgnificus, <i>magnificent</i> ,	māgnificentior,	māgnificentissimus.
benevolus, <i>kindly</i> ,	benevolentior,	benevolentissimus.

a. Positives in **-dīcēns** and **-volēns** occur in early Latin; as, **maledīcēns**, **benevolēns**.

### Irregular Comparison.

72. Several Adjectives vary the Stem in Comparison; *viz.*—

bonus, <i>good</i> ,	melior,	optimus.
malus, <i>bad</i> ,	pējor,	pessimus.
parvus, <i>small</i> ,	minor,	minimus.
māgnus, <i>large</i> ,	mājor,	māximus.
multus, <i>much</i> ,	plūs,	plūrimus.
frūgī, <i>thrifty</i> ,	frūgālīor,	frūgālissimus.
nēquam, <i>worthless</i> ,	nēquior,	nēquissimus.

1. Observe that the **i** of **-ior** becomes **j**—between vowels—in **pējor** and **mājor**.

### Defective Comparison.

73. 1. Positive lacking entirely,—

(Cf. <b>prae</b> , <i>in front of</i> .)	prior, <i>former</i> ,	prīmus, <i>first</i> .
(Cf. <b>citrā</b> , <i>this side of</i> .)	citerior, <i>on this side</i> ,	citimus, <i>near</i> .
(Cf. <b>ultrā</b> , <i>beyond</i> .)	ulterior, <i>farther</i> ,	ultimus, <i>farthest</i> .
(Cf. <b>intrā</b> , <i>within</i> .)	interior, <i>inner</i> ,	intimus, <i>inmost</i> .
(Cf. <b>prope</b> , <i>near</i> .)	propior, <i>nearer</i> ,	proximus, <i>nearest</i> .
(Cf. <b>dē</b> , <i>down</i> .)	dēterior, <i>inferior</i> ,	dēterrīmus, <i>worst</i> .
(Cf. archaic <b>potis</b> , <i>possible</i> .)	potior, <i>preferable</i> ,	potissimus, <i>chiefest</i> .

2. Positive occurring only in special cases,—

posterō diē, annō, <i>etc.</i> ,	} posterior, later,	postrēmus, { <i>latest</i> ,
the following day, <i>etc.</i> ,		last.
posterī, <i>descendants</i> ,	} exterior, outer,	postumus, { <i>late-born</i> ,
		posthumous.
exterī, <i>foreigners</i> ,	} exterior, outer,	extrēmus, { <i>outermost</i> .
nātiōnēs exterae, <i>foreign nations</i> ,		extimus,

inferi, <i>gods of the lower world,</i> Mare Inferum, <i>Mediterranean</i> Sea,	} inferior, lower,	{ infimus, imus, }	} lowest.
superi, <i>gods above,</i> Mare Superum, <i>Adriatic Sea,</i>			
	} superior, higher,	{ supremus, last. summus, highest.	

## 3. Comparative lacking.

vetus, <i>old,</i>	— <sup>1</sup>	veterrimus.
fidus, <i>faithful,</i>	—	fidissimus.
novus, <i>new,</i>	— <sup>2</sup>	novissimus, <sup>3</sup> last.
sacer, <i>sacred,</i>	—	sacerrimus.
falsus, <i>false,</i>	—	falsissimus.

Also in some other words less frequently used.

## 4. Superlative lacking.

alacer, <i>lively,</i>	alacrior,	—
ingēns, <i>great,</i>	ingentior,	—
salūtāris, <i>wholesome,</i>	salūtārior,	—
juvenis, <i>young,</i>	jūnior,	— <sup>4</sup>
senex, <i>old,</i>	senior.	— <sup>5</sup>

a. The Superlative is lacking also in many adjectives in -ālis, -ilis, -ilis, -bilis, and in a few others.

Comparison by *Magis* and *Māximē*.

74. Many adjectives do not admit terminational comparison, but form the Comparative and Superlative degrees by prefixing *magis* (*more*) and *māximē* (*most*). Here belong —

1. Many adjectives ending in -ālis, -āris, -idus, -ilis, -icus, -imus, -inus, -ōrus.

2. Adjectives in -us preceded by a vowel; as, *idōneus*, *adapted*; *arduus*, *steep*; *necessārius*, *necessary*.

a. Adjectives in -quus, of course, do not come under this rule. The first u in such cases is not a vowel, but a consonant.

<sup>1</sup> Supplied by *vetustior*, from *vetustus*.

<sup>2</sup> Supplied by *recentior*.

<sup>3</sup> For *newest*, *recentissimus* is used.

<sup>4</sup> Supplied by *minimus nātū*.

<sup>5</sup> Supplied by *māximus nātū*.

## Adjectives not admitting Comparison.

## 75. Here belong —

1. Many adjectives which, from the nature of their signification, do not admit of comparison; as, *hodiernus*, of to-day; *annuus*, annual; *mortalis*, mortal.
2. Some special words; as, *mīrus*, gnārus, *merus*; and a few others.

## FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

76. Adverbs are for the most part derived from adjectives, and depend upon them for their comparison.

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form the Positive by changing -ī of the Genitive Singular to -ē; those derived from adjectives of the Third Declension, by changing -is of the Genitive Singular to -iter; as, —

cārus,	cārē, <i>dearly</i> ;
pulcher,	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i> ;
ācer,	ācriter, <i>fiercely</i> ;
levis,	leviter, <i>lightly</i> .

α. But Adjectives in -ns, and a few others, add -ter (instead of -iter), to form the Adverb; as, —

sapiēns,	sapienter, <i>wisely</i> ;
audāx,	audācter, <i>boldly</i> ;
sollers,	sollerter, <i>skillfully</i> .

2. The Comparative of all Adverbs regularly consists of the Accusative Singular Neuter of the Comparative of the Adjective; while the Superlative of the Adverb is formed by changing the -ī of the Genitive Singular of the Superlative of the Adjective to -ē. Thus —

(cārus)	cārē, <i>dearly</i> ,	cārius,	cārissimē.
(pulcher)	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i> ,	pulchrius,	pulcherrimē.
(ācer)	ācriter, <i>fiercely</i> ,	ācrius,	ācerrimē.
(levis)	leviter, <i>lightly</i> ,	levius,	levissimē.
(sapiēns)	sapienter, <i>wisely</i> ,	sapientius,	sapientissimē.
(audāx)	audācter, <i>boldly</i> ,	audācius,	audācissimē.

## Adverbs Peculiar in Comparison and Formation.

## 77. 1.

benē, <i>well</i> ,	melius,	optimē.
malē, <i>ill</i> ,	pējus,	pessimē.
māgnopere, <i>greatly</i> ,	magis,	māximē.
multum, <i>much</i> ,	plūs,	plūrimum.
nōn multum,	} <i>little</i> ,	minimē.
parum,		
diū, <i>long</i> ,	diūtius,	diūtissimē.
nēquiter, <i>worthlessly</i> ,	nēquius,	nēquissimē.
saepe, <i>often</i> ,	saepius,	saepissimē.
mātūrē, <i>betimes</i> ,	mātūrius,	{ mātūrrimē, mātūriissimē.
prope, <i>near</i> ,	propius,	proximē.
nūper, <i>recently</i> ,	—	nūperrimē.
—	potius, <i>rather</i> .	potissimum, <i>especially</i> .
—	prius, { <i>previously</i> , <i>before</i> ,	primum, <i>first</i> .
secus, <i>otherwise</i> ,	sētius, <i>less</i> .	—

2. A number of adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form an Adverb in -ē, instead of -ō; as, —

crēbrō, <i>frequently</i> ;	falsō, <i>falsely</i> ;
continuō, <i>immediately</i> ;	subitō, <i>suddenly</i> ;
rārō, <i>rarely</i> ; and a few others.	

a. cito, *quickly*, has -ō.

3. A few adjectives employ the Accusative Singular Neuter as the Positive of the Adverb; as, —

multum, <i>much</i> ;	minimum, <i>least</i> ;
paulum, <i>little</i> ;	facile, <i>easily</i> .

4. A few adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form the Positive in -iter; as, —

fīrmus, fīrmiter, <i>firmly</i> ;	hūmānus, hūmāniter, <i>humanly</i> ;
largus, largiter, <i>copiously</i> ;	alius, aliter, <i>otherwise</i> .

a. violentus has violentē.

5. Various other adverbial suffixes occur, the most important of which are -tus and -tim; as, antiquitus, *anciently*; paulātim, *gradually*.

## NUMERALS.

## 78. Numerals may be divided into —

## I. Numeral Adjectives, comprising —

*a. Cardinals*; as, **ūnus**, *one*; **duo**, *two*; etc.

*b. Ordinals*; as, **prīmus**, *first*; **secundus**, *second*; etc.

*c. Distributives*; as, **singulī**, *one by one*; **binī**, *two by two*; etc.

II. Numeral Adverbs; as, **semel**, *once*; **bis**, *twice*; etc.

## 79. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	ADVERBS.
1.	ūnus, ūna, ūnum	prīmus, <i>first</i>	singulī, <i>one by one</i>	semel
2.	duo, duae, duo	secundus, <i>second</i>	binī, <i>two by two</i>	bis
3.	trēs, tria	tertius, <i>third</i>	ternī (trīnī)	ter
4.	quattuor	quartus, <i>fourth</i>	quaternī	quater
5.	quinque	quīntus, <i>fifth</i>	quīnī	quinqūiēs
6.	sex	sextus	sēnī	sexiēs
7.	septem	septimus	septēnī	septiēs
8.	octō	octāvus	octōnī	octiēs
9.	novem	nōnus	novēnī	noviēs
10.	decem	decimus	dēnī	deciēs
11.	ūndecim	ūndecimus	ūndēnī	ūndeciēs
12.	duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī	duodeciēs
13.	tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī dēnī	terdeciēs
14.	quattuordecim	quartus decimus	quaternī dēnī	quaterdeciēs
15.	quindecim	quīntus decimus	quīnī dēnī	quinqūiēs deciēs
16.	{ sēdecim sexdecim }	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī	sexiēs deciēs
17.	septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī	septiēs deciēs
18.	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsīmus	duodēvicēnī	octiēs deciēs
19.	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsīmus	ūndēvicēnī	noviēs deciēs
20.	vigintī	vicēsīmus	vicēnī	vicīēs
21.	{ vigintī ūnus ūnus et vigintī }	vicēsīmus prīmus ūnus et vicēsīmus	vicēnī singulī singulī et vicēnī	{ vicīēs semel
22.	{ vigintī duo duo et vigintī }	vicēsīmus secundus alter et vicēsīmus	vicēnī binī binī et vicēnī	{ vicīēs bis
30.	trīgintā	trīcēsīmus	trīcēnī	trīciēs
40.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus	quadrāgēnī	quadrāgiēs
50.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus	quīnquāgēnī	quīnquāgiēs
60.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus	sexāgēnī	sexāgiēs
70.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus	septuāgēnī	septuāgiēs
80.	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus	octōgēnī	octōgiēs
90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus	nōnāgēnī	nōnāgiēs
100.	centum	centēsīmus	centēnī	centiēs



	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	ADVERBS.
101.	{ centum ūnus centum et ūnus	centēsīmus prīmus centēsīmus et prīmus	centēnī singulī centēnī et singulī	} centiēs semel
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus	ducēnī	ducentiēs
300.	trecentī	trecentēsīmus	trecēnī	trecentiēs
400.	quadringentī	quadringentēsīmus	quadringēnī	quadringentiēs
500.	quingentī	quingentēsīmus	quingēnī	quingentiēs
600.	sescentī	sescentēsīmus	sescēnī	sescentiēs
700.	septingentī	septingentēsīmus	septingēnī	septingentiēs
800.	octingentī	octingentēsīmus	octingēnī	octingentiēs
900.	nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus	nōngēnī	nōngentiēs
1,000.	mille	millēsīmus	singula millia	milliēs
2,000.	duo millia	bis millēsīmus	bīna millia	bis milliēs
100,000.	centum millia	centiēs millēsīmus	centēna millia	centiēs milliēs
1,000,000.	deciēs centēna millia	deciēs centiēs millē- simus	deciēs centēna millia	deciēs centiēs milliēs

NOTE. — **-ēsīmus** and **-iēs** are often written in the numerals instead of **-sīmus** and **-iē**.

### Declension of the Cardinals.

80. 1. The declension of **ūnus** has already been given under § 66.

2. **Duo** is declined as follows: —

<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

a. So **ambō**, *both*, except that its final **o** is long.

3. **Trēs** is declined, —

<i>Nom.</i>	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	trēs (trīs)	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	tribus	tribus

4. The hundreds (except **centum**) are declined like the Plural of **bonus**.

5. **Mille** is regularly an adjective in the Singular, and indeclinable. In the Plural it is a substantive (followed by the Genitive of the objects enumerated; § 201. 1), and is declined, —

<i>Nom.</i>	millia	<i>Acc.</i>	millia
<i>Gen.</i>	millium	<i>Voc.</i>	millia
<i>Dat.</i>	millibus	<i>Abl.</i>	millibus

Thus **mille hominēs**, *a thousand men*; but **duo millia hominum**, *two thousand men*, literally *two thousands of men*.

- a. Occasionally the Singular admits the Genitive construction; as, **mille hominum**.

6. Other Cardinals are indeclinable. Ordinals and Distributives are declined like Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

### Peculiarities in the Use of Numerals.

81. 1. The compounds from 21 to 99 may be expressed either with the larger or the smaller numeral first. In the latter case, **et** is used. Thus:—

**trīgintā sex** or **sex et trīgintā**, *thirty-six*.

2. The numerals under 90, ending in 8 and 9, are often expressed by subtraction; as,—

**duodēviginti**, *eighteen* (but also **octōdecim**);

**undēquadrāgintā**, *thirty-nine* (but also **trīgintā novem** or **novem et trīgintā**).

3. Compounds over 100 regularly have the largest number first; the others follow without **et**; as,—

**centum viginti septem**, *one hundred and twenty-seven*.

**annō millēsīmō octingentēsīmō octōgēsīmō secundō**, *in the year 1882*.

Yet **et** may be inserted where the smaller number is either a digit or one of the tens; as,—

**centum et septem**, *one hundred and seven*;

**centum et quadrāgintā**, *one hundred and forty*.

4. The Distributives are used —

- a) To denote *so many each*, *so many apiece*; as,—

**bīna talenta illi dedit**, *he gave them two talents each*.

- b) When those nouns that are ordinarily Plural in form, but Singular in meaning, are employed in a Plural sense; as,—

**bīnae litterae**, *two epistles*.

But in such cases, **ūni** (not **singuli**) is regularly employed for *one*, and **trīni** (not **terni**) for *three*; as,—

**ūnae litterae**, *one epistle*.

**trīnae litterae**, *three epistles*.

- c) In multiplication; as,—

**bis bīna sunt quattuor**, *twice two are four*.

## C. PRONOUNS.

82. A Pronoun is a word that indicates something without naming it.

83. There are the following classes of pronouns:—

- |                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| I. Personal.       | V. Intensive.       |
| II. Reflexive.     | VI. Relative.       |
| III. Possessive.   | VII. Interrogative. |
| IV. Demonstrative. | VIII. Indefinite.   |

## I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

84. These correspond to the English *I, you, he, she, it, etc.*, and are declined as follows:—

	<i>First Person.</i>	<i>Second Person.</i>	<i>Third Person.</i>
	SINGULAR.		
<i>Nom.</i>	ego, <i>I</i>	tū, <i>thou</i>	is, <i>he</i> ; ea, <i>she</i> ; id, <i>it</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	tui	(For declension see § 87.)
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi <sup>1</sup>	tibi <sup>1</sup>	
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	tē	
<i>Voc.</i>	—	tū	
<i>Abl.</i>	mē.	tē	
	PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	nōs, <i>we</i>	vōs, <i>you</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	{ nostrum	{ vestrum	
	{ nostrī	{ vestrī	
<i>Dat.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	
<i>Acc.</i>	nōs	vōs	
<i>Voc.</i>	—	vōs	
<i>Abl.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	

1. A Dative Singular **mī** occurs in poetry.

2. Emphatic forms in **-met** are occasionally found; as, **egomet**, *I myself*; **tibimet**, *to you yourself*; **tū** has **tūte** and **tūtemet** (written also **tūtimet**).

<sup>1</sup> The final **i** is sometimes long in poetry.

3. In early Latin, **mēd** and **tēd** occur as Accusative and Ablative forms.

## II. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

85. These refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they stand; like *myself, yourself*, in '*I see myself*,' etc. They are declined as follows:—

	<i>First Person.</i> Supplied by oblique cases of <i>ego</i> .	<i>Second Person.</i> Supplied by oblique cases of <i>tū</i> .	<i>Third Person.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meī, of myself</i>	<i>tui, of thyself</i>	<i>suī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi, to myself</i>	<i>tibi, to thyself</i>	<i>sibi</i> <sup>1</sup>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē, myself</i>	<i>tē, thyself</i>	<i>sē or sēsē</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē, with myself, etc.</i>	<i>tē, with thyself, etc.</i>	<i>sē or sēsē</i>

1. The Reflexive of the Third Person serves for *all genders* and for *both numbers*. Thus **suī** may mean, *of himself, herself, itself, or of themselves*; and so with the other forms.

2. All of the Reflexive Pronouns have at times a *reciprocal* force; as, — **inter sē pūgnant**, *they fight with each other*.

3. In early Latin, **sēd** occurs as Accusative and Ablative.

## III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

86. These are strictly adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and are inflected as such. They are —

<i>First Person.</i>	<i>Second Person.</i>
<b>meus, -a, -um, my;</b>	<b>tuus, -a, -um, thy;</b>
<b>noster, nostra, nostrum, our;</b>	<b>vester, vestra, vestrum, your;</b>
<i>Third Person.</i>	
<b>suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their.</b>	

1. **Suus** is exclusively Reflexive; as, —

**pater suōs līberōs amat**, *the father loves his children*.

• Otherwise, *his, her, its* are regularly expressed by the Genitive Singular of **is**, viz. **ejus**; and *their*, by the Genitive Plural, **eōrum, eārum**.

<sup>1</sup> The final *i* is sometimes long in poetry.

2. The Vocative Singular Masculine of *meus* is *mī*.  
 3. The enclitic *-pte* may be joined to the Ablative Singular of the Possessive Pronouns for the purpose of emphasis. This is particularly common in case of *suō*, *suā*; as, *suōpte*, *suāpte*.

## IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

87. These point out an object as *here* or *there*, or as *previously mentioned*. They are —

*hic*, *this* (where I am);  
*iste*, *that* (where you are);  
*ille*, *that* (something distinct from the speaker);  
*is*, *that* (weaker than *ille*);  
*Idem*, *the same*.

*Hic*, *iste*, and *ille* are accordingly the Demonstratives of the First, Second, and Third Persons respectively.

*Hic, this.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hic</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hūjus</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>hūjus</i>	<i>hūjus</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

*Iste, that, that of yours.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>iste</i>	<i>ista</i>	<i>istud</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istae</i>	<i>ista</i> <sup>3</sup>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>istius</i>	<i>istius</i>	<i>istius</i>	<i>istōrum</i>	<i>istārum</i>	<i>istōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>istum</i>	<i>istam</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>istōs</i>	<i>istās</i>	<i>ista</i> <sup>3</sup>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>istō</i>	<i>istā</i>	<i>istō</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>

*Ille* (archaic *olle*), *that, that one, he*, is declined like *iste*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The vowel is sometimes short in poetry, — *hic*.

<sup>2</sup> Forms of *hic* ending in *-s* sometimes append *-ce* for emphasis; as, *hūjusce*, *this . . . here*; *hōsce*, *hiscce*. When *-ne* is added, *-ce* becomes *-ci*; as, *hōscine*.

<sup>3</sup> For *istud*, *istūc* sometimes occurs; for *ista*, *istaec*.

<sup>4</sup> For *illud*, *illūc* sometimes occurs.

*Is, he, this, that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> is	ea	id	eī, īi, (ī)	cae	ea
<i>Gen.</i> ejus	ejus	ejus	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i> eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<i>Acc.</i> eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i> eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

*Idem, the same.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> idem	eadem	idem	{ eīdem īidem }	caedem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i> ejusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i> eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
<i>Acc.</i> eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i> eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

The Nom. Plu. Masc. also has *īdem*, and the Dat. Abl. Plu. *īsdem* or *īīdem*.

V. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN.

88. The Intensive Pronoun in Latin is *ipse*. It corresponds to the English *myself, etc.*, in '*I myself, he himself*.'

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i> ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i> ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Acc.</i> ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i> ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

VI. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

89. The Relative Pronoun is *qui*, *who*. It is declined:—

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i> cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibus <sup>2</sup>	quibus <sup>2</sup>	quibus <sup>2</sup>
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i> quō <sup>1</sup>	quā <sup>1</sup>	quō <sup>1</sup>	quibus <sup>2</sup>	quibus <sup>2</sup>	quibus <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> An Ablative *quī* occurs in *quīcum*.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes *quīs*.

## VII. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

90. The Interrogative Pronouns are **quis**, *who?* (substantive) and **quī**, *what? what kind of?* (adjective).

1. **Quis**, *who?*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL. Wanting.
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER.	
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	
<i>Gen.</i>	cūjus	cūjus	
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	

2. **quī**, *what? what kind of?* is declined precisely like the Relative Pronoun; viz. **quī**, **quae**, **quod**, etc.

- a. An old Ablative **quī** occurs, in the sense of *how?*
- b. **quī** is sometimes used for **quis** in Indirect Questions.
- c. **Quis**, when limiting words denoting persons, is sometimes an adjective. But in such cases **quis homō** = *what man?* whereas **quī homō** = *what sort of a man?*
- d. **Quis** and **quī** may be strengthened by adding **-nam**. Thus:—  
Substantive. **quisnam**, *who, pray?* **quidnam**, *what, pray?*  
Adjective. **quīnam**, **quaenam**, **quodnam**, *of what kind, pray?*

## VIII. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

91. These have the general force of *some one*, *any one*.

SUBSTANTIVES.		ADJECTIVES.		
M. AND F.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
quis,	quid, { <i>anyone,</i> <i>anything.</i>	quī,	quae or qua,	quod, <i>any.</i>
aliquis,	aliquid, { <i>someone,</i> <i>something.</i>	aliquī	aliqua,	aliquod, <i>any.</i>
quisquam,	quidquam, { <i>anyone,</i> <i>anything.</i>	No corresponding adjective.		
quispiam,	quidpiam, { <i>anyone,</i> <i>anything.</i>	quispiam,	quaepiam,	quodpiam, <i>any.</i>
quisque,	quidque, <i>each.</i>	quisque,	quaeque,	quodque, <i>each.</i>
quīvis, quaevis, quidvis,	{ <i>anyone,</i> <i>anything</i> <i>you wish.</i>	quīvis,	quaevis,	quodvis, { <i>any</i>
quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet,		quīlibet,	quaelibet,	quodlibet, { <i>you</i> <i>wish.</i>
quidam, quaedam, quiddam,	{ <i>a certain</i> <i>person,</i> <i>or thing.</i>	quidam,	quaedam,	quoddam, { <i>a cer-</i> <i>tain.</i>

1. In the Indefinite Pronouns, only the pronominal part is declined. Thus: Genitive Singular **alicujus**, **cujuslibet**, etc.

2. Note that **aliqui** has **aliqua** in the Nominative Singular Feminine, also in the Nominative and Accusative Plural Neuter. **Qui** has both **qua** and **quae** in these same cases.

3. **Quidam** forms Accusative Singular **quendam**, **quandam**; Genitive Plural **quorundam**, **quarundam**; the **m** being assimilated to **n** before **d**.

4. **Aliquis** may be used adjectively, and (occasionally) **aliqui** substantively.

5. In combination with **nē**, **sī**, **nisi**, **num**, either **quis** or **qui** may stand as a Substantive. Thus: **sī quis** or **sī qui**.

6. **Ecquis**, *anyone*, though strictly an Indefinite, generally has interrogative force. It has both substantive and adjective forms,—substantive, **ecquis**, **ecquid**; adjective, **ecqui**, **ecquae** and **ecqua**, **ecquod**.

7. **Quisquam** is not used in the Plural.

8. There are two Indefinite Relatives,—**quicumque** and **quisquis**, *whoever*. **Quicumque** declines only the first part; **quisquis** declines both, but has only **quisquis**, **quidquid**, **quodquod** in common use.

## PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

92. The following adjectives, also, frequently have pronominal force:—

1. **alius**, *another*; **alter**, *the other*;  
**uter**, *which of two?* (interr.); **neuter**, *neither*;  
*whichever of two* (rel.);  
**finis**, *one*; **nūllus**, *no one* (in oblique cases).

2. The compounds,—

**uterque**, **utraque**, **utrumque**, *each of two*;  
**utercumque**, **utracumque**, **utrumcumque**, *whoever of two*;  
**uterlibet**, **utralibet**, **utrumlibet**, *either one you please*;  
**utervis**, **utravīs**, **utrumvis**, *either one you please*;  
**alteruter**, **alterutra**, **alterutrum**, *the one or the other*.

In these, **uter** alone is declined. The rest of the word remains unchanged, except in case of **alteruter**, which may decline both parts; as,—

*Nom.* **alteruter**      **altera utra**      **alterum utrum**  
*Gen.* **alterius utrius** etc.



CHAPTER II. — *Conjugation.*

93. The Inflection of Verbs is called Conjugation.

94. Verbs have Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person :

1. Two Voices, — Active and Passive.
2. Three Moods, — Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative.
3. Six Tenses, —

Present,	Perfect,
Imperfect,	Pluperfect,
Future,	Future Perfect.

But the Subjunctive lacks the Future and Future Perfect; while the Imperative employs only the Present and Future.

4. Two Numbers, — Singular and Plural.
5. Three Persons, — First, Second, and Third.

95. These make up the so-called *Finite Verb*. Besides this, we have the following Noun and Adjective Forms :—

1. Noun Forms, — Infinitive, Gerund, and Supine.
2. Adjective Forms, — Participles (including the Gerundive).

96. The Personal Endings of the Verb are, —

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	-ō; -m; -ī (Perf. Ind.);	-r.
2.	-s; -stī (Perf. Ind.); -tō or wanting (Impv.);	-ris, -re; -re, -tor (Impv.).
3.	-t; -tō (Impv.);	-tur; -tor (Impv.).
<i>Plu.</i> 1.	-mus;	-mur.
2.	-tis; -stis (Perf. Ind.); -te, -tōte (Impv.);	-minī.
3.	-nt; -srunt (Perf. Ind.); -ntō (Impv.);	-ntur; -ntor (Impv.).

## VERB-STEMS.

97. Conjugation consists in appending certain endings to the Stem. We distinguish three different stems in a fully inflected verb, —

I. **Present Stem**, from which are formed —

- |  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| 1. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative,                | } Active and Passive. |
| 2. Present and Imperfect Subjunctive,                        |                       |
| 3. The Imperative,   |                       |
| 4. The Present Infinitive,                                   |                       |
| 5. The Present Active Participle, the Gerund, and Gerundive. |                       |

II. **Perfect Stem**, from which are formed —

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| 1. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, | } Active. |
| 2. Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive,                 |           |
| 3. Perfect Infinitive,                                 |           |

III. **Participial Stem**, from which are formed —

- |  |            |
|--|------------|
| 1. Perfect Participle,                                 | } Passive. |
| 2. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, |            |
| 3. Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive,                 |            |
| 4. Perfect Infinitive,                                 |            |

Apparently from the same stem, though really of different origin, are the Supine, the Future Active Participle, the Future Infinitive Active and Passive.

## THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

98. There are in Latin four regular Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the vowel of the termination of the Present Infinitive Active, as follows:—

CONJUGATION.	INFINITIVE TERMINATION.	DISTINGUISHING VOWEL.
I.	-āre	ā
II.	-ēre	ē
III.	-ere	ē
IV.	-ire	i

99. **PRINCIPAL PARTS.** The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and the Perfect Participle<sup>1</sup> constitute the **Principal Parts** of a Latin verb, — so called because they contain the different stems, from which the full conjugation of the verb may be derived.

<sup>1</sup> Where the Perfect Participle is not in use, the Future Active Participle, if it occurs, is given as one of the Principal Parts.

CONJUGATION OF **SUM**.

100. The irregular verb **sum** is so important for the conjugation of all other verbs that its inflection is given at the outset.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.  
**sum**

PRES. INF.  
**esse**

PERF. IND.  
**fui**

FUT. PARTIC.<sup>1</sup>  
**futūrus**

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## SINGULAR.

**sum**, *I am*,  
**es**, *thou art*,  
**est**, *he is*;

## PLURAL.

**sumus**, *we are*,  
**estis**, *you are*,  
**sunt**, *they are*.

## IMPERFECT.

**eram**, *I was*,  
**erās**, *thou wast*,  
**erat**, *he was*;

**erāmus**, *we were*,  
**erātis**, *you were*,  
**erant**, *they were*.

## FUTURE.

**erō**, *I shall be*,  
**eris**, *thou wilt be*,  
**erit**, *he will be*;

**erimus**, *we shall be*,  
**eritis**, *you will be*,  
**erunt**, *they will be*.

## PERFECT.

**fui**, *I have been, I was*,  
**fuisti**, *thou hast been, thou wast*,  
**fuit**, *he has been, he was*;

**fuimus**, *we have been, we were*,  
**fuistis**, *you have been, you were*,  
**fuērunt**,  
**fuēre**, } *they have been, they were*.

## PLUPERFECT.

**fueram**, *I had been*,  
**fuerās**, *thou hadst been*,  
**fuerat**, *he had been*;

**fuerāmus**, *we had been*,  
**fuerātis**, *you had been*,  
**fuerant**, *they had been*.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

**fuerō**, *I shall have been*,  
**fueris**, *thou wilt have been*,  
**fuerit**, *he will have been*;

**fuerimus**, *we shall have been*,  
**fueritis**, *you will have been*,  
**fuerint**, *they will have been*.

<sup>1</sup> The Perfect Participle is wanting in **sum**.

SUBJUNCTIVE.<sup>1</sup>

SINGULAR.	PRESENT.	PLURAL.
<i>sim, may I be,</i>		<i>simus, let us be,</i>
<i>sīs, mayst thou be,</i>		<i>sītis, be ye, may you be,</i>
<i>sit, let him be, may he be;</i>		<i>sint, let them be.</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>essem,<sup>2</sup> I should be,</i>	<i>essēmus, we should be,</i>
<i>essēs,<sup>2</sup> thou wouldst be,</i>	<i>essētis, you would be,</i>
<i>esset,<sup>2</sup> he would be;</i>	<i>essent,<sup>2</sup> they would be.</i>

PERFECT.

<i>fuerim, I may have been,</i>	<i>fuerimus, we may have been,</i>
<i>fueris, thou mayst have been,</i>	<i>fueritis, you may have been,</i>
<i>fuerit, he may have been;</i>	<i>fuerint, they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

<i>fuissem, I should have been,</i>	<i>fuissemus, we should have been,</i>
<i>fuisēs, thou wouldst have been,</i>	<i>fuisētis, you would have been,</i>
<i>fuisset, he would have been;</i>	<i>fuisent, they would have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. es, be thou,</i>	<i>este, be ye.</i>
<i>Fut. estō, thou shalt be,</i>	<i>estōte, ye shall be,</i>
<i>estō, he shall be;</i>	<i>suntō, they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres. esse, to be.</i>	
<i>Perf. fuisse, to have been.</i>	
<i>Fut. futūrus esse,<sup>3</sup> to be about to be.</i>	<i>Fut. futūrus,<sup>4</sup> about to be.</i>

<sup>1</sup> The meanings of the different tenses of the Subjunctive are so many and so varied, particularly in subordinate clauses, that no attempt can be made to give them here. For fuller information the pupil is referred to the Syntax.

<sup>2</sup> For *essem, essēs, esset, essent*, the forms *forem, forēs, foret, forent* are sometimes used.

<sup>3</sup> For *futūrus esse* the form *fore* is often used.

<sup>4</sup> Declined like *bonus, -a, -um*.

FIRST (OR  $\bar{A}$ -) CONJUGATION.

101.

Active Voice. — Amō, *I love*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.  
amōPRES. INF.  
amārePERF. IND.  
amāvīPERF. PASS. PARTIC.  
amātus

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## SINGULAR.

amō, *I love*,  
amās, *you love*,  
amat, *he loves*;

## PLURAL.

amāmus, *we love*,  
amātis, *you love*,  
amant, *they love*.

## IMPERFECT.

amābam, *I was loving*,  
amābās, *you were loving*,  
amābat, *he was loving*;amābāmus, *we were loving*,  
amābātis, *you were loving*,  
amābant, *they were loving*.

## FUTURE.

amābō, *I shall love*,  
amābis, *you will love*,  
amābit, *he will love*;amābimus, *we shall love*,  
amābitis, *you will love*,  
amābunt, *they will love*.

## PERFECT.

amāvī, *I have loved, I loved*,  
amāvistī, *you have loved, you*  
*loved*,  
amāvit, *he has loved, he loved*;amāvimus, *we have loved, we loved*,  
amāvistis, *you have loved, you loved*,  
amāverunt, -ere, *they have loved, they*  
*loved*.

## PLUPERFECT.

amāveram, *I had loved*,  
amāverās, *you had loved*,  
amāverat, *he had loved*;amāverāmus, *we had loved*,  
amāverātis, *you had loved*,  
amāverant, *they had loved*.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

amāverō, *I shall have loved*,  
amāveris, *you will have loved*,  
amāverit, *he will have loved*;amāverimus, *we shall have loved*,  
amāveritis, *you will have loved*,  
amāverint, *they will have loved*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.	PRESENT.*	PLURAL.
<i>amem, may I love,</i>	<i>amēmus, let us love,</i>	
<i>amēs, may you love,</i>	<i>amētis, may you love,</i>	
<i>amet, let him love;</i>	<i>ament, let them love.</i>	

## IMPERFECT.

<i>amārem, I should love,</i>	<i>amārēmus, we should love,</i>
<i>amārēs, you would love,</i>	<i>amārētis, you would love,</i>
<i>amāret, he would love;</i>	<i>amārent, they would love.</i>

## PERFECT.

<i>amāverim, I may have loved,</i>	<i>amāverimus, we may have loved,</i>
<i>amāveris, you may have loved,</i>	<i>amāveritis, you may have loved,</i>
<i>amāverit, he may have loved;</i>	<i>amāverint, they may have loved.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>amāvissem, I should have loved,</i>	<i>amāvissēmus, we should have loved,</i>
<i>amāvissēs, you would have loved,</i>	<i>amāvissētis, you would have loved,</i>
<i>amāvisset, he would have loved;</i>	<i>amāvissent, they would have loved.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. amā, love thou;</i>	<i>amāte, love ye.</i>
<i>Fut. amātō, thou shalt love,</i>	<i>amātōte, ye shall love,</i>
<i>amātō, he shall love;</i>	<i>amantō, they shall love.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres. amāre, to love.</i>
<i>Perf. amāvisse, to have loved.</i>
<i>Fut. amātūrus esse, to be about to love.</i>

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres. amāns,<sup>1</sup> loving.</i>
<i>(Gen. amantis)</i>
<i>Fut. amātūrus, about to love.</i>

## GERUND.

<i>Gen. amandī, of loving,</i>
<i>Dat. amandō, for loving,</i>
<i>Acc. amandum, loving,</i>
<i>Abl. amandō, by loving.</i>

## SUPINE.

<i>Acc. amātum, to love,</i>
<i>Abl. amātū, to love, be loved.</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> For declension of *amāns*, see § 70. 3.

FIRST (OR  $\bar{A}$ -) CONJUGATION.102. **Passive Voice.** — Amor, *I am loved.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.  
amorPRES. INF.  
amāriPERF. IND.  
amātus sum

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.  
amor  
amāris  
amātur*I am loved.*PLURAL.  
amāmur  
amāmini  
amantur

## IMPERFECT.

*I was loved.*amābar  
amābāris, or -re  
amābāturamābāmur  
amābāmini  
amābantur

## FUTURE.

*I shall be loved.*amābor  
amāberis, or -re  
amābituramābimur  
amābimini  
amābuntur

## PERFECT.

*I have been loved or I was loved.*amātus (-a, -um) sum<sup>1</sup>  
amātus es  
amātus estamātī (-ae, -a) sumus  
amātī estis  
amātī sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been loved.*amātus eram<sup>1</sup>  
amātus erās  
amātus eratamātī erāmus  
amātī erātis  
amātī erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have been loved.*amātus erō<sup>1</sup>  
amātus eris  
amātus eritamātī erimus  
amātī eritis  
amātī erunt

<sup>1</sup> *Fui, fuisti, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sum, es, etc.* So *fueram, fuerās, etc.*, for *eram, etc.*; *fuerō, etc.*, for *erō, etc.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I be loved, let him be loved.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amē	amēmur
amēris, or -re	amēmini
amētur	amentur

## IMPERFECT.

*I should be loved, he would be loved.*

amārer	amārēmur
amārēris, or -re	amārēmini
amārētur	amārēntur

## PERFECT.

*I may have been loved.*

amātus sim <sup>1</sup>	amātī sīmus
amātus sīs	amātī sītis
amātus sit	amātī sint

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have been loved, he would have been loved.*

amātus essem <sup>1</sup>	amātī essēmus
amātus essēs	amātī essētis
amātus esset	amātī essent

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> amāre, be thou loved;	amāmini, be ye loved.
<i>Fut.</i> amātor, thou shalt be loved, amātor, he shall be loved;	amantor, they shall be loved.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> amārī, to be loved.	
<i>Perf.</i> amātus esse, to have been loved.	<i>Perfect.</i> amātus, having been loved.
<i>Fut.</i> amātum irī, to be about to be loved.	<i>Gerundive.</i> amandus, to be loved, deserving to be loved.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Fuerim, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sim*; so *fuissem, etc.*, for *essem*.



SECOND (OR **Ē-**) CONJUGATION.

103.

**Active Voice.** — Moneō, *I advise.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitus

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	<i>I advise.</i>	PLURAL.
moneō		monēmus
monēs		monētis
monet		monent

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advising, or I advised.*

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbās	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

## FUTURE.

*I shall advise.*

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

## PERFECT.

*I have advised, or I advised.*

monuī	monuimus
monuisti	monuistis
monuit	monuerunt, or -ere

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised.*

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have advised.*

monuerō	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I advise, let him advise.*

## SINGULAR.

moneam  
moneās  
moneat

## PLURAL.

moneāmus  
moneātis  
moneant

## IMPERFECT.

*I should advise, he would advise.*

monērem  
monērēs  
monēret

monērēmus  
monērētis  
monērent

## PERFECT.

*I may have advised.*

monuerim  
monueris  
monuerit

monuerimus  
monueritis  
monuerint

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have advised, he would have advised.*

monuissē  
monuissēs  
monuisset

monuissēmus  
monuissētis  
monuissent

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. monē, advise thou ;**monēte, advise ye.*

*Fut. monētō, thou shalt advise,  
monētō, he shall advise ;*

*monētōte, ye shall advise,  
monentō, they shall advise.*

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres. monēre, to advise.**Perf. monuisse, to have advised.**Fut. monitūrus esse, to be about  
to advise.*

## PARTICIPLE.

*Pres. monēns, advising.**(Gen. monentis.)**Fut. monitūrus, about to advise.*

## GERUND.

*Gen. monendī, of advising,**Dat. monendō, for advising,**Acc. monendum, advising,**Abl. monendō, by advising.*

## SUPINE.

*Acc. monitum, to advise.**Abl. monitū, to advise, be advised*

SECOND (OR **Ē-**) CONJUGATION.104. **Passive Voice.** — Moneor, *I am advised.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.  
moneorPRES. INF.  
monēriPERF. IND.  
monitus sum

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.  
moneor  
monēris  
monētur*I am advised.*PLURAL.  
monēmur  
monēmini  
monentur

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advised.*monēbar  
monēbāris, or -re  
monēbāturmonēbāmur  
monēbāmini  
monēbantur

## FUTURE.

*I shall be advised.*monēbor  
monēberis, or -re  
monēbiturmonēbimur  
monēbimini  
monēbuntur

## PERFECT.

*I have been advised, I was advised.*monitus sum  
monitus es  
monitus estmoniti sumus  
moniti estis  
moniti sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been advised.*monitus eram  
monitus erās  
monitus eratmoniti erāmus  
moniti erātis  
moniti erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have been advised.*monitus erō  
monitus eris  
monitus eritmoniti erimus  
moniti eritis  
moniti erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*May I be advised, let him be advised.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
monēar	monēāmur
monēāris, or -re	monēāmini
monēātur	monēantur

IMPERFECT.

*I should be advised, he would be advised.*

monērer	monērēmur
monērēris, or -re	monērēmini
monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT.

*I may have been advised.*

monitus sim	moniti simus
monitus sis	moniti sitis
monitus sit	moniti sint

PLUPERFECT.

*I should have been advised, he would have been advised.*

monitus essem	moniti essemus
monitus esses	moniti essetis
monitus esset	moniti essent

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> monēre, be thou advised;	monēmini, be ye advised.
<i>Fut.</i> monētor, thou shalt be advised,	
monētor, he shall be advised.	monentor, they shall be advised.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> monēri, to be advised.	
<i>Perf.</i> monitus esse, to have been advised.	<i>Perfect.</i> monitus, advised.
<i>Fut.</i> monitum iri, to be about to be advised.	<i>Gerundive.</i> monendus, to be advised, deserving to be advised.

## THIRD (OR CONSONANT-) CONJUGATION.

105. Active Voice. — Regō, *I rule.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
regō	regere	rēxī	rēctus

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	<i>I rule.</i>	PLURAL.
regō		regimus
regis		regitis
regit		regunt

## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruling, or I ruled.*

regēbam	regēbāmus
regēbās	regēbātis
regēbat	regēbant

## FUTURE.

*I shall rule.*

regam	regēmus
regēs	regētis
reget	regent

## PERFECT.

*I have ruled, or I ruled.*

rēxī	rēximus
rēxistī	rēxistis
rēxit	rēxērunt, or -ēre

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had ruled.*

rēxeram	rēxerāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis
rēxerat	rēxerant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have ruled.*

rēxerō	rēxerimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis
rēxerit	rēxerint

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I rule, let him rule.*

## SINGULAR.

regam

regās

regat

## PLURAL.

regāmus

regātis

regant

## IMPERFECT.

*I should rule, he would rule.*

regerem

regerēs

regeret

regerēmus

regerētis

regerent

## PERFECT.

*I may have ruled.*

rēxerim

rēxeris

rēxerit

rēxerimus

rēxeritis

rēxerint

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have ruled, he would have ruled.*

rēxissem

rēxisseis

rēxisset

rēxisseamus

rēxisseitis

rēxisset

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. rege, rule thou ;**Fut. regitō, thou shalt rule,**regitō, he shall rule ;**regite, rule ye.**regitōte, ye shall rule,**reguntō, they shall rule.*

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres. regere, to rule.**Perf. rēxisse, to have ruled.**Fut. rēctūrus esse, to be about to rule.*

## PARTICIPLE.

*Pres. regēns, ruling.**(Gen. regentis.)**Fut. rēctūrus, about to rule.*

## GERUND.

*Gen. regendī, of ruling,**Dat. regendō, for ruling,**Acc. regendum, ruling,**Abl. regendō, by ruling.*

## SUPINE.

*Acc. rēctum, to rule,**Abl. rēctū, to rule, be ruled.*

## THIRD (OR CONSONANT-) CONJUGATION.

106. **Passive Voice.** — Regor, *I am ruled.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.		
PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
regor	regī	rēctus sum

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	<i>I am ruled.</i>	PLURAL.
regor		regimur
regēris		regimini
regitur		reguntur

## IMPERFECT.

	<i>I was ruled.</i>	
regēbar		regēbāmur
regēbāris, or -re		regēbāmini
regēbātur		regēbantur

## FUTURE.

	<i>I shall be ruled.</i>	
regar		regēmur
regēris, or -re		regēmini
regētur		regentur

## PERFECT.

*I have been ruled, or I was ruled.*

rēctus sum	rēctī sumus
rēctus es	rēctī estis
rēctus est	rēctī sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been ruled.*

rēctus eram	rēctī erāmus
rēctus erās	rēctī erātis
rēctus erat	rēctī erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have been ruled.*

rēctus erō	rēctī erimus
rēctus eris	rēctī eritis
rēctus erit	rēctī erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I be ruled, let him be ruled.*

SINGULAR.  
 regar  
 regāris, or -re  
 regātur

PLURAL.  
 regāmur  
 regāmini  
 regantur

## IMPERFECT.

*I should be ruled, he would be ruled.*

regerer  
 regerēris, or -re  
 regerētur

regerēmur  
 regerēmini  
 regerentur

## PERFECT.

*I may have been ruled.*

rēctus sim  
 rēctus sis  
 rēctus sit

rēcti simus  
 rēcti sitis  
 rēcti sint

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have been ruled, he would have been ruled.*

rēctus essem  
 rēctus essēs  
 rēctus esset

rēcti essemus  
 rēcti essētis  
 rēcti essent

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. regere, be thou ruled;**regimini, be ye ruled.**Fut. regitor, thou shalt be ruled,**regitor, he shall be ruled;**reguntor, they shall be ruled.*

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres. regī, to be ruled.**Perf. rēctus esse, to have been ruled.**Fut. rēctum iri, to be about to be ruled.*

## PARTICIPLE.

*Perfect. rēctus, ruled.**Gerundive. regendus, to be ruled, deserving to be ruled.*



FOURTH (OR  $\bar{I}$ -) CONJUGATION.107. Active Voice. — Audiō, *I hear.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
audiō	audire	audivi	auditus

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	<i>I hear.</i>	PLURAL.
audiō		audimus
audis		auditis
audit		audiunt

## IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing, or I heard.*

audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

## FUTURE.

*I shall hear.*

audiam	audiemus
audies	audietis
audiet	audient

## PERFECT.

*I have heard, or I heard.*

audivi	audivimus
audivisti	audivistis
audivit	audiverunt, or -ere

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard.*

audiveram	audiverāmus
audiverās	audiverātis
audiverat	audiverant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have heard.*

audiverō	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit	audiverint

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I hear, let him hear.*

## SINGULAR.

audiam

audiās

audiat

## PLURAL.

audiāmus

audiātis

audiant

## IMPERFECT.

*I should hear, he would hear.*

audīrem

audīrēs

audīret

audīrēmus

audīrētis

audīrent

## PERFECT.

*I may have heard.*

audīverim

audīveris

audīverit

audīverimus

audīveritis

audīverint

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have heard, he would have heard.*

audīvissem

audīvisēs

audīvisset

audīvissemus

audīvisētis

audīvisset

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres.* audī, hear thou;*Fut.* audītō, thou shalt hear,

audītō, he shall hear;

audīte, hear ye.

audītōte, ye shall hear,

audiuntō, they shall hear.

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* audīre, to hear.*Perf.* audīvisse, to have heard.*Fut.* audītūrus esse, to be about  
to hear.

## PARTICIPLE.

*Pres.* audīēns, hearing.

(Gen. audientis.)

*Fut.* audītūrus, about to hear.

## GERUND.

*Gen.* audiendī, of hearing,*Dat.* audiendō, for hearing,*Acc.* audiendum, hearing,*Abl.* audiendō, by hearing.

## SUPINE.

*Acc.* audītum, to hear,*Abl.* audītū, to hear, be heard.

FOURTH (OR *Ī-*) CONJUGATION.108. **Passive Voice.** — *Audior, I am heard.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.  
**audior**PRES. INF.  
**audiri**PERF. IND.  
**auditus sum**

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.  
**audior**  
**audiris**  
**auditur***I am heard.*PLURAL.  
**audimur**  
**audimini**  
**audiuntur**

## IMPERFECT.

*I was heard.***audiēbar**  
**audiēbāris, or -re**  
**audiēbātur****audiēbāmur**  
**audiēbāmini**  
**audiēbantur**

## FUTURE.

*I shall be heard.***audiar**  
**audiēris, or -re**  
**audiētur****audiēmur**  
**audiēmini**  
**audientur**

## PERFECT.

*I have been heard, or I was heard.***auditus sum**  
**auditus es**  
**auditus est****auditi sumus**  
**auditi estis**  
**auditi sunt**

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.***auditus eram**  
**auditus erās**  
**auditus erat****auditi erāmus**  
**auditi erātis**  
**auditi erant**

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have been heard.***auditus erō**  
**auditus eris**  
**auditus erit****auditi erimus**  
**auditi eritis**  
**auditi erunt**

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I be heard, let him be heard.*

## SINGULAR.

audiar  
 audiāris, or -re  
 audiātur

## PLURAL.

audiāmur  
 audiāmini  
 audiantur

## IMPERFECT.

*I should be heard, he would be heard.*

audīrer  
 audīrēris, or -re  
 audīrētur

audīrēmur  
 audīrēmini  
 audīrentur

## PERFECT.

*I may have been heard.*

audītus sim  
 audītus sis  
 audītus sit

audītī simus  
 audītī sitis  
 audītī sint

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have been heard, he would have been heard.*

audītus essem  
 audītus essēs  
 audītus esset

audītī essēmus  
 audītī essētis  
 audītī essent

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. audire, be thou heard;**audiāmini, be ye heard.*

*Fut. auditor, thou shalt be heard,  
 auditor, he shall be heard;*

*audiuntor, they shall be heard.*

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres. audiri, to be heard.**Perf. auditus esse, to have been heard.**Fut. auditum iri, to be about to be heard.*

## PARTICIPLE.

*Perfect. auditus, heard.*

*Gerundive. audiendus, to be heard, deserving to be heard.*

## VERBS IN -IŌ OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

109. 1. Verbs in -iŏ of the Third Conjugation take the endings of the Fourth Conjugation, wherever the latter endings have two successive vowels. This occurs only in the Present System.

2. Here belong —

- a) capiŏ, to take; cupiŏ, to desire; faciŏ, to make; fodiŏ, to dig; fugiŏ, to flee; jaciŏ, to throw; pariŏ, to bear; quatiŏ, to shake; rapiŏ, to seize; sapiŏ, to taste.
- b) Compounds of laciŏ and speciŏ (both ante-classical); as, alliciŏ, entice; cōspiciŏ, behold.
- c) The deponents gradior, to go; morior, to die; patior, to suffer.

## 110. Active Voice. — Capiŏ, I take.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
capiŏ,	capere,	cēpī,	captus.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.	PRESENT TENSE.	PLURAL.
capiŏ, capis, capit;		capimus, capitis, capiunt.
IMPERFECT.		
capiēbam, -iēbās, -iēbat;		capiēbāmus, -iēbātis, -iēbant.
FUTURE.		
capiam, -iēs, -iet;		capiēmus, -iētis, -ient.
PERFECT.		
cēpī, -istī, -it;		cēpimus, -istis, -ērunt, or ēre.
PLUPERFECT.		
cēperam, -erās, -erat;		cēperāmus, -erātis, -erant.
FUTURE PERFECT.		
cēperō, -eris, -erit;		cēperimus, -eritis, -erint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.	PRESENT.	PLURAL.
capiam, -iās, -iat;		capiāmus, -iātis, -iant.
	IMPERFECT.	
caperem, -erēs, -eret;		caperēmus, -erētis, -erent.
	PERFECT.	
cēperim, -eris, -erit;		cēperimus, -eritis, -erint.
	PLUPERFECT.	
cēpissēm, -issēs, -isset;		cēpissēmus, -issētis, -issent.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> cape;	capite.
<i>Fut.</i> capitō,	capitōte,
capitō;	capiuntō.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> capere.
<i>Perf.</i> cēpisse.
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus esse.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> capiēns.
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus.

## GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i> capiendī,
<i>Dat.</i> capiendō,
<i>Acc.</i> capiendum,
<i>Abl.</i> capiendō.

## SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i> captum,
<i>Abl.</i> captū.

111. **Passive Voice.** — *Capior, I am taken.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
capior,	capī,	captus sum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.	PRESENT TENSE.	PLURAL.
capior, caperis, capitur;		capimur, capiminī, capiuntur.
	IMPERFECT.	
capiēbar, -iēbāris, -iēbātur;		capiēbāmur, -iēbāminī, iēbantur.
	FUTURE.	
capiar, -iēris, -iētur;		capiemur, -iēminī, -ientur.

*Inflections.*

SINGULAR.	PERFECT.	PLURAL.
captus sum, es, est ;		capti sumus, estis, sunt.
	PLUPERFECT.	
captus eram, erās, erat ;		capti erāmus, erātis, erant.
	FUTURE PERFECT.	
captus erō, eris, erit ;		capti erimus, eritis, erunt.
SUBJUNCTIVE.		
	PRESENT.	
capiar, -iāris, -iātur ;		capiāmur, -iāminī, -iantur.
	IMPERFECT.	
caperer, -erēris, -erētur ;		caperēmur, -erēminī, -erentur.
	PERFECT.	
captus sim, sis, sit ;		capti sīmus, sītis, sint.
	PLUPERFECT.	
captus essem, essēs, esset ;		capti essēmus, essētis, essent.
	IMPERATIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i> capere ;		capimini.
<i>Fut.</i> capitor, capitor ;		capiantur.
INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> capī.		
<i>Perf.</i> captus esse.	<i>Perfect.</i>	captus.
<i>Fut.</i> captum irī.	<i>Gerundive.</i>	capiens.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

112. Deponent Verbs have in the main Passive *forms* with Active *meaning*. But —

- They have the following Active forms: Future Infinitive, Present and Future Participles, Gerund, and Supine.
- They have the following Passive meanings: always in the Gerundive, and sometimes in the Perfect Passive Participle; as, —

**sequendus**, *to be followed* ; **adeptus**, *attained*.

## 113. Paradigms of Deponent Verbs are —

- I. Conj.     **mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum, admire.**  
 II. Conj.    **vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear.**  
 III. Conj.    **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow.**  
 IV. Conj.    **largior, largīrī, largītus sum, give.**  
 III. (in -ior) **patior, patī, passus sum, suffer.**

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	III (in -ior).
<i>Pres.</i>	mīror	vereor	sequor	largior	patior
	mīrāris	verērīs	sequeris	largīris	pateris
	mīrātur	verētur	sequitur	largītur	patitur
	mīrāmur	verēmur	sequimur	largīmur	patimur
	mīrāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	largīminī	patiminī
	mīrantur	verentur	sequuntur	largiuntur	patiuntur
<i>Impf.</i>	mīrābar	verēbar	sequēbar	largiēbar	patiēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	mīrābor	verēbor	sequar	largiar	patiar
<i>Perf.</i>	mīrātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	largītus sum	passus sum
<i>Plup.</i>	mīrātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	largītus eram	passus eram
<i>F. P.</i>	mīrātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	largītus erō	passus erō

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	mīrer	verear	sequar	largiar	patiar
<i>Impf.</i>	mīrārer	verērer	sequerer	largīrer	paterer
<i>Perf.</i>	mīrātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	largītus sim	passus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	mīrātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	largītus essem	passus essem

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	mīrāre	verēre	sequere	largīre	patere
<i>Fut.</i>	mīrātor	verētor	sequitor	largītor	patītor

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	mīrārī	verērī	sequī	largīrī	patī
<i>Perf.</i>	mīrātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	largītus esse	passus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	mīrātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	largītūrus esse	passūrus esse

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i>	mīrāns	verēns	sequēns	largiēns	patiēns
<i>Fut.</i>	mīrātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	largītūrus	passūrus
<i>Perf.</i>	mīrātus	veritus	secūtus	largītus	passus
<i>Ger.</i>	mīrandus	verendus	sequendus	largiendus	patiendus

## GERUND.

mīrandī,	verendī	sequendī	largiendī	patiendī
mīrandō, etc.	verendō, etc.	sequendō, etc.	largiendō, etc.	patiendō, etc.

## SUPINE.

mīrātum, -tū	veritum, -tū	secūtum, -tū	largītum, -tū	passum, -sū
--------------	--------------	--------------	---------------	-------------



## SEMI-DEPONENTS.

114. 1. Semi-Deponents are verbs which have the Present System in the Active Voice, but the Perfect System in the Passive without change of meaning. Here belong —

**audeō, audēre, ausus sum, to dare.**  
**gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, to rejoice.**  
**soleō, solēre, solitus sum, to be wont.**  
**fidēō, fidere, fīsus sum, to trust.**

2. The following verbs have a Perfect Passive Participle with Active meaning: —

<b>adolēscō, grow up;</b>	<b>adultus, having grown up.</b>
<b>cēnāre, dine;</b>	<b>cēnātus, having dined.</b>
<b>placēre, please;</b>	<b>placitus, having pleased, agreeable.</b>
<b>prandēre, lunch;</b>	<b>prānsus, having lunched.</b>
<b>pōtāre, drink;</b>	<b>pōtus, having drunk.</b>
<b>jūrāre, swear;</b>	<b>jūrātus, having sworn.</b>

a. Jūrātus is used in a passive sense also.

3. Revertor and dēvertor both regularly form their Perfect in the Active Voice; viz. —

**revertor, revertī (Inf.), revertī (Perf.), to return.**  
**dēvertor, dēvertī (Inf.), dēvertī (Perf.), to turn aside.**

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

115. There are two Periphrastic Conjugations, — the Active and the Passive. The Active is formed by combining the Future Active Participle with the auxiliary *sum*, the Passive by combining the Gerundive with the same auxiliary.

## Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>amātūrus (-a, -um) sum, I am about to love.</b>
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>amātūrus eram, I was about to love.</b>
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>amātūrus erō, I shall be about to love.</b>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>amātūrus fui, I have been (was) about to love.</b>
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>amātūrus fueram, I had been about to love.</b>
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<b>amātūrus fuerō, I shall have been about to love.</b>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>amātūrus sim</b> , <i>I may be about to love.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>amātūrus essem</b> , <i>I might be about to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>amātūrus fuerim</b> , <i>I may have been about to love.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>amātūrus fuisset</b> , <i>I might have been about to love.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>amātūrus esse</b> , <i>to be about to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>amātūrus fuisse</b> , <i>to have been about to love.</i>

## Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>amandus (-a, -um) sum</b> , <i>I am to be loved, must be loved.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>amandus eram</b> , <i>I was to be loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>amandus erō</b> , <i>I shall deserve to be loved.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>amandus fui</b> , <i>I was to be loved.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>amandus fueram</b> , <i>I had deserved to be loved.</i>
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<b>amandus fuerō</b> , <i>I shall have deserved to be loved.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>amandus sim</b> , <i>I may deserve to be loved.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>amandus essem</b> , <i>I might deserve to be loved.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>amandus fuerim</b> , <i>I may have deserved to be loved.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>amandus fuisset</b> , <i>I might have deserved to be loved.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>amandus esse</b> , <i>to deserve to be loved.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>amandus fuisse</b> , <i>to have deserved to be loved.</i>

## PECULIARITIES OF CONJUGATION.

116. 1. Perfects in **-āvī**, **-ēvī** and **-ivī**, with the forms derived from them, often drop the **ve** or **vi** before endings beginning with **r** or **s**. So also **nōvī** (from **nōscō**) and the compounds of **mōvī** (from **moveō**). Thus: —

amāvistī	amāstī	dēlēvistī	dēlēstī
amāvisse	amāsse	dēlēvisse	dēlēsse
amāvērunt	amārunt	dēlēvērunt	dēlērunt
amāverim	amārim	dēlēverim	dēlērim
amāveram	amāram	dēlēveram	dēlēram
amāverō	amārō	dēlēverō	dēlērō
nōvistī	nōstī	nōverim	nōrim
nōvisse	nōsse	nōveram	nōram
audīvistī	audīstī	audīvisse	audīsse

2. In the Gerund and Gerundive of the Third and Fourth Conjugations, the endings **-undus**, **-undī**, often occur instead of **-endus** and **-endī**, as **faciundus**, **faciundī**.

3. **Dīcō**, **dūcō**, **faciō**, form the Imperatives, **dīc**, **dūc**, **fac**. But compounds of **faciō** form the Imperative in **-fice**, as **cōnfice**. Compounds of **dīcō**, **dūcō** accent the ultima; as, **ēdūc**, **ēdīc**.

4. Archaic and Poetic forms:—

- a. The ending **-ier** in the Present Infinitive Passive; as, **amārier**, **monērier**, **dīcier**, for **amārī**, **monērī**, **dīcī**.
- b. The ending **-ībam** for **-iēbam** in Imperfects of the Fourth Conjugation, and **-ībō** for **-iam** in Futures; as, **scībam**, **scībō**, for **sciēbam**, **sciam**.
- c. Instead of the fuller forms, in such words as **dīxistī**, **scripsistis**, **surrēxisse**, we sometimes find **dīxtī**, **scripsistis**, **surrēxe**.
- d. The endings **-im**, **-is**, etc. (for **-am**, **-ās**, etc.) occur in a few Subjunctive forms; as, **edim** (*eat*), **duint**, **perduint**.

5. In the Future Active and Perfect Passive Infinitive, the auxiliary **esse** is often omitted; as, **āctūrum** for **āctūrum esse**; **ējectus** for **ējectus esse**.

## FORMATION OF THE VERB-STEMS.

### Formation of the Present Stem.

117. Many verbs employ the Verb Stem for the Present Stem;<sup>1</sup> as, **dīcere**, **dūcere**, **amāre**, **monēre**, **audīre**. Others form the Present Stem variously, as follows:—

1. By appending the vowels **ā**, **ē**, **ī**; as,—

**juvāre**, Present Stem **juvā-** (Verb Stem **juv-**).  
**augēre**, “ “ **augē-** ( “ “ **aug-**).  
**vincīre**, “ “ **vincī-** ( “ “ **vinc-**).

2. By adding **i**, as **capiō**, Present Stem **capi-** (Verb Stem **cap-**).

3. By the insertion of **n** (**m** before labial-mutes) before the final consonant of the Verb Stem; as, **fundō** (Stem **fuḍ-**), **rumpō** (Stem **rup-**).

4. By appending **-n** to the Verb Stem; as,—

**cern-ō**                      **pell-ō** (for **pel-nō**).

<sup>1</sup> Strictly speaking, the Present Stem always ends in a Thematic Vowel (**ō** or **ō**); as, **dīc-ō**, **dīc-ō**; **amā-ō**, **amā-ō**. But the multitude of phonetic changes involved prevents a scientific treatment of the subject here. See the Appendix.

5. By appending **t** to the Verb Stem ; as,—  
**flect-ō.**
6. By appending **sc** to the Verb Stem ; as,—  
**crēsc-ō                                  scisc-ō.**
7. By Reduplication, that is, by prefixing the initial consonant of  
the Verb Stem with **i** ; as,—  
**gi-gn-ō (root gen-).                          si-st-ō (root sta-).**

### Formation of the Perfect Stem.

### 118. The Perfect Stem is formed from the Verb Stem —

1. By adding **v** (in case of Vowel Stems) ; as,—  
                   **amāv-I,**                  **dēlēv-I,**                  **audīv-I.**
2. By adding **u** (in case of some Consonant Stems) ; as,—  
                   **strepu-I,**                  **genu-I,**                  **alu-I.**
3. By adding **s** (in case of most Consonant Stems) ; as,—  
                   **carp-ō,** Perfect **carps-I.**  
                   **scrīb-ō,** “     **scrips-I** (for **scrīb-sī**).  
                   **rīd-eō,** “     **rīs-I** (for **rīd-sī**).  
                   **sent-iō,** “     **sēns-I** (for **sent-sī**).  
                   **dīc-ō,** “     **dīx-I** (*i.e.* **dīc-sī**).
- a. Note that before the ending **-sī** a Dental Mute (**t, d**) is lost ; a Guttural Mute (**c, g**) unites with **s** to form **x** ; while the Labial **b** is changed to **p**.
4. Without addition. Of this formation there are three types :  
   a) The Verb Stem is reduplicated by prefixing the initial consonant with the following vowel or **e** ; as,—  
                   **currō,** Perfect **cu-currī.**  
                   **poscō,** “     **po-poscī.**  
                   **pellō,** “     **pe-pulī.**

NOTE 1.—Compounds, with the exception of *dō*, *stō*, *discō*, *poscō*, omit the reduplication. Thus: *com-pulī*, but *re-poposcī*.

NOTE 2. — Verbs beginning with **sp** or **st** retain both consonants in the reduplication, but drop **s** from the stem; as, **spondeō**, **spo-pondi**; **stō**, **steti**.

- b) The short vowel of the Verb Stem is lengthened; as, **legō**, **lēgī**; **agō**, **ēgī**. Note that **ǣ** by this process becomes **ē**.
- c) The vowel of the Verb Stem is unchanged; as, **vertō**, **vertī**; **minuō**, **minuī**.

## Formation of Participial Stem.

119. The Perfect Passive Participle, from which the Participial Stem is derived by dropping **-us**, is formed :—

1. By adding **-tus** (sometimes to the Present Stem, sometimes to the Verb Stem); as,—

<b>amā-re</b> ,	Participle	<b>amā-tus</b> .
<b>dēlē-re</b> ,	"	<b>dēlē-tus</b> .
<b>audī-re</b> ,	"	<b>audī-tus</b> .
<b>leg-ere</b> ,	"	<b>lēc-tus</b> .
<b>scrib-ere</b> ,	"	<b>scrip-tus</b> .
<b>senti-re</b> ,	"	<b>sēn-sus</b> (for <b>sent-tus</b> ).
<b>caed-ere</b> ,	"	<b>cae-sus</b> (for <b>caed-tus</b> ).

a. Note that **g**, before **t**, becomes **c** (see § 8, 5); **b** becomes **p**; while **dt** or **tt** became **ss**, which was then often simplified to **s** (§ 8, 2).

2. After the analogy of Participles like **sēnsus** and **caesus**, where **-sus** arises by phonetic change, **-sus** for **-tus** is added to other Verb Stems; as,—

<b>lāb-I</b> ,	Participle	<b>lāp-sus</b> .
<b>fig-ere</b> ,	"	<b>fi-xus</b> .

a. The same consonant changes occur in appending this ending **-sus** to the stem as in the case of the Perfect ending **-si** (see § 118, 3, a).

3. A few Verbs form the Participle in **-itus**; as,—

<b>domā-re</b> ,	<b>dom-itus</b> .
<b>monē-re</b> ,	<b>mon-itus</b> .

4. The Future Active Participle is usually identical in its stem with the Perfect Passive Participle; as, **amā-tus**, **amātūrus**; **monitus**, **monitūrus**. But—

<b>juvā-re</b> ,	Perf. Partic.	<b>jūtus</b> ,	has Fut. Act. Partic.	<b>juvātūrus</b> . <sup>1</sup>
<b>lavā-re</b> ,	"	<b>lautus</b> ,	"	<b>lavātūrus</b> .
<b>par-ere</b> ,	"	<b>partus</b> ,	"	<b>paritūrus</b> .
<b>ru-ere</b> ,	"	<b>-rutus</b> ,	"	<b>ruitūrus</b> .
<b>secā-re</b> ,	"	<b>sectus</b> ,	"	<b>secātūrus</b> .
<b>fru-I</b> ,	"	<b>-fructus</b> ,	"	<b>fruitūrus</b> .
<b>mor-I</b> ,	"	<b>mortuus</b> ,	"	<b>moritūrus</b> .
<b>orī-rī</b> ,	"	<b>ortus</b> ,	"	<b>oritūrus</b> .

<sup>1</sup> But the compounds of **juvō** sometimes have **-jūtūrus**; as, **adjūtūrus**.

LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS WITH  
PRINCIPAL PARTS.First (*Ā-*) Conjugation.120. I. PERFECT IN *-VĪ*.

amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus	<i>love</i>
All regular verbs of the First Conjugation follow this model.				
pōtō	pōtāre	pōtāvī	pōtus (§ 114, 2)	<i>drink</i>

II. PERFECT IN *-UĪ*.

crepō	crepāre	crepuī	crepitūrus	<i>rattle</i>
cubō	cubāre	cubuī	cubitūrus	<i>lie down</i>
domō	domāre	domuī	domitūrus	<i>tame</i>
fricō	fricāre	fricuī	frictus and fricātus	<i>rub</i>
micō	micāre	micuī	—	<i>glitter</i>
dīmicō	dīmicāre	dīmicāvī	dīmicātum (est) <sup>1</sup>	<i>fight</i>
ex-plicō	explicāre	explicāvī (-uī)	explicātus (-itus)	<i>unfold</i>
im-plicō	implicāre	implicāvī (-uī)	implicātus (-itus)	<i>entwine</i>
secō	secāre	secuī	sectus	<i>cut</i>
sonō	sonāre	sonuī	sonātūrus	<i>sound</i>
tonō	tonāre	tonuī	—	<i>thunder</i>
vetō	vetāre	vetuī	vetitus	<i>forbid</i>

III. PERFECT IN *-Ī* WITH LENGTHENING OF THE STEM VOWEL.

juvō	juvāre	jūvī	jūtus	<i>help</i>
lavō	lavāre	lāvī	lautus	<i>wash</i>

## IV. DEPONENTS.

These are all regular, and follow *mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum*.

Second (*Ē-*) Conjugation.121. I. PERFECT IN *-VĪ*.

dēleō	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētus	<i>destroy</i>
flēō	flēre	flēvī	flētus	<i>weep, lament</i>
com-pleō <sup>2</sup>	complēre	complēvī	complētus	<i>fill up</i>
aboleō	abolēre	abolēvī	abolitus	<i>destroy</i>
cieō <sup>3</sup>	ciēre	cīvī	citus	<i>set in motion</i>

<sup>1</sup> Used only impersonally.

<sup>2</sup> So *impleō, expleō*.

<sup>3</sup> Compounds follow the Fourth Conjugation: *accīō, accīre, etc.*

## II. PERFECT IN -ŪĪ.

## a. Type -eō, -ere, -ui, -itus.

arceō	arcēre	arcuī		<i>keep off</i>
coerceō	coercēre	coercuī	coercitus	<i>hold in check</i>
exerceō	exercēre	exercuī	exercitus	<i>practise</i>
caleō	calēre	caluī	calitūrus	<i>be warm</i>
careō	carēre	caruī	caritūrus	<i>be without</i>
doleō	dolēre	doluī	dolitūrus	<i>grieve</i>
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitus	<i>have</i>
dēbeō	dēbēre	dēbuī	dēbitus	<i>owe</i>
praebeō	praebeēre	praebuī	praebitus	<i>offer</i>
jaceō	jacēre	jacuī	jacitūrus	<i>lie</i>
mereō	merēre	meruī	meritus	<i>earn, deserve</i>
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitus	<i>advise</i>
noceō	nocēre	nocuī	nocitum (est)	<i>injure</i>
pāreō	pārēre	pāruī	pāritūrus	<i>obey</i>
placeō	placēre	placuī	placitūrus	<i>please</i>
taceō	tacēre	tacuī	tacitūrus	<i>be silent</i>
terreō	terrēre	terruī	territus	<i>frighten</i>
valeō	valēre	valuī	valitūrus	<i>be strong</i>

NOTE 1. — The following lack the Participial Stem : —

egeō	egēre	egui	—	<i>want</i>
ēmineō	ēminēre	ēminuī	—	<i>stand forth</i>
flōreō	flōrēre	flōruī	—	<i>bloom</i>
horreō	horrēre	horruī	—	<i>bristle</i>
lateō	latēre	latuī	—	<i>lurk</i>
niteō	nitēre	nitui	—	<i>gleam</i>
oleō	olēre	oluī	—	<i>smell</i>
palleō	pallēre	pallui	—	<i>be pale</i>
pateō	patēre	patui	—	<i>lie open</i>
rubeō	rubēre	rubui	—	<i>be red</i>
sileō	silēre	silui	—	<i>be silent</i>
splendeō	splendēre	splenduī	—	<i>gleam</i>
studeō	studēre	studui	—	<i>study</i>
stupeō	stupēre	stupui	—	<i>be amazed</i>
timeō	timēre	timui	—	<i>fear</i>
torpeō	torpēre	torpuī	—	<i>be dull</i>
vigeō	vigēre	viguī	—	<i>flourish</i>
vireō	virēre	virui	—	<i>be green</i>

and others.

NOTE 2. — The following are used only in the Present System : —

aveō	avēre	—	—	<i>wish</i>
frigeō	frigēre	—	—	<i>be cold</i>
immineō	imminēre	—	—	<i>overhang</i>
maereō	maerēre	—	—	<i>mourn</i>
polleō	pollēre	—	—	<i>be strong</i>
and others.				

b. Type -eō, -ēre, -ui, -tus (-sus).

cēseō	cēse-re	cēsuī	cēsus	<i>estimate</i>
doceō	docēre	docuī	doctus	<i>teach</i>
misceō	miscēre	miscui	mixtus	<i>mix</i>
teneō	tenēre	tenuī	—	<i>hold</i>

So *contineō* and *sustineō*; but —

retineō	retinēre	retinuī	retentus	<i>retain</i>
obtimeō	obtinēre	obtinuī	obtentus	<i>maintain</i>
torreō	torrēre	torruī	tostus	<i>bake</i>

## III. PERFECT IN -sī.

augeō	augēre	auxī	auctus	<i>increase</i>
torqueō	torquēre	torsī	tortus	<i>twist</i>
indulgeō	indulgēre	indulsī	—	<i>indulge</i>
lūceō	lūcēre	lūxī	—	<i>be light</i>
lūgeō	lūgēre	lūxī	—	<i>mourn</i>
jubeō	jubēre	jussī	jussus	<i>order</i>
per-mulceō	permulcēre	permulsī	permulsus	<i>soothe</i>
rīdeō	rīdēre	rīsī	rīsum (est)	<i>laugh</i>
suādeō	suādēre	suāsī	suāsum (est)	<i>advise</i>
abs-tergeō	abstergēre	abstersī	abstersus	<i>wipe off</i>
ārdeō	ārdēre	ārsī	ārsurus	<i>burn</i>
haereō	haerēre	haesī	haesurus	<i>stick</i>
maneō	manēre	mānsī	mānsurus	<i>stay</i>
algeō	algēre	alsī	—	<i>be cold</i>
fulgeō	fulgēre	fulsī	—	<i>gleam</i>
urgeō	urgēre	ursī	—	<i>press</i>

## IV. PERFECT IN -ī WITH REDUPLICATION.

mordeō	mordēre	momordi	morsus	<i>bite</i>
spondeō	spondēre	spopondi	spōnsus	<i>promise</i>
tondeō	tondēre	totondi	tōnsus	<i>shear</i>
pendeō	pendēre	pendi	—	<i>hang</i>



## V. PERFECT IN -Ī WITH LENGTHENING OF STEM VOWEL.

caveō	cavēre	cāvi	cautūrus	<i>take care</i>
faveō	favēre	fāvi	fautūrus	<i>favor</i>
foveō	fovēre	fōvi	fōtus	<i>cherish</i>
moveō	movēre	mōvi	mōtus	<i>move</i>
paveō	pavēre	pāvi	—	<i>fear</i>
sedeō	sedēre	sēdi	sessūrus	<i>sit</i>
videō	vidēre	vidi	vīsus	<i>see</i>
voveō	vovēre	vōvi	vōtus	<i>vow</i>

## VI. PERFECT IN -Ī WITHOUT EITHER REDUPLICATION OR LENGTHENING OF STEM VOWEL.

ferveō	fervēre	fervi (ferbuī)	—	<i>boil</i>
prandeō	prandēre	prandi	prānsus (§ 114, 2)	<i>lunch</i>
strideō	stridēre	stridi	—	<i>creak</i>

## VII. DEPONENTS.

liceor	licēri	licitus sum	<i>bid</i>
polliceor	pollicēri	pollicitus sum	<i>promise</i>
mereor	merēri	meritus sum	<i>earn</i>
misereor	miserēri	miseritus sum	<i>pity</i>
vereor	verēri	veritus sum	<i>fear</i>
fateor	fatēri	fassus sum	<i>confess</i>
cōnfiteor	cōnfītēri	cōnfessus sum	<i>confess</i>
reor	rēri	ratus sum	<i>think</i>
medeor	medēri	—	<i>heal</i>
tueor	tuēri	—	<i>protect</i>

## Third (Consonant) Conjugation.

## 122. I. VERBS WITH PRESENT STEM ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

## 1. Perfect in -sī.

## a. Type -ō, -ēre, -sī, -tus.

carpō	carpere	carpsi	carptus	<i>pluck</i>
sculpō	sculpere	sculpsi	sculptus	<i>chisel</i>
rēpō	rēpere	rēpsi	—	<i>creep</i>
serpō	serpere	serpsi	—	<i>crawl</i>
scribō	scribere	scripsi	scriptus	<i>write</i>
nūbō	nūbere	nūpsi	nūpta (woman only)	<i>marry</i>
regō	regere	rēxi	rēctus	<i>govern</i>

tegō	tegere	tēxī	tēctus	<i>cover</i>
af-fligō	affligere	afflīxī	afflictus	<i>shatter</i>
dīcō	dicere	dixī	dictus	<i>say</i>
dūcō	dūcere	dūxī	ductus	<i>lead</i>
coquō	coquere	coxī	coctus	<i>cook</i>
trahō	trahere	trāxī	trāctus	<i>draw</i>
vehō	vehere	vexī	vectus	<i>carry</i>
cingō	cingere	cīnxī	cīnctus	<i>gird</i>
tingō	tingere	tīnxī	tīnctus	<i>dip</i>
jungō	jungere	jūnxī	jūnctus	<i>join</i>
figō	figere	finxī	fīctus	<i>mould</i>
pingō	pingere	pīnxī	pīctus	<i>paint</i>
stringō	stringere	strīnxī	strīctus	<i>bind</i>
-stinguō <sup>1</sup>	-stinguere	-stīnxī	-stīnctus	<i>blot out</i>
unguō	unguere	ūnxī	ūnctus	<i>anoint</i>
vīvō	vīvere	vīxī	vīctum (est)	<i>live</i>
gerō	gerere	gessī	gestus	<i>carry</i>
ūrō	ūrere	ussī	ūstus	<i>burn</i>
temnō	temnere	con-tempsī	con-temptus	<i>despise</i>

## b. Type -ō, -ēre, -sī, -sus.

figō	figere	fīxī	fīxus	<i>fasten</i>
mergō	mergere	mersī	mersus	<i>sink</i>
spargō	spargere	sparsī	sparsus	<i>scatter</i>
flectō	flectere	flexī	flexus	<i>bend</i>
nectō	nectere	nexuī (nexī)	nexus	<i>twine</i>
mittō	mittere	mīsī	missus	<i>send</i>
rādō	rādere	rāsī	rāsus	<i>shave</i>
rōdō	rōdere	rōsī	rōsus	<i>gnaw</i>
vādō	vādere	-vāsī <sup>2</sup>	-vāsum (est) <sup>2</sup>	<i>march, walk</i>
lūdō	lūdere	lūsī	lūsum (est)	<i>play</i>
trūdō	trūdere	trūsī	trūsus	<i>push</i>
laedō	laedere	laesī	laesus	<i>injure, hurt</i>
claudō	claudere	clausī	clausus	<i>close</i>
plaudō	plaudere	plausī	plausum (est)	<i>clap</i>
explōdō	explōdere	explōsī	explōsus	<i>hoot off</i>
cēdō	cēdere	cessī	cessum (est)	<i>withdraw</i>
dividō	dividere	dīvisī	dīvisus	<i>divide</i>
premō	premere	pressī	pressus	<i>press</i>

<sup>1</sup> Fully conjugated only in the compounds: *extinguō, restinguō, distinguō*.<sup>2</sup> Only in the compounds: *evādō, invādō, pervādō*.

## 2. Perfect in -I with Reduplication.

ab-dō	abdere	abdidī	abditus	<i>conceal</i>
red-dō	red-dere	reddidī	redditus	<i>return</i>

So *addō, condō, dēdō, perdō, prōdō, trādō, etc.*

cōn-sistō	cōnsistere	cōnstitī	—	<i>take one's stand</i>
resistō	resistere	restitī	—	<i>resist</i>
circumsistō	circumsistere	circumstetī	—	<i>surround</i>
cadō	cadere	cecidī	cāsūrus	<i>fall</i>
caedō	caedere	cecidī	caesus	<i>kill</i>
pendō	pendere	pependī	pēnsus	<i>weigh, pay</i>
tendō	tendere	tetendī	tentus	<i>stretch</i>
tundō	tundere	tutudī	tūsus, tūnsus	<i>beat</i>
fallō	fallere	fefellī	(falsus, as Adj.)	<i>deceive</i>
pellō	pellere	pepulī	pulsus	<i>drive out</i>
currō	currere	cucurri	cursum (est)	<i>run</i>
parcō	parcere	peperci	parsūrus	<i>spare</i>
canō	canere	cecinī	—	<i>sing</i>
tangō	tangere	tetigi	tāctus	<i>touch</i>
pungō	pungere	pupugi	pūctus	<i>prick</i>

NOTE.— In the following verbs the perfects were originally reduplicated, but have lost the reduplicating syllable : —

per-cellō	percellere	perculi	perculus	<i>strike down</i>
findō	findere	fidī	fissus	<i>split</i>
scindō	scindere	scidī	scissus	<i>tear apart</i>
tollō	tollere	sus-tulī	sublātus	<i>remove</i>

## 3. Perfect in -I with Lengthening of Stem-Vowel.

agō	agere	ēgī	āctus	<i>drive, do</i>
peragō	peragere	perēgī	perāctus	<i>finish</i>
subigō	subigere	subēgī	subāctus	<i>subdue</i>
cōgō	cōgere	coēgī	coāctus	<i>force, gather</i>
frangō	frangere	frēgī	frāctus	<i>break</i>
perfringō	perfringere	perfrēgī	perfrāctus	<i>break down</i>
legō	legere	lēgī	lēctus	<i>gather, read</i>
perlegō	perlegere	perlēgī	perlēctus	<i>read through</i>
colligō	colligere	collēgī	collēctus	<i>collect</i>
dēligō	dēligere	dēlēgī	dēlēctus	<i>choose</i>
diligō	diligere	dilēxī	dilēctus	<i>love</i>
intellegō	intellegere	intellēxī	intellēctus	<i>understand</i>
neglegō	neglegere	neglēxī	neglēctus	<i>neglect</i>

emō	emere	ēmī	ēemptus	<i>buy</i>
coēmō	coēmere	coēmī	coēemptus	<i>buy up</i>
redimō	redimere	redēmī	redēemptus	<i>buy back</i>
dirimō	dirimere	dirēmī	dirēemptus	<i>destroy</i>
dēmō	dēmere	dēmpsī	dēemptus	<i>take away</i>
sūmō	sūmere	sūmpsī	sūmptus	<i>take</i>
prōmō	prōmere	prōmpsī	(prōmptus, as Adj.)	<i>take out</i>
vincō	vincere	vīcī	vīctus	<i>conquer</i>
re-linquō	relinquere	reliquī	relictus	<i>leave</i>
rumpō	rumpere	rūpī	ruptus	<i>break</i>
edō	edere	ēdī	ēsus	<i>eat</i>
fundō	fundere	fūdī	fūsus	<i>pour</i>

4. Perfect in -I without either Reduplication or Lengthening of Stem-Vowel.

excūdō	excūdere	excūdī	excūsus	<i>hammer</i>
cōnsidō	cōnsidere	cōnsēdī	—	<i>take one's seat</i>
possidō	possidere	possēdī	possessus	<i>take possession</i>
accendō	accendere	accendī	accēnsus	<i>kindle</i>
a-scendō	ascendere	ascendī	ascēnsus (est)	<i>climb</i>
dē-fendō	dēfendere	dēfendī	dēfēnsus	<i>defend</i>
pre-hendō	prehendere	prehendī	prehēnsus	<i>seize</i>
īcō	īcere	īcī	īctus	<i>strike</i>
vellō	vellere	vellī	vulsus	<i>pluck</i>
vertō	vertere	vertī	versus	<i>turn</i>
pandō	pandere	pandī	passus	<i>spread</i>
solvō	solvere	solvī	solūtus	<i>loose</i>
vīsō	vīsere	vīsī	vīsus	<i>visit</i>
volvō	volvere	volvī	volūtus	<i>roll</i>
verrō	verrere	verrī	versus	<i>sweep</i>

5. Perfect in -uī.

in-cumbō	incumbere	incubui	incubitūrus	<i>lean on</i>
gignō	gignere	genuī	genitus	<i>bring forth</i>
molō	molere	molui	molitus	<i>grind</i>
vomō	vomere	vomuī	vomitus	<i>vomit</i>
fremō	fremere	fremuī	—	<i>snort</i>
gemō	gemere	gemuī	—	<i>sigh</i>
metō	metere	messuī	messus	<i>reap</i>

tremō	tremere	tremui	—	<i>tremble</i>
strepō	strepere	strepuī	—	<i>rattle</i>
alō	alere	alui	altus (alitus)	<i>nourish</i>
colō	colere	colui	cultus	<i>cultivate</i>
incolō	incolere	incolui	—	<i>inhabit</i>
excolō	excolere	excolui	excultus	<i>perfect</i>
cōsulō	cōsulere	cōsului	cōsultus	<i>consult</i>
cōnsērō	cōnserere	cōnserui	cōnsertus	<i>join</i>
dēsērō	dēserere	dēserui	dēsertus	<i>desert</i>
disserō	disserere	disserui	—	<i>discourse</i>
texō	texere	texui	textus	<i>weave</i>

## 6. Perfect in -vī.

sinō	sinere	sivī	situs	<i>allow</i>
dēsinō	dēsinere	dēsii	dēsitus	<i>cease</i>
pōnō	pōnere	posui	positus	<i>place</i>
ob-linō	oblinere	oblēvī	oblitus	<i>smear</i>
serō	serere	sēvī	satus	<i>sow</i>
cōnsērō	cōnserere	cōnsēvī	cōnsitus	<i>plant</i>
cernō	cernere	—	—	<i>separate</i>
discernō	discernere	discrēvī	discrētus	<i>distinguish</i>
dēcernō	dēcernere	dēcrēvī	dēcrētus	<i>decide</i>
spernō	spernere	sprēvī	sprētus	<i>scorn</i>
sternō	sternere	strāvī	strātus	<i>spread</i>
prō-sternō	prōsternere	prōstrāvī	prōstrātus	<i>overthrow</i>
petō	petere	petīvī (petiī)	petītus	<i>seek</i>
appetō	appetere	appetīvī	appetītus	<i>long for</i>
terō	terere	trīvī	trītus	<i>rub</i>
quaerō	quaerere	quaesivī	quaesītus	<i>seek</i>
acquīrō	acquīrere	acquīsivī	acquīsītus	<i>acquire</i>
arcessō	arcessere	arcessivī	arcessītus	<i>summon</i>
capessō	capessere	capessivī	capessītus	<i>seize</i>
laccessō	laccessere	laccessivī	laccessītus	<i>provoke</i>

## 7. Used only in Present System.

angō	angere	—	—	<i>choke</i>
lambō	lambere	—	—	<i>lick</i>
claudō	claudere	—	—	<i>be lame</i>
furō	furere	—	—	<i>rave</i>
vergō	vergere	—	—	<i>bend</i>

and a few others.

## II. VERBS WITH PRESENT STEM ENDING IN -Ū.

induo	induere	indui	indutus	<i>put on</i>
imbuo	imbuere	imbuī	imbūtus	<i>moisten</i>
luo	luere	lui	—	<i>wash</i>
polluo	polluere	pollui	pollūtus	<i>defile</i>
minuo	minuere	minui	minūtus	<i>lessen</i>
statuo	statuere	statui	statūtus	<i>set up</i>
cōstituo	cōstituere	cōstitui	cōstitūtus	<i>determine</i>
suo	suere	sui	sūtus	<i>sew</i>
tribuo	tribuere	tribui	tribūtus	<i>allot</i>
ruo	ruere	ruī	ruitūrus	<i>fall</i>
diruo	diruere	dirui	dirutus	<i>destroy</i>
obruo	obruere	obruī	obrutus	<i>overwhelm</i>
acuō	acuere	acui	—	<i>sharpen</i>
arguo	arguere	argui	—	<i>accuse</i>
congruo	congruere	congrui	—	<i>agree</i>
metuo	metuere	metui	—	<i>fear</i>
ab-nuo	abnuere	abnuī	—	<i>decline</i>
re-spuo	respuere	respuī	—	<i>reject</i>
struo	struere	struī	strūctus	<i>build</i>
fluo	fluere	fluxī	(fluxus, as Adj.)	<i>flow</i>

## III. VERBS WITH PRESENT STEM ENDING IN -I.

cupio	cupere	cupivī	cupitus	<i>wish</i>
sapio	sapere	sapivī	—	<i>taste</i>
rapio	rapere	rapui	raptus	<i>snatch</i>
diripio	diripere	diripui	direptus	<i>plunder</i>
cōspicio	cōspicere	cōspexī	cōspectus	<i>gaze at</i>
aspicio	aspicere	aspeī	aspectus	<i>behold</i>
illicio	illicere	illexī	illectus	<i>allure</i>
pellicio	pellicere	pellexī	pellectus	<i>allure</i>
ēlicio	ēlicere	ēlicui	ēlicitus	<i>elicit</i>
quatio	quaterere	—	quassus	<i>shake</i>
concutio	concutere	concuī	concussus	<i>shake</i>
pario	parere	peperi	partus	<i>bring forth</i>
capio	capere	cēpi	captus	<i>take</i>
accipio	accipere	accēpi	acceptus	<i>accept</i>
incipio	incipere	incēpi	inceptus	<i>begin</i>
facio	facere	fēcī	factus	<i>make</i>
afficio	afficere	affēcī	affectus	<i>affect</i>

*Passive, afficior, affici, affectus sum.*

So other prepositional compounds, *perficiō, perficior; interficiō, interficior; etc.* But—

assuēfaciō    assuēfacere    assuēfēcī    assuēfactus    *accustom*

*Passive assuēfiō, assuēfieri, assuēfactus sum.*

So also *patefaciō, patefiō; calefaciō, calefiō*; and all non-prepositional compounds.

jaciō	jacere	jēcī	jactus	<i>hurl</i>
abiciō	abicere	abjēcī	abjectus	<i>throw away</i>
fodiō	fodere	fōdī	fossus	<i>dig</i>
fugiō	fugere	fūgī	fugitūrus	<i>flee</i>
effugiō	effugere	effūgī	—	<i>escape</i>

#### IV. VERBS IN -SCŌ.

##### 1. Verbs in -scō from Simple Roots.

poscō	poscere	poposcī	—	<i>demand</i>
discō	discere	didici	—	<i>learn</i>
pāscō	pāscere	pāvi	pāstus	<i>feed</i>
pāscor	pāsci	pāstus sum	—	<i>graze</i>
crēscō	crēscere	crēvī	crētus	<i>grow</i>
cōnsuēscō	cōnsuēscere	cōnsuēvī	cōnsuētus	<i>accustom one's self</i>
quiēscō	quiēscere	quiēvī	quiētūrus	<i>be still</i>
adolēscō	adolēscere	adolēvī	—	<i>grow up</i>
obsolescō	obsolescere	obsolevī	—	<i>grow old.</i>
nōscō	nōscere	nōvī	—	<i>become acquainted</i>
				<i>with</i>
ignōscō	ignōscere	ignōvī	ignōtūrus	<i>pardon</i>
agnōscō	agnōscere	agnōvī	agnitus	<i>recognize</i>
cognōscō	cognōscere	cognōvī	cognitus	<i>get acquainted</i>
				<i>with</i>

##### 2. Verbs in -scō formed from other Verbs.

These usually have Inchoative or Inceptive meaning (see § 155. 1). When they have the Perfect, it is the same as that of the Verbs from which they are derived.

flōrēscō	flōrēscere	flōruī	<i>begin to bloom</i>	(flōreō)
scīscō	scīscere	scīvī	<i>enact</i>	(sciō)
ārēscō	ārēscere	āruī	<i>become dry</i>	(āreō)
calēscō	calēscere	caluī	<i>become hot</i>	(caleō)
cōnsenēscō	cōnsenēscere	cōnsenuī	<i>grow old</i>	(seneō)
extimēscō	extimēscere	extimuī	<i>fear greatly</i>	(timeō)
ingemīscō	ingemīscere	ingemuī	<i>sigh</i>	(gemō)
adhaerēscō	adhaerēscere	adhaesi	<i>stick</i>	(haereō)

3. Verbs in **-scō** derived from Nouns, usually with Inchoative meaning.

obdūrēscō	obdūrēscere	obdūrui	<i>grow hard</i>	(dūrus)
ēvānēscō	ēvānēscere	ēvānuī	<i>disappear</i>	(vānus)
percrēbrēscō	percrēbrēscere	percrēbruī	<i>grow fresh</i>	(crēber)
mātūrēscō	mātūrēscere	mātūruī	<i>grow ripe</i>	(mātūrus)
obmūtēscō	obmūtēscere	obmūtuī	<i>grow dumb</i>	(mūtus)

#### V. DEPONENTS.

fungor	fungi	fūctus sum	<i>perform</i>
queror	queri	questus sum	<i>complain</i>
loquor	loqui	locūtus sum	<i>speak</i>
sequor	sequi	secūtus sum	<i>follow</i>
fruor	frui	fruitūrus	<i>enjoy</i>
perfruor	perfrui	perfrūctus sum	<i>thoroughly enjoy</i>
lābor	lābi	lāpsus sum	<i>glide</i>
amplector	amplecti	amplexus sum	<i>embrace</i>
nītor	nīti	nīsus sum, nīxus sum	<i>strive</i>
gradior	gradī	gressus sum	<i>walk</i>
patior	pati	passus sum	<i>suffer</i>
perpetior	perpeti	perpessus sum	<i>endure</i>
ūtor	ūtī	ūsus sum	<i>use</i>
morior	mori	mortuus sum	<i>die</i>
adipīscor	adipīscī	adeptus sum	<i>acquire</i>
comminīscor	comminīscī	commentus sum	<i>invent</i>
reminīscor	reminīscī	—	<i>remember</i>
nancīscor	nancīscī	nactus (nactus) sum	<i>acquire</i>
nāscor	nāscī	nātus sum	<i>be born</i>
oblīvīscor	oblīvīscī	oblītus sum	<i>forget</i>
pacīscor	pacīscī	pactus sum	<i>covenant</i>
proficīscor	proficīscī	profectus sum	<i>set out</i>
ulcīscor	ulcīscī	ultus sum	<i>avenge</i>
īrāscor	īrāscī	(īrātus, as Adj.)	<i>be angry</i>
vescor	vescī	—	<i>eat</i>

#### Fourth Conjugation.

##### 123. I. PERFECT ENDS IN -VĪ.

audiō	audire	audivī	audītus	<i>hear</i>
So all regular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.				
sepeliō	sepelire	sepelivī	sepultus	<i>bury</i>



## II. PERFECT ENDS IN -ŪĪ.

aperiō	aperīre	aperuī	apertus	<i>open</i>
operiō	operīre	operuī	opertus	<i>cover</i>
salīō	salīre	saluī	—	<i>leap</i>

## III. PERFECT ENDS IN -SĪ.

saepiō	saepīre	saepsi	saeptus	<i>hedge in</i>
sanciō	sancīre	sānxi	sānctus	<i>ratify</i>
vinciō	vincīre	vinxi	vinctus	<i>bind</i>
amiciō	amicīre	—	amictus	<i>envelope</i>
fulciō	fulcīre	fulsi	furtus	<i>prop up</i>
referciō	refercīre	refersi	refertus	<i>fill</i>
sarciō	sarcīre	sarsi	sartus	<i>patch</i>
hauriō	haurīre	hausi	haustus	<i>draw</i>
sentiō	sentīre	sēnsi	sēnsus	<i>feel</i>

## IV. PERFECT IN -Ī WITH LENGTHENING OF STEM VOWEL.

veniō	venīre	vēni	ventum (est)	<i>come</i>
adveniō	advenīre	advēni	adventum (est)	<i>arrive</i>
inveniō	invenīre	invēni	inventus	<i>find</i>

## V. PERFECT WITH LOSS OF REDUPLICATION.

reperiō	reperīre	repperi	reptus	<i>find</i>
comperiō	comperīre	comperi	compertus	<i>learn</i>

## VI. USED ONLY IN THE PRESENT.

feriō	ferīre	—	—	<i>strike</i>
ēsuriō	ēsurīre	—	—	<i>be hungry</i>

## VII. DEPONENTS.

largior	largīri	largītus sum	<i>bestow</i>
---------	---------	--------------	---------------

So many others.

exporior	experīri	expertus sum	<i>try</i>
opprior	opperīri	oppertus sum	<i>await</i>
ōrdior	ōrdīri	ōrsus sum	<i>begin</i>
orior	orīri	ortus sum	<i>arise</i>

*Orior* also admits forms of the Third Conjugation; as, *oreris, oritur, orimur*; *orerer* (Imp. Subj.); *orere* (Imper.).

mētior	mētīri	mēnsus sum	<i>measure</i>
assentior	assentīri	assēnsus sum	<i>assent</i>

IRREGULAR VERBS.

**124.** A number of Verbs are called Irregular. The most important are **sum**, **dō**, **edō**, **ferō**, **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō**, **eō**, **fiō**. The peculiarity of these Verbs is that they append the personal endings in many forms directly to the stem, instead of employing a connecting vowel, as **fer-s** (2d Sing. of **fer-ō**) instead of **fer-is**. They are but the relics of what was-once in Latin a large class of Verbs.

**125.** The Inflection of **sum** has already been given. Its various compounds are inflected in the same way. They are—

absum	abesse	āfuī	<i>am absent</i>
	<i>Pres. Partic.</i> absēns	(absentis),	<i>absent.</i>
adsum	adesse	adfui	<i>am present</i>
dēsum	deesse	dēfui	<i>am lacking</i>
īsum	inesse	īfui	<i>am in</i>
intersum	interesse	interfui	<i>am among</i>
praesum	praeesse	prae-fui	<i>am in charge of</i>
	<i>Pres. Partic.</i> praesēns	(praesentis)	<i>present.</i>
obsum	obesse	obfui	<i>hinder</i>
prōsum	prōdesse	prōfui	<i>am of advantage</i>
subsum	subesse	subfui	<i>am at the basis of</i>
supersum	superesse	superfui	<i>am left</i>

NOTE.—**Prōsum** is compounded of **prōd** (earlier form of **prō**) and **sum**; the **d** disappears before consonants, as **prōsumus**, but **prōdestis**.

**126. Possum.** In its Present System **possum** is a compound of **pot-** (for **pote**, *able*) and **sum**; **potuī** is from an obsolete **potēre**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<b>possum,</b>	<b>posse,</b>	<b>potuī,</b>	<i>to be able.</i>
----------------	---------------	---------------	--------------------

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	possum, potes, potest;	possumus, potestis, possunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	poteram;	poterāmus.
<i>Fut.</i>	poterō;	poterimus.
<i>Perf.</i>	potuī;	potuimus.
<i>Plup.</i>	potueram;	potuerāmus.
<i>Fut. P.</i>	potuerō;	potuerimus.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	possim, possīs, possit ;	possīmus, possītis, possint.
<i>Imp.</i>	possem ;	possēmus.
<i>Perf.</i>	potuerim ;	potuerimus.
<i>Plup.</i>	potuissem ;	potuissēmus.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	posse.
<i>Perf.</i>	potuisse.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	potēns ( <i>as an adjective</i> ).
--------------	------------------------------------

127.

Dō, *I give.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

dō,	dāre,	dedī,	dātus.
-----	-------	-------	--------

## Active Voice.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	dō, dās, dat ;	dāmus, dātis, dant.
<i>Imp.</i>	dābam, <i>etc.</i> ;	dābāmus.
<i>Fut.</i>	dābō, <i>etc.</i> ;	dābimus.
<i>Perf.</i>	dedī ;	dedimus.
<i>Plup.</i>	dederam ;	dederāmus.
<i>Fut. P.</i>	dederō ;	dederimus.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	dem ;	dēmus.
<i>Imp.</i>	dārem ;	dārēmus.
<i>Perf.</i>	dederim ;	dederimus.
<i>Plup.</i>	dedissem ;	dedissēmus.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	dā ;	dāte.
<i>Fut.</i>	dātō ;	dātōte.
	dātō ;	dantō.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	dāre.
<i>Perf.</i>	dedisse.
<i>Fut.</i>	dātūrus esse.

## PARTICIPLE.

dāns.
dātūrus.

## GERUND.

dandī, *etc.*

## SUPINE.

dātum, dātū.

1. The Passive is inflected regularly with the short vowel. Thus: **dāri, dātur, dābātur, dārētur, etc.**

2. The archaic and poetic forms **duim, duint, interduō, perduint, etc.**, are not from the root **da-**, but from **du-**, a collateral root of similar meaning.

**128. Edō, I eat.** This verb, in addition to its regular inflection, sometimes has duplicate forms in certain tenses of the Present System.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

**edō, edere, ēdī, ēsus.**

**Active Voice.**

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

<i>Pres.</i>	edō	edimus
	edis, ēs	editis, ētis
	edit, ēst	edunt

**SUBJUNCTIVE.**

<i>Imp.</i>	ederem, ēssem	ederēmus, ēssēmus
	ederēs, ēssēs	ederētis, ēssētis
	ederet, ēssset	ederent, ēssset

**IMPERATIVE.**

<i>Pres.</i>	ede, ēs	edite, ēste
<i>Fut.</i>	editō, ēstō	editōte, ēstōte
	editō, ēstō	eduntō

**INFINITIVE.**

*Pres.* edere, ēsse

**Passive Voice.**

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

*Pres. 3d Sing.* editur, ēstur

**SUBJUNCTIVE.**

*Imp. 3d Sing.* ederētur, ēssētur

1. Observe the long vowel of the abbreviated forms, which alone distinguishes them from the corresponding forms of **esse, to be.**

2. Note **comedō, comedere, comēdī, comēsus** or **comēstus, consume.**

129.

**Ferō, I bear.**

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<b>ferō,</b>	<b>ferre,</b>	<b>tulī,</b>	<b>lātus.</b>
--------------	---------------	--------------	---------------

## Active Voice.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

<i>Pres.</i>	ferō, fers, fert;	ferimus, fertis, ferunt. <sup>1</sup>
<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbam;	ferēbāmus.
<i>Fut.</i>	feram;	ferēmus.
<i>Perf.</i>	tulī;	tulimus.
<i>Plup.</i>	tuleram;	tulerāmus.
<i>Fut. P.</i>	tulerō;	tulerimus.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	feram;	ferāmus.
<i>Imp.</i>	ferrem;	ferrēmus.
<i>Perf.</i>	tulerim;	tulerimus.
<i>Plup.</i>	tulissem;	tulissēmus.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	fer;	ferte.
<i>Fut.</i>	fertō;	fertōte.
	fertō;	feruntō.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	ferre.	<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns.
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse.		
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus esse.	<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

<i>Gen.</i>	ferendī.	
<i>Dat.</i>	ferendō.	
<i>Acc.</i>	ferendum.	<i>Acc.</i> lātum.
<i>Abl.</i>	ferendō.	<i>Abl.</i> lātū.

<sup>1</sup> It will be observed that not all the forms of **ferō** lack the connecting vowel. Some of them, as **ferimus**, **ferunt**, follow the regular inflection of verbs of the Third Conjugation.

Passive Voice.

feror,                      ferī,                      lātus sum,                      to be borne.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	feror, ferris, fertur;	ferimur, feriminī, feruntur.
<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbar;	ferēbāmur.
<i>Fut.</i>	ferar;	ferēmur.
<i>Perf.</i>	lātus sum;	lātī sumus.
<i>Plup.</i>	lātus eram;	lātī erāmus.
<i>Fut. P.</i>	lātus erō;	lātī erimus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	ferar;	ferāmur.
<i>Imp.</i>	ferrer;	ferrēmur.
<i>Perf.</i>	lātus sim;	lātī sīmus.
<i>Plup.</i>	lātus essem;	lātī essēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	ferre;	feriminī.
<i>Fut.</i>	fertor;	—
	fertor;	feruntor.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	ferī.	
<i>Perf.</i>	lātus esse.	<i>Perf.</i> lātus.
<i>Fut.</i>	lātum irī.	<i>Ger.</i> ferendus.

So also the Compounds —

afferō	afferre	attulī	allātus	<i>bring toward</i>
auferō	auferre	abstulī	ablātus	<i>take away</i>
cōferō	cōferre	contulī	collātus	<i>compare</i>
differō	differre	distulī	dilātus	<i>put off</i>
efferō	efferre	extulī	ēlātus	<i>carry off</i>
īferō	īferre	intulī	illātus	<i>bring against</i>
offerō	offerre	obtulī	oblātus	<i>present</i>
referō	referre	rettulī	relātus	<i>bring back</i>

NOTE. — The forms **sustulī** and **sublātus** belong to **tollō**.

130.

Volō, nōlō, mālō.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

volō,	velle,	voluī,	<i>to be willing.</i>
nōlō,	nōlle,	nōluī,	<i>to be unwilling.</i>
mālō,	mälle,	māluī,	<i>to prefer.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	volō,	nōlō,	mālō,
	vīs,	nōn vīs,	māvīs,
	vult ;	nōn vult ;	māvult ;
	volumus,	nōlumus,	mālumus,
	vultis,	nōn vultis,	māvultis,
	volunt.	nōlunt.	mālunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	volēbam.	nōlēbam.	mālēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	volam.	nōlam.	mālam.
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī.	nōluī.	māluī.
<i>Plup.</i>	volueram.	nōlueram.	mālueram
<i>Fut. P.</i>	voluerō.	nōluerō.	māluerō.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	velim, -is, -it, etc.	nōlim.	mālim.
<i>Imp.</i>	vellem, -ēs, -et, etc.	nōllem.	māllem.
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim.	nōluerim.	māluerim.
<i>Plup.</i>	voluissem.	nōluissem.	māluissem.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	nōlī,	nōlīte.
<i>Fut.</i>	nōlītō,	nōlītōte,
	nōlītō ;	nōluntō.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	velle.	nōlle.	mälle.
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse.	nōluisse.	māluisse.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	volēns.	nōlēns.	_____
--------------	---------	---------	-------

131.

**Fĭō.**

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

**fĭō.**      **fieri,**      **factus sum,**      *to become, be made.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	fĭō, fīs, fit;	fĭmus, fĭtis, fĭunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	fĭēbam;	fĭēbāmus.
<i>Fut.</i>	fĭam;	fĭēmus.
<i>Perf.</i>	factus sum;	factī sumus.
<i>Plup.</i>	factus eram;	factī erāmus.
<i>Fut. P.</i>	factus erō;	factī erimus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	fĭam;	fĭāmus.
<i>Imp.</i>	fierem;	fierēmus.
<i>Perf.</i>	factus sim;	factī sĭmus.
<i>Plup.</i>	factus essem;	factī essēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	fĭ;	fite.
--------------	-----	-------

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	fieri.	
<i>Perf.</i>	factus esse.	<i>Perf.</i> factus.
<i>Fut.</i>	factum īrī.	<i>Ger.</i> faciendus.

NOTE.—A few isolated forms of compounds of **fĭō** occur; as, **dēfĭt**, *lacks*; **īnfĭt**, *begins*.

132.

**Eō.**

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

**eō,**      **ire,**      **ivĭ,**      **itum (est),**      *to go.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	eō, īs, it;	ĭmus, ĭtis, eunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	ībam;	ībāmus.
<i>Fut.</i>	ībō;	ībĭmus.
<i>Perf.</i>	ivĭ (īī);	ivĭmus (iĭmus).
<i>Plup.</i>	īveram (ieram);	īverāmus (ierāmus).
<i>Fut. P.</i>	īverō (ierō);	īverimus (ierimus).



## SUBJUNCTIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	eam ;	eāmus.
<i>Imp.</i>	irem ;	irēmus.
<i>Perf.</i>	iverim (ierim) ;	iverimus (ierimus).
<i>Plup.</i>	ivissem (iissem, issem) ;	ivissēmus (iissēmus, issēmus).

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	ī ;	īte.
<i>Fut.</i>	ītō ;	ītōte,
	ītō ;	euntō.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	īre.
<i>Perf.</i>	ivisse (isse)
<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus esse.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	iēns.
	( <i>Gen.</i> euntis.)
<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus.

## GERUND.

eundī, etc.

## SUPINE.

itum, itū.

1. Transitive compounds of **eo** admit the full Passive inflection ;  
as, **adeor, adīris, adītur, etc.**

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs lack certain forms. The following are the most important : —

## 133. USED MAINLY IN THE PERFECT SYSTEM.

**Coepī, I have begun.****Meminī, I remember.****Ōdī, I hate.**

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Perf.</i>	coepī.	meminī.	ōdī.
<i>Plup.</i>	coeperam.	memineram.	ōderam.
<i>Fut. P.</i>	coeperō.	meminerō.	ōderō.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Perf.</i>	coeperim.	meminerim.	ōderim.
<i>Plup.</i>	coepissem.	meminissem.	ōdissem.

## IMPERATIVE.

*Sing.* mementō ; *Plur.* mementōte.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Perf.</i>	coepisse.	meminisse.	ōdisse.
<i>Fut.</i>	coeptūrus esse.		ōsūrus esse.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Perf.</i>	coeptus, begun.	ōsus.
<i>Fut.</i>	coeptūrus.	ōsūrus.

1. When **coepī** governs a Passive Infinitive it usually takes the form **coeptus est**; as, **amārī coeptus est**, *he began to be loved*.

2. Note that **meminī** and **ōdī**, though Perfect in form, are Present in sense. Similarly the Pluperfect and Future Perfect have the force of the Imperfect and Future; as, **memineram**, *I remembered*; **ōderō**, *I shall hate*.

**134. Inquam**, *I say* (inserted between words of a direct quotation).

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	inquam,	—
	inquis,	—
	inquit;	inquiunt.
<i>Fut.</i>	—	—
	inquiēs,	—
	inquiet.	—
	<i>Perf. 3d Sing.</i> inquit.	

**135. Ājō**, *I say*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	ājō,	—
	ais,	—
	ait;	ājunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	ājēbam,	ājēbāmus,
	ājēbās,	ājēbātis,
	ājēbat;	ājēbant.
	<i>Perf. 3d Sing.</i> ait.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Pres. 3d Sing.* ājat.

NOTE. — For **aisne**, do you mean? **ain** is common.

## 136.

**Fārī, to speak.**

This is inflected regularly in the perfect tenses. In the Present System it has —

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	— — fātur.	— — —
<i>Fut.</i>	fābor, — fābitur.	— — —
<i>Imp.</i>	fāre.	
<i>Inf.</i>	fārī.	
<i>Pres. Partic.</i>	fantis, fantī, etc.	
<i>Gerund, G.,</i>	fandī; <i>D. and Abl.</i> , fandō.	
<i>Gerundive</i>	fandus.	

NOTE.—Forms of **fārī** are rare. More frequent are its compounds; as,—  
**affātur**, *he addresses*; **præfāmur**, *we say in advance*.

## 137. OTHER DEFECTIVE FORMS.

1. **Queō, quīre, quīvī**, *to be able*, and **nequeō, nequīre, nequīvī**, *to be unable*, are inflected like **eō**, but occur chiefly in the Present Tense, and there only in special forms.

2. **Quaesō, I entreat**; **quaesumus**, *we entreat*.

3. **Cedo, cete**; *give me, tell me*.

4. **Salvē, salvēte, hail**. Also Infinitive, **salvēre**.

5. **Havē (avē), havēte, hail**. Also Infinitive, **havēre**.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

138. Impersonal Verbs correspond to the English, *it snows, it seems, etc.* They have no personal subject, but may take an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Neuter Pronoun; as, **mē pudet hōc fēcisse**, *lit. it shames me to have done this*; **hōc decet**, *this is fitting*. Here belong —

I. Verbs denoting operations of the weather; as,—

fulget	fulsit	<i>it lightens</i>
tonat	tonuit	<i>it thunders</i>

grandinat	—	<i>it hails</i>
ningit	ninxit	<i>it snows</i>
pluit	pluit	<i>it rains</i>

## II. Special Verbs.

paenitet	paenitēre	paenituit	<i>it repents</i>
piget	pigēre	piguit	<i>it grieves</i>
pudet	puḋere	puduit	<i>it causes shame</i>
taedet	taḋere	taeduit	<i>it disgusts</i>
miseret	miserēre	miseruit	<i>it causes pity</i>
libet	libēre	libuit	<i>it pleases</i>
licet	licēre	licuit	<i>it is lawful</i>
oportet	oportēre	oportuit	<i>it is fitting</i>
decet	decēre	decuit	<i>it is becoming</i>
dēdecet	dēdecēre	dēdecuit	<i>it is unbecoming</i>
rēfert	rēferre	rētulit	<i>it concerns</i>

## III. Verbs Impersonal only in Special Senses.

cōstat	cōstāre	cōstitit	<i>it is evident</i>
praestat	praestāre	praestitit	<i>it is better</i>
juvat	juvāre	jūvit	<i>it delights</i>
appāret	appārēre	appāruit	<i>it appears</i>
placet	placēre	placuit (placitum est)	<i>it pleases</i>
accēdit	accēdere	accessit	<i>it is added</i>
accidit	accidere	accidit	<i>it happens</i>
contingit	contingere	contigit	<i>it happens</i>
ēvenit	ēvenīre	ēvēnit	<i>it turns out</i>
interest	interesse	interfuit	<i>it concerns</i>

## IV. The Passive of Intransitive Verbs; as, —

ītur	lit. <i>it is gone</i>	<i>i.e. some one goes</i>
curritur	lit. <i>it is run</i>	<i>i.e. some one runs</i>
ventum est	lit. <i>it has been come</i>	<i>i.e. some one has come</i>
veniendum est	lit. <i>it must be come</i>	<i>i.e. somebody must come</i>
pūgnārī potest	lit. <i>it can be fought</i>	<i>i.e. somebody can fight</i>

## PART III.

### PARTICLES.

**139.** Particles are the four Parts of Speech that do not admit of inflection; *viz.* Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, Interjections.

#### ADVERBS.

**140.** Most adverbs are in origin case-forms which have become stereotyped by usage. The common adverbial terminations have already been given above (§ 76). The following TABLE OF CORRELATIVES is important:—

RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE.	DEMONSTRATIVE.	INDEFINITE.
ubi, <i>where</i> ; <i>where</i> ?	hic, <i>here</i> . ibi, illic, istic, <i>there</i> .	alicubi, usquam, us- quam, <i>somewhere</i> .
quō, <i>whither</i> ; <i>whither</i> ?	hūc, <i>hither</i> . eō, istūc, illūc, <i>thither</i> .	aliquō, <i>to some place</i> .
unde, <i>whence</i> ; <i>whence</i> ?	hinc, <i>hence</i> . inde, istinc, illinc, <i>thence</i> .	alicunde, <i>from some- where</i> .
quā, <i>where</i> ; <i>where</i> ?	hāc, <i>by this way</i> . eā, istāc, illāc, <i>by that way</i> .	aliquā, <i>by some way</i> .
cum, <i>when</i> .	nunc, <i>now</i> .	aliquandō, umquam, <i>sometime</i> .
quandō, <i>when</i> ?	tum, tunc, <i>then</i> .	aliquotiēns, <i>some number of times</i> .
quotiēns, <i>as often as</i> ; <i>how often</i> ?	totiēns, <i>so often</i> .	
quam, <i>as much as</i> ; <i>how much</i> ?	tam, <i>so much</i> .	

## PREPOSITIONS.

141. The following Prepositions govern the Accusative :—

ad	ergā	praeter
adversus (adversum)	extrā	prope
ante	infrā	propter
apud	inter	secundum
circā	intrā	subter
circiter	jūxtā	super
circum	ob	suprā
cis	penes	trāns
citrā	per	ultrā
contrā	pōne	versus
	post	

1. **Ūsque** is often prefixed to **ad**, in the sense of *even* ; as,—  
**ŭsque ad urbem**, *even to the city*.

2. **Versus** always follows its case ; as,—  
**Rōmam versus**, *toward Rome*.

It may be combined with a preceding Preposition ; as,—  
**ad urbem versus**, *toward the city*.

3. Like **prope**, the Comparatives **propior**, **propius**, and the Superlatives **proximus**, **proximē**, sometimes govern the Accusative ; as,—  
**Ubī proximē Rhēnum incolunt**, *the Ubii dwell next to the Rhine* ;  
**propius castra hostium**, *nearer the camp of the enemy*.

142. The following Prepositions govern the Ablative :—

ā, ab, abs	dē	sine
absque	ē, ex	tenu
cōram	prae	
cum	prō	

1. **Ā, ab, abs**. Before vowels or **h**, **ab** must be used ; before consonants we find sometimes **ā**, sometimes **ab** (the latter not before the labials **b, p, f, v, m** ; nor before **c, g, q, or t**) ; **abs** occurs only before **tē**, and **ā** is admissible even there.

2. **Ē, ex**. Before vowels or **h**, **ex** must be used ; before consonants, we find sometimes **ē**, sometimes **ex**.

3. **Tenus** regularly follows its case, as **pectoribus tenus**, *up to the breast*. It sometimes governs the Genitive, as **labrōrum tenus**, *as far as the lips*.

4. **Cum** is appended to the Pronoun of the First and Second Persons, and to the Reflexive Pronoun; usually also to the Relative and Interrogative. Thus:—

mēcum	sēcum
tēcum	quōcum <i>or</i> cum quō
nōbiscum	quācum <i>or</i> cum quā
vōbiscum	quibuscum <i>or</i> cum quibus

On quīcum, see § 89, Footnote 1.

**143.** Two Prepositions, **in** and **sub**, govern both the Accusative and the Ablative. With the Accusative they denote **motion**; with the Ablative, **rest**; as,—

**in urbem**, *into the city*;      **in urbe**, *in the city*.

1. **Subter** and **super** are also occasionally construed with the Ablative.

#### **144. RELATION OF ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.**

1. Prepositions were originally Adverbs, and many of them still retain their adverbial meaning; as, **post**, *afterwards*; **ante**, *previously*; **contrā**, *on the other hand*, etc.

2. Conversely several words, usually adverbs, are occasionally employed as prepositions; as,—

**clam**, **prīdiē**, with the Accusative.

**procul**, **simul**, **palam**, with the Ablative.

3. **Anastrophe**. A dissyllabic preposition sometimes follows a relative pronoun which it governs; as,—

**īl, quōs inter erat**, *those among whom he was*.

### **INTERJECTIONS.**

**145.** Interjections are Particles expressing emotion. They may express—

1. Surprise; as, **ēn**, **ecce**, **ō**.

2. Joy; as, **iō**, **euoe**.

3. Sorrow and Pain; as, **heu**, **ēheu**, **vae**, **prō**.

4. Calling; as, **heus**, **eho**.

## PART IV.

### WORD-FORMATION.

#### I. DERIVATIVES.

146. Derivatives are formed by appending certain terminations called Suffixes to stems of verbs, nouns, or adjectives.

##### A. NOUNS.

##### 1. Nouns derived from Verbs.

147. 1. The suffix **-tor** (**-sor**), Fem. **-trix**, denotes *the agent*; as, —  
**victor**, **victrix**, *victor*;      **dēfēnsor**, *defender*.

NOTE. — The suffix **-tor** is occasionally appended to noun stems; as, —  
**gladiātor**, *gladiator* (from **gladius**).

2. The suffix **-or** (originally **-ōs**) denotes *an activity or a condition*; as, —  
**amor**, *love*;      **timor**, *fear*;      **dolor**, *pain*.

3. The suffixes **-tiō** (**-siō**), Gen. **-ōnis**, and **-tus** (**-sus**), Gen. **-ūs**, denote *an action as in process*; as, —  
**vēnātiō**, *hunting*; **obsessiō**, *blockade*; **gemitus**, *sighing*; **cursus**, *running*.

NOTE. — Rarer endings with the same force are: —

a) **-tūra**, **-sūra**; as, —  
**sepultūra**, *burial*; **mēnsūra**, *measuring*.

b) **-iūm**; as, —  
**gaudium**, *rejoicing*.

c) **-idō**, as, —  
**cupidō**, *desire*.



4. The suffixes **-men**, **-mentum**, **-crum**, **-trum**, **-bulum**, **-culum**. denote *the means* or *place* of an action; as, —

<b>lūmen</b> (lūc- <b>s-men</b> ), <i>light</i> ;	<b>vocābulum</b> , <i>word</i> ;
<b>ōrnāmentum</b> , <i>ornament</i> ;	<b>documentum</b> , <i>proof</i> ;
<b>sepulcrum</b> , <i>grave</i> .	<b>arātrum</b> , <i>plough</i> ;
<b>vehiculum</b> , <i>carriage</i> .	

When the root ends in **c**, the **c** of the suffix disappears; as, —  
**jaculum** for **jac-culum** (from **jacīō**).

## 2. Nouns derived from Nouns.

148. 1. Diminutives end in —

<b>-ulus</b> ,	( <b>-ula</b> ,	<b>-ulum</b> )
<b>-olus</b> ,	( <b>-ola</b> ,	<b>-olum</b> ), after a vowel
<b>-culus</b> ,	( <b>-cula</b> ,	<b>-culum</b> )
<b>-ellus</b> ,	( <b>-ella</b> ,	<b>-ellum</b> )
<b>-illus</b> ,	( <b>-illa</b> ,	<b>-illum</b> )

as, —

<b>nīdulus</b> ,	<i>little nest</i>	( <b>nīdus</b> );
<b>virgula</b> ,	<i>wand</i>	( <b>virga</b> );
<b>oppidulum</b> ,	<i>little town</i>	( <b>oppidum</b> );
<b>filīolus</b> ,	<i>little son</i>	( <b>filīus</b> );
<b>opusculum</b> ,	<i>little work</i>	( <b>opus</b> );
<b>tabella</b> ,	<i>tablet</i>	( <b>tabula</b> );
<b>lapillus</b> ,	<i>pebble</i>	( <b>lapis</b> ).

NOTE 1.—It will be observed that in gender the Diminutives follow the gender of the words from which they are derived.

NOTE 2.—The endings **-ellus**, **-illus** contain the primitive form of the diminutive suffix, *viz.*, **-lo-**. Thus: —

<b>agellus</b> , <i>field</i> ,	for	<b>ager-lus</b> ;
<b>lapillus</b> , <i>pebble</i> ,	for	<b>lapid-lus</b> .

2. The suffix **-ium** appended to nouns denoting persons designates either *a collection* of such persons or *their function*; as, —

<b>collēgium</b> , <i>a corporation, body of colleagues</i> ( <b>collēga</b> );
<b>sacerdōtium</b> , <i>priestly function</i> ( <b>sacerdōs</b> ).

3. The suffixes **-ārium**, **-ētum**, **-ile** designate a place where objects *are kept* or *are found in abundance*; as, —

<b>columbārium</b> ,	<i>dove-cote</i>	( <b>columba</b> );
<b>olivētum</b> ,	<i>olive-orchard</i>	( <b>olīva</b> );
<b>ovīle</b> ,	<i>sheep-fold</i>	( <b>ovis</b> ).

4. The suffix **-ātus** denotes *official position* or *honor*; as, —  
**cōnsulātus**, *consulship* (**cōnsul**).
5. The suffix **-īna** appended to nouns denoting persons designates *a vocation* or *the place where it is carried on*; as, —  
**doctrīna**, *teaching* (**doctor**, *teacher*);  
**medicīna**, *the art of healing* (**medicus**, *physician*);  
**sūtrīna**, *cobbler's shop* (**sūtor**, *cobbler*).
6. Patronymics are Greek proper names denoting *son of* . . .  
*daughter of* . . . They have the following suffixes: —
  - a) Masculines: **-idēs**, **-adēs**, **-idēs**; as, **Priamidēs**, *son of Priam*; **Aeneadēs**, *son of Aeneas*; **Pēlidēs**, *son of Peleus*.
  - b) Feminines: **-ōis**, **-ia**, **-ias**; as, **Nērōis**, *daughter of Nereus*; **Atlantis**, *daughter of Atlas*; **Thaumantias**, *daughter of Thaumās*.

### 3. Nouns derived from Adjectives.

149. The suffixes **-tās** (**-itās**), **-tūdō** (**-itūdō**), **-ia**, **-itia** are used for the formation of abstract nouns *denoting qualities*; as, —  
**bonitās**, *goodness*; **celeritās**, *swiftness*; **māgnitūdō**, *greatness*; **audācia**, *boldness*; **amīcitia**, *friendship*.

## B. ADJECTIVES.

### 1. Adjectives derived from Verbs.

150. 1. The suffixes **-bundus** and **-cundus** give nearly the force of a present participle; as, —  
**tremebundus**, *trembling*;                      **irācundus**, *wrathful*.
2. The suffixes **-āx** and **-ulus** denote *an inclination* or *tendency*, mostly a faulty one; as, —  
**loquāx**, *loquacious*;                      **crēdulus**, *credulous*.
3. The suffix **-idus** denotes *a state*; as, —  
**calidus**, *hot*;              **timidus**, *timid*;              **cupidus**, *eager*.
4. The suffixes **-ilis** and **-bilis** denote *capacity* or *ability*, usually in a passive sense; as, —  
**fragilis**, *fragile* (*i.e.* capable of being broken);  
**docilis**, *docile*.

## 2. Adjectives derived from Nouns.

## a) From Common Nouns.

151. 1. The suffixes **-eus** and **-inus** are appended to names of substances or materials; as, —

**aurus**, of gold; **ferreus**, of iron; **fāginus**, of beech.

2. The suffixes **-ius**, **-icus**, **-ilis**, **-ālis**, **-āris**, **-ārius**, **-nus**, **-ānus**, **-inus**, **-ivus**, **-ēnsis** signify *belonging to, connected with*; as, —

<b>ōrātōrius</b> , oratorical;	<b>legiōnārius</b> , legionary;
<b>bellicus</b> , pertaining to war;	<b>paternus</b> , paternal;
<b>civīlis</b> , civil;	<b>urbānus</b> , of the city;
<b>rēgālis</b> , regal;	<b>marīnus</b> , marine;
<b>cōsulāris</b> , consular;	<b>aestīvus</b> , pertaining to summer;
<b>circōnsis</b> , belonging to the circus.	

3. The suffixes **-ōsus** and **-lentus** denote *fullness*; as, —

<b>periculōsus</b> , full of danger,	<b>glōriōsus</b> , glorious;
<b>dangerous</b> ;	<b>opulentus</b> , wealthy.

4. The suffix **-tus** has the force of *provided with*; as, —

<b>barbātus</b> , bearded;	<b>stellātus</b> , set with stars.
----------------------------	------------------------------------

## b) From Proper Names.

152. 1. Names of *persons* take the suffixes: **-ānus**, **-iānus**, **-inus**; as, —

**Catōniānus**, belonging to Cato; **Plautīnus**, belonging to Plautus.

2. Names of *nations* take the suffixes **-icus**, **-ius**; as, —

<b>Germānicus</b> , German;	<b>Thrācius</b> , Thracian.
-----------------------------	-----------------------------

3. Names of *places* take the suffixes **-ānus**, **-īnus**, **-ēnsis**, **-aeus**, **-ius**; as, —

<b>Rōmānus</b> , Roman;	<b>Athēniēnsis</b> , Athenian;
<b>Amerīnus</b> , of Ameria;	<b>Smyrnaeus</b> , of Smyrna;
<b>Corinthius</b> , Corinthian.	

NOTE. — **-ānus** and **-ēnsis**, appended to names of countries, designate something *stationed in* the country or *connected with* it, but not *indigenous*; as, —

**bellum Āfricānum**, a war (of Romans with Romans) in Africa.  
**bellum Hispāniēnse**, a war carried on in Spain.  
**legiōnēs Gallicānae**, (Roman) legions stationed in Gaul.

3. Adjectives derived from Adjectives.

153. Diminutives in *-lus* sometimes occur; as, —

*parvolus*, *little*;  
*misellus passer*, *poor little sparrow*;  
*pauperculus*, *needy*.

4. Adjectives derived from Adverbs.

154. These end in *-ernus*, *-ternus*, *-tinus*, *-tīnus*; as, —

<i>hodiernus</i> ,	<i>of to-day</i>	( <i>hodiē</i> );
<i>hesternus</i> ,	<i>of yesterday</i>	( <i>herī</i> );
<i>intestīnus</i> ,	<i>internal</i>	( <i>intus</i> );
<i>diūtīnus</i> ,	<i>long-lasting</i>	( <i>diū</i> ).

C. VERBS.

1. Verbs derived from Verbs.

155. 1. INCEPTIVES OR INCHOATIVES. These end in *-scō*, and are formed from Present Stems. They denote *the beginning of an action*; as, —

<i>labāscō</i> ,	<i>begin to totter</i>	(from <i>labō</i> );
<i>horrēscō</i> ,	<i>grow rough</i>	(from <i>horreō</i> );
<i>tremēscō</i> ,	<i>begin to tremble</i>	(from <i>tremō</i> );
<i>obdormiscō</i> ,	<i>fall asleep</i>	(from <i>dormiō</i> ).

2. FREQUENTATIVES OR INTENSIVES. These denote *a repeated or energetic action*. They are formed from the Participial Stem, and end in *-tō* or *-sō*. Those derived from verbs of the First Conjugation end in *-itō* (not *-ātō*, as we should expect). Examples of Frequentatives are —

<i>jactō</i> ,	<i>toss about, brandish</i>	(from <i>jaciō</i> , <i>hurl</i> );
<i>cursō</i> ,	<i>run hither and thither</i>	(from <i>currō</i> , <i>run</i> );
<i>volitō</i> ,	<i>flit about</i>	(from <i>volō</i> , <i>fly</i> ).

a. Some double Frequentatives occur; as, —

<i>cantitō</i> ,	<i>sing over and over</i>	( <i>cantō</i> );
<i>cursitō</i> ,	<i>keep running about</i>	( <i>cursō</i> );
<i>ventitō</i> ,	<i>keep coming</i> .	

b. *agitō*, *set in motion*, is formed from the Present Stem.

3. DESIDERATIVES. These denote *a desire to do something*. They are formed from the Participial Stem, and end in **-uriō**; as, —

**ēsuriō**, *desire to eat, am hungry* (**edō**);  
**parturiō**, *want to bring forth, am in labor* (**pariō**).

## 2. Verbs derived from Nouns and Adjectives (Denominatives).

156. Denominatives of the First Conjugation are mostly transitive, those of the Second exclusively intransitive. Those of the Third and Fourth Conjugations are partly transitive, partly intransitive. Examples are —

a) From Nouns: —

**fraudō**, *defraud* (**fraus**);  
**vestiō**, *clothe* (**vestis**);  
**flōreō**, *bloom* (**flōs**).

b) From Adjectives: —

**liberō**, *free* (**liber**);  
**saeviō**, *be fierce* (**saevus**).

## D. ADVERBS.

157. 1. Adverbs derived from verbs are formed from the Participial Stem by means of the suffix **-im**; as, —

**certātim**, *emulously* (**certō**);  
**cursim**, *in haste* (**currō**);  
**statim**, *immediately* (**stō**).

2. Adverbs derived from nouns and adjectives are formed: —

a) With the suffixes **-tim** (**-sim**), **-ātim**; as, —

**gradātim**, *step by step*;  
**paulātim**, *gradually*;  
**virītim**, *man by man*.

b) With the suffix **-tus**; as, —

**antīquitus**, *of old*;  
**rādīcitus**, *from the roots*.

c) With the suffix **-ter**; as, —

**breviter**, *briefly*.

## II. COMPOUNDS.

158. 1. Compounds are formed by the union of simple words. The second member usually contains the *essential meaning* of the compound; the first member expresses *some modification* of this.

2. Vowel changes often occur in the process of composition. Thus:—

- a. In the second member of compounds. (See § 7. 1.)
- b. The final vowel of the stem of the first member of the compound often appears as **I** where we should expect **ō** or **ā**; sometimes it is dropped altogether, and in case of consonant stems **I** is often inserted; as,—

**signifer**, *standard-bearer*;  
**tubicen**, *trumpeter*;  
**māgnanimus**, *high-minded*;  
**mātriciōda**, *matricide*.

## 159. EXAMPLES OF COMPOUNDS.

1. Nouns:—

- a) Preposition + Noun; as,—  
**dē-decus**, *disgrace*;  
**pro-avus**, *great-grandfather*.
- b) Noun + Verb Stem; as,—  
**agri-cola**, *farmer*;  
**frātri-cīda**, *fratricide*.

2. Adjectives:—

- a) Preposition + Adjective (or Noun); as,—  
**per-māgnus**, *very great*;  
**sub-obscūrus**, *rather obscure*;  
**ā-mēns**, *frantic*.
- b) Adjective + Noun; as,—  
**māgn-animus**, *great-hearted*;  
**miseri-cors**, *compassionate*.
- c) Noun + Verb Stem; as,—  
**parti-ceps**, *sharing*;  
**morti-fer**, *death-dealing*.

## 3. Verbs : —

The second member is always a verb. The first may be —

a) A Noun ; as, —

**aedi-ficō**, *build*.

b) An Adjective ; as, —

**ampli-ficō**, *enlarge*.

c) An Adverb ; as, —

**male-dīcō**, *rail at*.

d) Another Verb ; as, —

**cale-faciō**, *make warm*.

e) A Preposition ; as, —

**ab-jungō**, *detach* ;

**re-ferō**, *bring back* ;

**dis-cernō**, *distinguish* ;

**ex-spectō**, *await*.

NOTE. — Here belong the so-called INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS : —

**ambi-** (**amb-**), *around* ;

**dis-** (**dir-**, **dī-**), *apart, asunder* ;

**por-** *forward* ;

**red-** (**re-**), *back* ;

**sēd-** (**sē-**), *apart from* ;

**vē-**, *without*.

## 4. Adverbs : —

These are of various types ; as, —

**anteā**, *before* ;

**hicō** (**in locō**), *on the spot* ;

**imprimis**, *especially* ;

**obviam**, *in the way*.

## PART V.

### SYNTAX.

160. Syntax treats of the use of words in sentences.

#### CHAPTER I. — *Sentences.*

##### CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

161. Sentences may be classified as follows :—

1. DECLARATIVE, which state something ; as, —  
*puer scribit, the boy is writing.*
2. INTERROGATIVE, which ask a question ; as, —  
*quid puer scribit, what is the boy writing?*
3. EXCLAMATORY, which are in the form of an exclamation ; as, —  
*quot librōs scribit, how many books he writes !*
4. IMPERATIVE, which express a command or an admonition ; as, —  
*scribe, write !*

##### FORM OF INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

162. Questions may be either Word-Questions or Sentence-Questions.

I. **Word-Questions.** These are introduced by the various interrogative pronouns and adverbs ; such as — *quis, quī, quālis, quantus, quot, quotiēns, quō, quā, etc.* Thus :—

*quis venit, who comes ?*

*quam diū manēbit, how long will he stay ?*



2. **Sentence-Questions.** These are introduced —

- a) By **nōnne** implying the answer 'yes'; as, —  
**nōnne vidēs**, *do you not see?*
- b) By **num** implying the answer 'no'; as, —  
**num expectās**, *do you expect? (i.e. you don't expect, do you?)*
- c) By the enclitic **-ne**, appended to the emphatic word, and simply asking for information; as, —  
**vidēsne**, *do you see?*

A question introduced by **-ne** may receive a special implication from the context; as, —

- sōnsistīne**, *did you not perceive?*
- d) Sometimes by no special word, particularly in expressions of surprise or indignation; as, —  
**tū in iūdicum cōspectum venīre audēs**, *do you dare to come into the presence of the judges?*

3. **RHETORICAL QUESTIONS.** Questions are sometimes such merely in form, being employed to express an emphatic assertion; as, **quis dubitat**, *who doubts?* (= *no one doubts*).

4. **DOUBLE QUESTIONS.** Double Questions are introduced by the following particles:—

**utrum . . . an;**  
**-ne . . . . an;**  
**— . . . . an.**

If the second member is negative, **annōn** (less often **necne**) is used. Examples:—

<b>utrum honestum est an turpe,</b>	} <i>is it honorable or base?</i>
<b>honestumne est an turpe,</b>	
<b>honestum est an turpe,</b>	
<b>suntne dī annōn,</b>	

*are there gods or not?*

- a. By an ellipsis of the first member, **an** sometimes stands alone. Its force depends upon the context; as, —

**Ā rēbus gerendīs abstrahit senectūs. Quibus? An eīs quae iuventūte geruntur et vīribus?** *Old age (it is alleged) withdraws men from active pursuits. From what pursuits? Is it not merely from those which are performed by the strength of youth?*

## 5. ANSWERS.

- a. The answer Yes is expressed by *ita*, *etiam*, *vērō*, *sānē*, or by repetition of the verb; as, —

‘*vīsne locum mūtēmus?*’ ‘*sānē.*’ ‘*Shall we change the place?*’ ‘*Certainly.*’

‘*estisne vōs lēgātī?*’ ‘*sumus.*’ ‘*Are you envoys?*’ ‘*Yes.*’

- b. The answer No is expressed by *nōn*, *minimē*, *minimē vērō*, or by repeating the verb with a negative; as, —

‘*jam ea praeteriit?*’ ‘*nōn.*’ ‘*Has it passed?*’ ‘*No.*’

‘*estne frāter intus?*’ ‘*nōn est.*’ ‘*Is your brother within?*’ ‘*No.*’

## SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

163. The two essential parts of a sentence are the SUBJECT and PREDICATE.

The SUBJECT is that *concerning which something is said, asked, etc.* The PREDICATE is that *which is said, asked, etc., concerning the SUBJECT.*

## SIMPLE AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

164. Sentences containing but one Subject and one Predicate are called SIMPLE SENTENCES, those containing more are called COMPOUND SENTENCES. Thus *puer librōs legit*, *the boy reads books*, is a Simple Sentence; but *puer librōs legit et epistulās scrībit*, *the boy reads books and writes letters*, is a Compound Sentence. The different members of a compound Sentence are called CLAUSES.

165. COÖRDINATE AND SUBORDINATE CLAUSES. Clauses which stand upon an equality are called COÖRDINATE; a Clause dependent upon another is called SUBORDINATE. Thus in *puer librōs legit et epistulās scrībit* the two clauses are Coördinate; but in *puer librōs legit quōs pater scrībit*, *the boy reads the books which his father writes*, the second clause is Subordinate to the first.

CHAPTER II. — *Syntax of Nouns.*

## SUBJECT.

**166.** The Subject of a Finite Verb (*i.e.* any form of the Indicative, Subjunctive, or Imperative) is in the Nominative Case.

1. The Subject may be —

a) A Noun or Pronoun; as, —

**puer scribit**, *the boy writes*;

**hic scribit**, *this man writes*.

b) An Infinitive; as, —

**decorum est pro patria mori**, *to die for one's country is a noble thing*.

c) A Clause; as, —

**opportunē accidit quod vēnistī**, *it happened opportunely that you arrived*.

2. A Personal Pronoun as Subject is usually implied in the Verb, and is not separately expressed; as, —

**scribō**, *I write*;

**videt**, *he sees*.

a. But for the purpose of-emphasis or contrast the Pronoun is expressed; as, —

**ego scribō et tū legis**, *I write, and you read*.

3. The verb is sometimes omitted when it can be easily supplied from the context, especially the auxiliary **sum**; as, —

**rēctē ille** (*sc. facit*), *he does rightly*; **cōnsul profectus** (*sc. est*), *the consul set out*.

## PREDICATE NOUNS.

**167.** A PREDICATE NOUN is one connected with the Subject by some form of the verb **sum** or a similar verb.

**168.** A Predicate Noun agrees with its Subject in Case;<sup>1</sup> as, —

<sup>1</sup> For the Predicate Genitive see §§ 198, 3; 203, 5.

**Cicerō ōrātor fuit**, *Cicero was an orator* ;  
**Numa creātus est rēx**, *Numa was elected king*.

1. When possible the Predicate Noun usually agrees with its Subject in Gender also ; as, —

**philosophia est vītae magistra**, *philosophy is the guide of life*.

2. Besides **sum** the verbs most frequently accompanied by a Predicate Noun are —

a) **fiō, ēvādō, existō ; maneo ; videor** ; as, —

**Croesus nōn semper mānsit rēx**, *Croesus did not always remain king*.

b) Passive verbs of *making, calling, regarding, etc.* ; as, **creor, appellor, habeor** ; as, —

**Rōmulus rēx appellātus est**, *Romulus was called king* ;  
**habitus est deus**, *he was regarded as a god*.

### APPOSITIVES.

169. 1. An Appositive is a Noun explaining or defining another Noun denoting the same person or thing ; as, —

**Cicerō cōsul**, *Cicero, the Consul* ;  
**urbs Rōma**, *the city Rome*.

2. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in Case ; as, —  
**opera Cicerōnis ōrātōris**, *the works of Cicero, the orator* ;  
**apud Hērodotum, patrem historiae**, *in the works of Herodotus, the father of history*.

3. When possible the Appositive agrees with its Subject in Gender also ; as, —

**assentātiō adjūtrix vitiōrum**, *flattery, the promoter of evils*.

4. A Locative may take in Apposition the Ablative of **urbs** or **oppidum**, with or without a preposition ; as, —  
**Corinthi, urbe praeclārā**, or **in urbe praeclārā**, *at Corinth, a famous city*.

5. PARTITIVE APPPOSITION. A Noun denoting a whole is frequently followed by an Appositive denoting a part ; as, —

**mīlitēs, fortissimus quisque, hostibus restitērunt**, *the soldiers, all the bravest of them, resisted the enemy*.

## THE CASES.

## THE NOMINATIVE.

**170.** The Nominative is confined to its use as Subject, Appositive, or Predicate Noun, as already explained. See §§ 166-169.

## THE VOCATIVE.

**171.** The Vocative is the Case of direct address; as, —  
**crēdite mihi, iūdicēs, believe me, judges.**

1. By a species of attraction, the Nominative is occasionally used for the Vocative, especially in poetry and formal prose; as, **audī tū, populus Albānus, hear ye, Alban people!**

2. Similarly the Appositive of a Vocative may, in poetry, stand in the Nominative; as, **nāte, mea māgna potentia sōlus, O son, alone the source of my great power.**

## THE ACCUSATIVE.

**172.** The Accusative is the Case of the Direct Object.

**173.** The Direct Object may express either of the two following relations: —

**A.** The PERSON OR THING AFFECTED by the action; as, —  
**cōnsulem interfēcit, he slew the consul;**  
**legō librum, I read the book.**

**B.** The RESULT PRODUCED by the action; as, —  
**librum scripsī, I wrote a book (i.e. produced one);**  
**templum struit, he constructs a temple.**

**174.** Verbs that admit a Direct Object of either of these two types are TRANSITIVE VERBS.

**a.** Verbs that regularly take a Direct Object are sometimes used without it. They are then said to be employed *absolutely*; as, —

**rūmor est meum gnātum amāre, it is rumored that my son is in love.**

## Accusative of the Person or Thing Affected.

175. 1. This is the most frequent use of the Accusative; as in —

**parentēs amāmus**, *we love our parents*;  
**mare aspicit**, *he gazes at the sea*.

2. The following classes of Verbs taking an Accusative of this kind are worthy of note: —

- a) Many Intransitive Verbs, when compounded with a Preposition, become Transitive. Thus: —

1) Compounds of **circum**, **praeter**, **trāns**; as, —  
**hostēs circumstāre**, *to surround the enemy*;  
**urbem praeterire**, *to pass by the city*;  
**mūrōs trāscendere**, *to climb over the walls*.

2) Less frequently, compounds of **ad**, **per**, **in**, **sub**; as, —  
**adire urbem**, *to visit the city*;  
**peragrāre Italiani**, *to travel through Italy*;  
**inire magistrātum**, *to take office*;  
**subire periculum**, *to undergo danger*.

- b) Many Verbs expressing emotions, regularly Intransitive, have also a Transitive use; as, —

**queror fātum**, *I lament my fate*;  
**doleō ejus mortem**, *I grieve at his death*;  
**rīdeō tuam stultitiā**, *I laugh at your folly*.

So also **lūgeō**, **maereō**, *mourn*; **gemō**, *bemoan*; **horreō**, *shudder*, and others.

- c) The impersonals **decet**, *it becomes*; **dēdecet**, *it is unbecoming*; **juvat**, *it pleases*, take the Accusative of the Person Affected; as, —

**mē decet haec dicere**, *it becomes me to say this*.

- d) In poetry many Passive Verbs, in imitation of Greek usage, are employed as Middles (§ 256, 1; 2), and take the Accusative as Object; as, —

**galeam induitur**, *he puts on his helmet*;  
**cinctus tempora hederā**, *having bound his temples with ivy*;  
**nōdō sinūs collēcta**, *having gathered her dress in a knot*.

**Accusative of the Result Produced.**

**176.** 1. The ordinary type of this Accusative is seen in such expressions as —

**librum scrībō**, *I write a book* ;  
**domum aedificō**, *I build a house*.

2. Many Verbs usually Intransitive take a *Neuter Pronoun*, or *Adjective* used as an Accusative of Result. Thus : —

a) A Neuter Pronoun ; as, —

**haec gemēbat**, *he made these moans* ;  
**illud glōrior**, *I make this boast* ;  
**eadem peccat**, *he makes the same mistakes*.

b) A Neuter Adjective, — particularly *Adjectives of number* or *amount*, — **multum**, **multa**, **omnia**, **pauca**, *etc.* ; as, —

**multa dubitō**, *I have many doubts* ;  
**pauca studet**, *he has few interests* ;  
**multum valet**, *he has great strength* ;  
**nihil prōgreditur**, *he makes no progress*.

NOTE. — In poetry other Adjectives are freely used in this construction ; as, —

**minitāntem vāna**, *making vain threats* ;  
**acerba tuēns**, *giving a fierce look* ;  
**dulce loquentem**, *sweetly talking*.

3. The adverbial use of several Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives grows out of this Accusative ; as, —

**multum sunt in vēnātiōne**, *they are much engaged in hunting*.

a. So also **plūrimum**, *very greatly* ; **plērumque**, *generally* ;  
**aliquid**, *somewhat* ; **quid**, *why?* **nihil**, *not at all* ; *etc.*

4. Sometimes an Intransitive Verb takes an Accusative of Result which is of kindred etymology with the Verb. This is called a **COGNATE ACCUSATIVE**, and is usually modified by an Adjective ; as, —

**sempiternam servitūtem serviat**, *let him serve an everlasting slavery* ;  
**vitam dūram vixī**, *I have lived a hard life*.

a. Sometimes the Cognate Accusative is not of kindred etymology, but merely of kindred meaning ; as, —

**stadium currit**, *he runs a race* ;  
**Olympia vincit**, *he wins an Olympic victory*.

5. The Accusative of Result occurs also after Verbs of *tasting* and *smelling*; as, —

**piscis mare sapit**, *the fish tastes of the sea*;

**ōrātiōnēs antīquitātem redolent**, *the speeches smack of the past*.

## Two Accusatives — Direct Object and Predicate Accusative.

177. 1. Many Verbs of *Making*, *Choosing*, *Calling*, *Showing*, and the like, take two Accusatives, one of the Person or Thing Affected, the other a Predicate Accusative; as, —

**mē hērēdem fēcit**, *he made me heir*.

Here **mē** is Direct Object, **hērēdem** Predicate Accusative.

So also —

**eum iudicem cēpēre**, *they took him as judge*;

**urbem Rōmam vocāvit**, *he called the city Rome*;

**sē virum praestitit**, *he showed himself a man*.

2. The Predicate Accusative may be an Adjective as well as a Noun; as, —

**hominēs caecōs reddit cupiditās**, *covetousness renders men blind*;

**Apollō Sōcratem sapientissimum iudicāvit**, *Apollo adjudged Socrates the wisest man*.

a. Some Verbs, as **reddō**, usually admit only an Adjective as the Predicate Accusative.

3. In the Passive the Direct Object becomes the Subject, and the Predicate Accusative becomes Predicate Nominative; as, —

**urbs Rōma vocāta est**, *the city was called Rome*.

a. Not all Verbs admit the Passive construction; **reddō** and **efficiō**, for example, never take it.

## Two Accusatives — Person and Thing.

178. 1. Some Verbs take two Accusatives, one of the Person Affected, the other of the Result Produced. Thus: —

a) Verbs of *requesting* and *demanding*, as, —

**ōtium dīvōs rogat**, *he asks the gods for rest*;

**mē duās ōrātiōnēs postulās**, *you demand two speeches of me*.



So also **orō**, **poscō**, **reposcō**, **exposcō**, **flāgitō**, though some of these prefer the Ablative with **ab** to the Accusative of the Person; as, —

**opem ā tē poscō**, *I demand aid of you.*

b) Verbs of *teaching* (**doceō** and its compounds); as, —  
**tē litterās doceō**, *I teach you your letters.*

c) Verbs of *inquiring*; as, —  
**tē haec rogō**, *I ask you this*;  
**tē sententiam rogō**, *I ask you your opinion.*

d) Several Special Verbs; *viz.* **moneō**, **admoneō**, **commoneō**, **cōgō**, **accūsō**, **arguō**, and a few others. These admit only a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective as Accusative of the Thing; as, —

**tē haec moneō**, *I give you this advice*;  
**mē id accūsās**, *you bring this accusation against me.*  
**id cōgit nōs nātūra**, *nature compels us (to) this.*

e) One Verb of *concealing*, **cēlō**; as, —  
**nōn tē cēlāvī sermōnem**, *I have not concealed the conversation from you.*

2. In the Passive construction the Accusative of the Person becomes the Subject, and the Accusative of the Thing is retained; as, —

**omnēs artēs edoctus est**, *he was taught all accomplishments*;  
**rogātus sum sententiam**, *I was asked my opinion*;  
**aliquid admonēmur**, *we are given some admonition.*

a. Only a few Verbs admit the Passive construction.

### Two Accusatives with Compounds.

179. 1. Transitive compounds of **trāns** may take two Accusatives, one dependent upon the Verb, the other upon the Preposition; as, —

**militēs flūmen trādūcit**, *he leads his soldiers across the river.*

2. With other compounds this construction is rare.

3. In the Passive the Accusative dependent upon the preposition is retained; as, —

**militēs flūmen trādūcebantur**, *the soldiers were led across the river.*

**Synecdochical (or Greek) Accusative.**

**180.** 1. The Synecdochical (or Greek) Accusative denotes the *part* to which an action or quality refers; as, —

**tremi**t **artūs**, literally, *he trembles as to his limbs, i.e. his limbs tremble*;  
**nūda** **genū**, lit. *bare as to the knee, i.e. with knee bare*;  
**manūs** **revinctus**, lit. *tied as to the hands, i.e. with hands tied*.

2. Note that this construction —

- a) Is borrowed from the Greek.
- b) Is chiefly confined to poetry.
- c) Usually refers to a part of the body.
- d) Is used with Adjectives as well as Verbs.

**Accusative of Time and Space.**

**181.** 1. *Duration of Time* and *Extent of Space* are denoted by the Accusative; as, —

**quadrāgintā annōs** **vīx**it, *he lived forty years*;  
**hīc** **locus** **passūs** **sescentōs** **aberat**, *this place was six hundred paces away*.  
**arborēs** **quīnquāgintā pedēs** **altae**, *trees fifty feet high*.  
**abhinc** **trēs annōs**, *three years ago*.

2. Emphasis is sometimes added by using the Preposition **per**; as,  
**per** **duōs annōs** **labōrāvī**, *I toiled throughout two years*.

**Accusative of Limit of Motion.**

**182.** 1. The Accusative of Limit of Motion is used —

a) With names of *Towns, Small Islands, and Peninsulas*; as, —

**Rōmam** **vēnī**, *I came to Rome*;  
**Athēnās** **proficīscitur**, *he sets out for Athens*;  
**Dēlum** **pervēnī**, *I arrived at Delos*.

b) With **domum**, **domōs**, **rūs**; as, —

**domum** **revertitur**, *he returns home*;  
**rūs** **ibō**, *I shall go to the country*.

NOTE. — When **domus** means *house* (i.e. building), it takes a preposition; as, —

**in** **domum** **veterem** **remigrāre**, *to move back to an old house*.

2. Other designations of place than those above mentioned require a Preposition to denote Limit of Motion; as, —

**Ad Italiam vēnit**, *he came to Italy.*

a. The Preposition is also customary when the Accusatives **urbem** or **oppidum** stand in apposition with the name of a town; as, —

**Cirtam in urbem**, *to the city Cirta;*

**Genēvam ad oppidum**, *to the town Geneva.*

b. The name of a town denoting limit of motion may be combined with the name of a country or other word dependent upon a preposition; as, —

**Thūriōs in Italiam pervectus**, *carried to Thurii in Italy;*  
**cum Acēn ad exercitum vēnisset**, *when he had come to the army at Ace.*

3. To denote *toward, to the vicinity of, in the vicinity of*, **ad** is used; as, —

**ad Tarentum vēnī**, *I came to the vicinity of Tarentum;*

**ad Cannās pūgna facta est**, *a battle was fought near Cannæ.*

4. In poetry the Accusative of any noun denoting a place may be used without a preposition to express the limit of motion; as, —

**Italiam vēnit**, *he came to Italy.*

5. The *goal* notion seems to represent the original function of the Accusative Case. Traces of this primitive force are recognizable in the phrase **infitiās ire**, *to deny* (lit. *to go to a denial*), and a few other similar expressions.

#### Accusative in Exclamations.

183. The Accusative, generally modified by an Adjective, is used in Exclamations; as, —

**mē miserum** *ah, wretched me!*

**Ō fallācem spem**, *oh, deceptive hope!*

#### Accusative as Subject of the Infinitive.

184. The Subject of the Infinitive is put in the Accusative; as, —

**videō hominem abire**, *I see that the man is going away.*

Other Uses of the Accusative.

185. Here belong —

1. Some Accusatives which were originally Appositives; *viz.* —  
*id genus, of that kind; as, hominēs id genus, men of that kind (originally hominēs, id genus hominum, men, that kind of men);*  
*virile secus, muliebre secus, of the male sex, of the female sex;*  
*meam vicem, tuam vicem, etc., for my part, etc.;*  
*bonam partem, in large part;*  
*māximam partem, for the most part.*
2. Some phrases of doubtful origin; *as,* —  
*id temporis, at that time; quod si, but if;*  
*id aetātis, at that time; cētera, in other respects;*  
*dextrum, on the right; laevum, on the left.*

THE DATIVE.

186. The Dative case in general expresses relations which are designated in English by the prepositions *to* and *for*.

Dative of Indirect Object.

187. The commonest use of the Dative is to denote the person *to whom* something is *given, said, or done*. Thus:—

I. With transitive verbs in connection with the Accusative; *as,* —

*hanc pecūniam mihi dat, he gives me this money;*  
*haec nōbis dixit, he said this to us.*

- a. Some verbs which take this construction also admit another, particularly the verbs *dōnō* and *circumdō*. Thus:—

*Either Themistocli mūnera dōnāvit, he presented gifts to Themistocles, or*

*Themistoclem mūneribus dōnāvit, he presented Themistocles with gifts;*

*urbī mūrōs circumdat, he builds walls around the city, or urbem mūrīs circumdat, he surrounds the city with walls.*

## II. With many intransitive verbs; as, —

**nūllī labōrī cēdit**, *he yields to no labor*;

**tibi suscēnēō**, *I am angry with you*.

- a. Here belong many verbs signifying *favor*,<sup>1</sup> *help*, *injure*, *please*, *displease*, *trust*, *distrust*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *threaten*, *believe*, *persuade*, and the like; as, —

**Caesar populārībus favet**, *Caesar favors (i.e. is favorable to) the popular party*;

**amicīs cōfidō**, *I trust (to) my friends*;

**militibus ignōscit**, *he pardons (i.e. grants pardon to) the troops*;

**Orgetorix Helvētiis persuāsit**, *Orgetorix persuaded (made it acceptable to) the Helvetians*;

**bonīs nocet quī malīs parcit**, *he injures (does harm to) the good, who spares the bad*.

NOTE. — It is to be borne in mind that these verbs do not take the Dative by virtue of their apparent English equivalence, but simply because they are *intransitive*, and adapted to an indirect object. Some verbs of the same apparent English equivalence are *transitive* and govern the Accusative; as, **juvō**, **laedō**, **dēlectō**. Thus: **audētēs deus juvat**, *God helps the bold*; **nēmīnem laesit**, *he injured no one*.

- b. Verbs of this class are used in the passive only impersonally; as, —

**tibi parcitur**, *you are spared*;

**mihi persuādētur**, *I am being persuaded*;

**eī invidētur**, *he is envied*.

III. With many verbs compounded with the prepositions: **ad**, **ante**, **com**,<sup>2</sup> **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, **super**, and sometimes **circum**.

These verbs fall into two main classes, —

1. Many simple verbs which cannot take a Dative of the indirect object become capable of doing so when compounded with a preposition; as, —

**afflictis succurrit**, *he helps the afflicted*;

**exercitū praefuit**, *he was in command of the army*;

**intersum cōsiliis**, *I share in the deliberations*.

<sup>1</sup> Many such verbs were originally intransitive in English also, and once governed the Dative.

<sup>2</sup> This was the original form of the preposition **cum**.

2. Many transitive verbs which take only a direct object become capable, when compounded, of taking a Dative also as indirect object; as,—

**pecūniae pudōrem antepōnit**, *he puts honor before money*;

**inīcere spem amīcīs**, *to inspire hope in one's friends*;

**Labiēnum exercitū praefēcit**, *he put Labienus in charge of the army*.

### Dative of Reference.

**188.** 1. The Dative of Reference denotes the person to whom a statement refers, of whom it is true, or to whom it is of interest; as,—

**mihi ante oculōs versāris**, *you hover before my eyes* (lit. *hover before the eyes to me*);

**illī sevērītās amōrem nōn dēminuit**, *in his case severity did not diminish love* (lit. *to him severity did not diminish*);

**intercludere hostibus commeātum**, *to cut off the supplies of the enemy*.

- a. Note the phrase **alicui interdicere aquā et ignī**, *to interdict one from fire and water*.

NOTE.—The Dative of Reference, unlike the Dative of Indirect Object, does not modify the verb, but rather the sentence as a whole. It is often used where, according to the English idiom, we should expect a Genitive; so in the first and third of the above examples.

2. Special varieties of the Dative of Reference are—

- a) **Dative of the Local Standpoint.** This is regularly a participle; as,—

**oppidum primum Thessaliae venientibus ab Ēpīrō**, *the first town of Thessaly as you come from Epirus* (lit. *to those coming from E.*).

- b) **Ethical Dative.** This name is given to those Dative constructions of the personal pronouns in which the connection of the Dative with the rest of the sentence is of the very slightest sort; as,—

**tū mihi istius audāciam dēfendis?** *tell me, do you defend that man's audacity?*

**quid mihi Celsus agit?** *what is my Celsus doing?*

**quid sibi vult?** *what does he mean?* (lit. *wish for himself?*)

## c) Dative of Person Judging; as, —

**erit ille mihi semper deus**, *he will always be a god to me*  
(i.e. in my opinion);

**quae ista servitūs tam clārō hominī**, *how can that be*  
*slavery to so illustrious a man* (i.e. to his mind)!

d) Dative of Separation. Compounds of **ab**, **dē**, **ex**, **ad** which have the general sense of *taking away* govern a Dative of the person, less often of the thing; as, —

**honōrem dētrāxērunt hominī**, *they took away the honor*  
*from the man*;

**Caesar rēgī tetrarchiam ēripuit**, *Caesar took the tetrarchy*  
*away from the king*;

**silio scintillam excūdit**, *he struck a spark from the flint*.

## Dative of Agency.

## 189. The Dative is used to denote agency —

## 1. Regularly with the Gerundive; as, —

**haec nobīs agenda sunt**, *these things must be done by us*;  
**mihi eundum est**, *I must go* (lit. *it must be gone by me*).

a. To avoid ambiguity, **ē** with the Ablative is sometimes used with the Gerundive; as, —

**hostibus ē nobīs parcendum est**, *the enemy must be spared by us*.

## 2. Much less frequently with the compound tenses of the passive voice and the perfect passive participle; as, —

**disputātiō, quae mihi nūper habita est**, *the discussion which was*  
*recently conducted by me*.

## 3. Rarely with the uncompounded tenses of the passive; as, —

**honesta bonīs virīs quaeruntur**, *noble ends are sought by good men*.

## Dative of Possession.

190. The Dative of Possession occurs with the verb **esse** in such expressions as: —

**mihi est liber**, *I have a book*;

**mihi nōmen est Mārcus**, *I have the name Marcus*.

1. But with **nōmen est** the name is more commonly attracted into the Dative; as, **mihi nōmen est Mārcō**.

## Dative of Purpose.

**191.** The Dative of Purpose designates *the end toward which an action is directed* or *for which something exists*. It is used —

1. Unaccompanied by another Dative; as, —

**castris locum dēligere**, *to choose a place for a camp*;

**legiōnēs praesidiō relinquere**, *to leave the legions as a guard* (lit. *for a guard*);

**receptuī canere**, *to sound the signal for a retreat*.

2. Much more frequently in connection with another Dative of the person: —

- a) Especially with some form of **esse**; as, —

**fortūnae tuae mihi cūrae sunt**, *your fortunes are a care to me* (lit. *for a care*);

**nōbīs sunt odiō**, *they are an object of hatred to us*;  
**cui bonō?** *to whom is it of advantage?*

- b) With other verbs; as, —

**hōs tibi mūnerī mīsit**, *he has sent these to you for a present*;

**Pausaniās Atticīs vēnit auxiliō**, *Pausanias came to the aid of the Athenians* (lit. *to the Athenians for help*).

3. In connection with the Gerundive; as, —

**decemvirī lēgibus scrībundīs**, *decemvirs for codifying the laws*.

**mē gerendō bellō ducem creāvēre**, *me they have made leader for carrying on the war*.

NOTE. — This construction with the gerundive is not common till Livy.

## Dative with Adjectives.

**192.** The use of the Dative with Adjectives corresponds very closely to its use with verbs. Thus: —

1. Corresponding to the Dative of Indirect Object it occurs with adjectives signifying: *friendly, unfriendly, similar, dissimilar, equal, near, related to, etc.*; as, —

**mihi inimicus**, *hostile to me*;

**sunt proximī Germānīs**, *they are next to the Germans*;

**noxiae poena pār estō**, *let the penalty be equal to the damage*.



a. For **propior** and **proximus**, with the Accusative, see § 141, 3.

2. Corresponding to the Dative of Purpose the Dative occurs with adjectives signifying: *suitable, adapted, fit*; as, —

**castris idōneus locus**, a *place fit for a camp*;

**apta diēs sacrificiō**, a *day suitable for a sacrifice*.

NOTE. — Adjectives of this last class often take the Accusative with **ad**.

### Dative of Direction.

193. In the poets the Dative is occasionally used to denote the *direction of motion*; as, —

**it clāmor caelō**, the *shout goes heavenward*;

**cinerēs rīvō fluentī jace**, cast the *ashes toward the flowing stream*.

1. By an extension of this construction the poets sometimes use the Dative to denote the *limit of motion*; as, —

**dum Latīō deōs inferret**, while he was *bringing his gods to Latium*.

## THE GENITIVE.

194. The Genitive is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.

### GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

195. With Nouns the Genitive is *the case which defines the meaning of the limited noun more closely*. This relation is generally indicated in English by the preposition *of*. There are the following varieties of the Genitive with Nouns: —

Genitive of Origin,  
Genitive of Material,  
Genitive of Possession,  
Subjective Genitive,

Objective Genitive,  
Genitive of the Whole,  
Appositional Genitive,  
Genitive of Quality.

196. Genitive of Origin; as, —

**Mārcī filius**, the *son of Marcus*.

197. Genitive of Material; as, —

**talentum auri**, a *talent of gold*;

**modius frūmenti**, a *peck of grain*.

**198. Genitive of Possession or Ownership ; as, —**

*domus Cicerōnis, Cicero's house.*

1. Here belongs the Genitive with *causā* and *grātiā*. The Genitive always precedes ; as, —

*hominum causā, for the sake of men ;*

*meōrum amicōrum grātiā, for the sake of my friends.*

2. *Instar* (lit. *image*) also takes the Possessive Genitive ; as, —

*equus instar montis, a horse as large as a mountain.*

3. The Possessive Genitive is often used predicatively, especially with *esse* and *fieri* ; as, —

*domus est rēgis, the house is the king's ;*

*stultī est in errōre manēre, it is (the part) of a fool to remain in error ;*

*dē bellō iudicium imperātōris est, nōn mīlitum, the decision concerning war belongs to the general, not to the soldiers.*

**199. Subjective Genitive.** This denotes *the person who makes or produces something or who has a feeling* ; as, —

*dicta Platōnis, the utterances of Plato ;*

*timōrēs liberōrum, the fears of the children.*

**200. Objective Genitive.** This denotes *the object of an action or feeling* ; as, —

*metus deōrum, the fear of the gods ;*

*amor libertātis, love of liberty ;*

*cōnsuetūdō bonōrum hominum, intercourse with good men.*

1. This relation is often expressed by means of prepositions ; as, —

*amor ergā parentēs, love toward one's parents.*

**201. Genitive of the Whole.** This designates *the whole of which a part is taken*. It is used —

1. With Nouns, Pronouns, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Ordinal Numerals ; as, —

*magna pars hominum, a great part of mankind ;*

*duo mīlia peditum, two thousand foot-soldiers ;*

*quis mortālium, who of mortals ?*

*māior frātrum, the elder of the brothers ;*

*gēs mājima Germānōrum, the largest tribe of the Germans ;*

*primus omnium, the first of all.*

- a. Yet instead of the Genitive of the Whole we often find **ex** or **dē** with the Ablative, regularly so with Cardinal numbers and **quidam**; as, —  
**fidelissimus dē servis**, *the most trusty of the slaves*;  
**quidam ex amicis**, *certain of his friends*;  
**unus ex militibus**, *one of the soldiers*.
- b. In English we often use *of* where there is no relation of whole to part. In such cases the Latin is more exact, and does not use the Genitive; as, —  
**quot vōs estis**, *how many of you are there?*  
**trecenti conjurāvimus**, *three hundred of us have conspired (i.e. we, three hundred in number)*.

2. The Genitive of the Whole is used also with the Nominative or Accusative Singular Neuter of Pronouns, or of Adjectives used substantively; also with the Adverbs **parum**, **satis**, and **partim** when used substantively; as, —

**quid cōsili**, *what purpose?*  
**tantum cibi**, *so much food*;  
**plūs auctoritātis**, *more authority*;  
**minus labōris**, *less labor*;  
**satis pecūniæ**, *enough money*;  
**parum industriæ**, *too little industry*.

- a. An Adjective of the second declension used substantively may be employed as a Genitive of the Whole; as, **nihil boni**, *nothing good*.
- b. But Adjectives of the third declension agree directly with the noun they limit; as, **nihil dulcius**, *nothing sweeter*.

3. Occasionally we find the Genitive of the Whole dependent upon Adverbs of place; as, —

**ubi terrārum? ubi gentium?** *where in the world?*

- a. By an extension of this usage the Genitive sometimes occurs in dependence upon **pridī** and **postridī**, but only in the phrases **pridī ējus diē**, *on the day before that*; **postridī ējus diē**, *on the day after that*.

**202. Appositional Genitive.** The Genitive sometimes has the force of an appositive; as, —

**nōmen rēgis**, *the name of king*;  
**poena mortis**, *the penalty of death*;  
**ars scribendī**, *the art of writing*.

**203. Genitive of Quality.** The Genitive modified by an Adjective is used to denote quality. This construction presents several varieties. Thus it is used —

1. To denote some internal or permanent characteristic of a person or thing; as, —

**vir māgnae virtūtis**, a man of great virtue;  
**rationēs ejus modī**, considerations of that sort.

a. Only a limited number of Adjectives occur in this construction, chiefly **māgnus**, **māximus**, **summus**, **tantus**, along with **ejus**.

2. To denote measure (*breadth, length, etc.*); as, —

**fossa quīdecim pedum**, a trench fifteen feet wide (or deep);  
**exsilium decem annōrum**, an exile of ten years.

3. By omission of **pretī** (*price*), or some kindred word, **tantī**, **quantī**, **parvī**, **māgnī**, **minōris**, **minimī**, **plūrimī**, **māximī** are used predicatively to denote *indefinite value*; as, —

**nūlla studia tantī sunt**, no studies are of so much value;  
**māgnī opera ejus exīstimāta est**, his assistance was highly esteemed.

a. **Plūris** (not strictly an adjective) follows the same analogy.

4. By an extension of the notion of *value*, **quantī**, **tantī**, **plūris**, and **minōris** are also used with verbs of *buying* and *selling*, to denote *indefinite price*; as, —

**quantī aedēs emistī**, at how high a price did you purchase the house?

5. Any of the above varieties of the Genitive of Quality may be used predicatively; as, —

**tantae mōlis erat Rōmānam condere gentem**, of so great difficulty was it to found the Roman race.

## GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

204. The Genitive is used with many Adjectives to limit the extent of their application. Thus: —

1. With Adjectives signifying *desire*, *knowledge*, *familiarity*, *memory*, *participation*, *power*, *fulness*, and their opposites; as, —

**studiōsus discendī**, desirous of learning;  
**perītus bellī**, skilled in war;  
**īnsuētus labōris**, unused to toil;  
**īmmemor mandātī tuī**, unmindful of your commission;  
**plēna periculōrum est vīta**, life is full of dangers.

a. Some participles used adjectively also take the Genitive; as, —

**diligēns vērītātis**, fond of truth;  
**amāns patriae**, devoted to one's country.

2. Sometimes with **proprius** and **communis**; as,—  
**virī propria est fortitūdō**, *bravery is characteristic of a man.*  
**memoria est communis omnium artium**, *memory is common to all professions.*

a. **proprius** and **communis** are also construed with the Dative.

3. With **similis** the Genitive is the commoner construction in Cicero, when the reference is to living objects; as,—

**filius patris simillimus est**, *the son is exactly like his father.*  
**meī similis**, *like me*; **vestrī similis**, *like you.*

When the reference is to things, both Genitive and Dative occur; as,—  
**mors somnō** (or **somnī**) **similis est**, *death is like sleep.*

4. In the poets and later prose writers the use of the Genitive with Adjectives is extended far beyond earlier limits; as, **atrōx animi**, *fierce of temper*; **incertus cōnsilii**, *undecided in purpose.*

## GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

205. The Genitive is used with the following classes of Verbs:—

### *Memini, Reminiscor, Obliviscor.*

#### 206. I. WHEN REFERRING TO PERSONS—

a. **memini** takes the Genitive in the significations *I bear in mind* (**memor sum**), *am mindful of*, or *make mention of*; but the Accusative in the signification, *I recall*; as,—

**vivōrum memini**, *I am mindful of the living*;  
**Achillēs cūjus suprà meminimus**, *Achilles, of whom we made mention above*;  
**Sullam memini**, *I recall Sulla.*

b. **obliviscor** regularly takes the Genitive; as,—

**Epicūrī nōn licet oblivisci**, *we mustn't forget Epicurus.*

2. WHEN REFERRING TO THINGS, **memini**, **reminiscor**, **obliviscor** take sometimes the Genitive, sometimes the Accusative, apparently without difference of meaning; as,—

**animus praeteritōrum meminit**, *the mind remembers the past*;  
**meministine nōmina**, *do you remember the names?*  
**reminiscere veteris incommodi**, *remember the former disaster*;  
**reminiscēns acerbitatem**, *remembering the severity.*

- a. But neuter pronouns, and adjectives used substantively, regularly stand in the Accusative; as, —  
*haec meminī, I remember this;*  
*multa reminiscor, I remember many things.*
3. The phrase *mihi (tibi, etc.) in mentem venit*, following the analogy of *meminī*, takes the Genitive; as, —  
*civium mihi in mentem venit, I remember the citizens.*

### *Admoneō, Commoneō, Commonefaciō.*

207. These verbs, in addition to an Accusative of the person, occasionally take a Genitive of the thing; as, —

*tē admoneō amicitiae nostrae, I remind you of our friendship.*

- a. But more frequently (in Cicero almost invariably) these verbs take *dē* with the Ablative; as, —  
*dē pecuniā mē admonēs, you remind me of the money.*
- b. A neuter pronoun or adjective used substantively regularly stands in the Accusative; as, —  
*tē hōc admoneō, I give you this warning.*

### Verbs of Judicial Action.

208. 1. Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting* take the Genitive of the *charge*; as, —

*mē fūrtī accūsāt, he accuses me of theft;*  
*Verrem avāritiae coarguit, he convicts Verres of avarice;*  
*impietātis absolūtus est, he was acquitted of blasphemy.*

2. Verbs of *Condemning* take —

- a. The Genitive of the *charge*; as, —  
*pecūniae publicae damnātus, condemned (on the charge) of embezzlement (lit. public money);*  
*capitis damnātus, condemned on a capital charge (lit. on a charge involving his head).*
- b. The Ablative of the *penalty*; as, —  
*capite damnātus est, he was condemned to death;*  
*mille nummīs damnātus est, he was condemned (to pay) a thousand sesterces (lit. by a thousand sesterces, Abl. of Means).*

3. Note the phrases :—

**vōtī damnātus, vōtī reus**, *having attained one's prayer* (lit. *condemned on the score of one's vow*) ;

**dē vī**, (*accused, convicted, etc.*) *of assault* ;

**inter sicāriōs**, (*accused, convicted, etc.*) *of murder*.

### Genitive with Impersonal Verbs.

209. 1. The Impersonals **pudet, paenitet, miseret, taedet, piget** take the Accusative of *the person affected*, along with the Genitive of *the person or thing toward whom the feeling is directed* ; as, —

**pudet mē tuī**, *I am ashamed of you* (lit. *it shames me of you*) ;

**paenitet mē hūjus factī**, *I repent of this act* ;

**eum taedet vītae**, *he is weary of life* ;

**pauperum tē miseret**, *you pity the poor*.

a. Instead of the Genitive of the thing we often find an Infinitive or Neuter Pronoun used as subject of the verb. Thus :—

**mē paenitet hōc fēcisse**, *I repent of having done this* ;

**mē hōc pudet**, *I am ashamed of this*.

2. **Misereor** and **miserescō** also govern the Genitive ; as, —  
**miserēminī sociōrum**, *pity the allies*.

### Interest, Rēfert.

210. With **interest**, *it concerns*, three points enter into consideration ; viz. —

a) the *person concerned* ;

b) the *thing about which* he is concerned ;

c) the *extent* of his concern.

211. 1. The *person concerned* is regularly denoted by the Genitive ; as, —

**patris interest**, *it concerns the father*.

a. But instead of the Genitive of the personal pronouns, **mē, tuī**, etc., the Latin uses the Ablative Singular Feminine of the Possessive, viz. : **meā, tuā**, etc. ; as, —

**meā interest**, *it concerns me*.

NOTE. — But the Latin says **omnium nostrum interest**, *it concerns us all*.

2. The *thing about which* a person is concerned is denoted —

- a) by a Neuter Pronoun as subject; as, —  
**hōc reī pūblicaē interest**, *this concerns the state.*
- b) by an Infinitive; as, —  
**omnium interest valēre**, *it concerns all to keep well.*
- c) by an Indirect Question; as, —  
**meā interest quandō veniās**, *I am concerned as to when you are coming.*

3. The *degree of concern* is denoted —

- a) by the Genitive (of Quality): **māgnī, parvī**, etc.; as, —  
**meā māgnī interest**, *it concerns me greatly.*
- b) by the Adverbs, **māgnopere, magis, māximē**, etc.; as, —  
**cīvium minimē interest**, *it concerns the citizens very little.*
- c) by the Neuters, **multum, plūs, minus**, etc.; as, —  
**multum vestrā interest**, *it concerns you much.*

4. **Rēfert** follows **interest** in its construction, except that it rarely takes the Genitive of the person. Thus: —

**meā rēfert**, *it concerns me;*

but rarely **illius rēfert**, *it concerns him.*

#### Genitive with Other Verbs.

212. 1. Verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* sometimes govern the Genitive; as, —

**pecūniae indigēs**, *you need money.*

- a. These verbs more commonly take the Ablative (§ 214, 1); **indigēō** is the only verb which has a preference for the Genitive.

2. **Potior** though usually followed by the Ablative, sometimes takes the Genitive, almost always so in Sallust; and regularly in the phrase: **potiri rērum**, *to get control of affairs.*

- 3. In poetry some verbs take the Genitive in imitation of the Greek; as, —  
**dēsine querellārum**, *cease your complaints;*  
**operum solūti**, *freed from their tasks.*



## THE ABLATIVE.

**213.** The Latin Ablative unites in itself three cases which were originally distinct both in form and in meaning; *viz.* —

The Ablative or **from**-case.

The Instrumental or **with**-case.

The Locative or **where**-case.

The uses of the Latin Ablative accordingly fall into Genuine Ablative uses, Instrumental uses, and Locative uses.

## GENUINE ABLATIVE USES.

## Ablative of Separation.

**214.** The Ablative of Separation is construed sometimes with, sometimes without, a preposition.

1. The following words regularly take the Ablative without a preposition: —

- a) The Verbs of *freeing*: **liberō**, **solvō**, **levō**;
- b) The Verbs of *depriving*: **privō**, **spoliō**, **exuō**, **fraudō**, **nūdō**;
- c) The Verbs of *lacking*: **egeō**, **careō**, **vacō**;
- d) The corresponding Adjectives, **liber**, **inānis**, **vacuus**, **nūdus**, and some others of similar meaning.

Thus: —

**cūris liberātus**, *freed from cares*;

**Caesar hostēs armīs exuit**, *Caesar stripped the enemy of their arms*;

**caret sēnsū commūnī**, *he lacks common sense*;

**auxiliō eget**, *he needs help*;

**bonōrum vīta vacua est metū**, *the life of the good is free from fear*.

NOTE 1. — Yet Adjectives and **liberō** may take the preposition **ab**, — regularly so with the Ablative of persons; as, —

**urbem ā tyrannō liberāvunt**, *they freed the city from the tyrant*.

NOTE 2. — **Indigeō** usually takes the Genitive. See § 212, 1, a.

2. Of Verbs signifying *to keep from, to remove, to withdraw*, some take the preposition, others omit it. The same Verb often admits both constructions. Examples:—

**abstinere cibō**, *to abstain from food*;

**hostēs finibus prohibuerunt**, *they kept the enemy from their borders*;

**praedōnēs ab insulā prohibuit**, *he kept the pirates from the island*.

3. Other Verbs of separation usually take the Ablative with a Preposition, particularly compounds of **dis-** and **se-**; as,—

**dissentiō ā tē**, *I dissent from you*;

**secerantur ā nobīs**, *let them be separated from us*.

### Ablative of Source.

215. The Ablative of Source is used with the participles **nātus** and **ortus** (in poetry also with **ēditus**, **satus**, and some others), to designate *parentage* or *station*; as,—

**Jove nātus**, *son of Jupiter*;

**summō locō nātus**, *high-born* (lit. *born from a very high place*);

**nōbilli genere ortus**, *born of a noble family*.

1. Pronouns regularly (nouns rarely) take **ex**; as,—

**ex mē nātus**, *sprung from me*.

2. To denote remoter descent, **ortus ab**, or **oriundus** (with or without **ab**), is used; as,—

**ab Ulixē oriundus**, *descended from Ulysses*.

### Ablative of Agent.

216. The Ablative accompanied by **ā** (**ab**) is used with passive verbs to denote the *personal agent*; as,—

**ā Caesare accūsātus est**, *he was arraigned by Caesar*.

1. Collective nouns referring to persons, and abstract nouns when personified; may be construed as the personal agent. Thus:—

**hostēs ā fortunā deserēbantur**, *the enemy were deserted by Fortune*;

**ā multitudīne hostium mōntēs tenēbantur**, *the mountains were held by a multitude of the enemy*.

2. Names of animals sometimes admit the same construction. Thus:—

**ā canibus laniātus est**, *he was torn to pieces by dogs*.

## Ablative of Comparison.

**217.** 1. The Ablative is often used with Comparatives in the sense of *than*; as, —

*melle dulcior, sweeter than honey;*

*patria mihi vitā cārior est, my country is dearer to me than life.*

2. This construction, as a rule, occurs only as a substitute for *quam* (*than*) with the Nominative or Accusative. In other cases *quam* must be used; as, —

*tui studiōsior sum quam illius, I am fonder of you than of him.*

*Studiōsior illō* would have meant, *I am fonder of you than he is.*

3. *Plūs, minus, amplius, longius* are often employed as the equivalents of *plūs quam, minus quam, etc.* Thus: —

*amplius viginti urbēs incenduntur, more than twenty cities are fired;*

*minus quinque milia prōcessit, he advanced less than five miles.*

4. Note the use of *opiniōne* with Comparatives; as, —  
*opiniōne celerius venit, he comes more quickly than expected* (lit. *than opinion*).

## INSTRUMENTAL USES OF THE ABLATIVE.

## Ablative of Means.

**218.** The Ablative is used to denote *means* or *instrument*; as, —

*Alexander sagittā vulnerātus est, Alexander was wounded by an arrow.*

There are the following special varieties of this Ablative: —

1. *Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, and their compounds take the Ablative; as, —

*dīvitiis ūtitur, he uses his wealth* (lit. *he benefits himself by his wealth*);

*vitā fruitur, he enjoys life* (lit. *he enjoys himself by life*);

*mūnere fungor, I perform my duty* (lit. *I busy myself with duty*);

*carne vescuntur, they eat flesh* (lit. *feed themselves by means of*);

*urbe potitus est, he got possession of the city* (lit. *made himself powerful by the city*).

a. *Potior* sometimes governs the Genitive. See § 212, 2.

2. With **opus est** (rarely **ūsus est**), *there is need*; as, —  
**duce nōbīs opus est**, *we need a leader.*

a. A Neuter Pronoun or Adjective often stands as subject with **opus** as predicate. Thus: —

**hōc mihi opus est**, *this is necessary for me.*

b. An ordinary substantive rarely stands as subject. Thus **dux nōbīs opus est** is a rare form of expression.

c. Note the occasional use of a perfect passive participle with **opus est**; as, —

**opus est properātō**, *there is need of haste.*

3. With **nītor**, **innīxus**, and **frētus**; as, —

**nītitur hastā**, *he rests on a spear* (lit. *supports himself by a spear*);  
**frētus virtūte**, *relying on virtue* (lit. *supported by virtue*).

4. With **continēri**, **cōnsistere**, **cōnatāre**, *consist of*; as, —

**nervīs et ossibus continentur**, *they consist of sinews and bones* (lit. *they are held together by sinews and bones*);

**mortālī cōnsistit corpore mundus**, *the world consists of mortal substance* (lit. *holds together by means of, etc.*).

5. With **miscēre** and **mūtāre**; as, —

**mella vīnō miscēre**, *to mix honey with wine*;

**pācem bellō mūtāt**, *they change peace for war* (lit. *with war*).

6. In expressions of the type: —

**quid hōc homīne faciās**, *what can you do with this man?*

**quid meā Tulliolā fiet**, *what will become of my dear Tullia?* (lit. *what will be done with her?*)

7. In the following special phrases at variance with the ordinary English idiom: —

**proeliō contendere**, **vincere**, *to contend, conquer in battle*;

**proeliō lacessere**, *to provoke to battle*;

**assuētus (assuēfactus) labōre**, *accustomed to toil*;

**currū vehī**, *to ride in a chariot*;

**pedibus ire**, *to go on foot*;

**tībīs (fidibus) canere**, *to play the flute (lyre)*;

**pīlā lūdere**, *to play ball*;

**castrīs sē tenēre**, *to keep in camp*;

and some others.

8. With Verbs of *filling* and Adjectives of *plenty*; as, —  
**fossās virgultīs complērunt**, *they filled the trenches with brush.*

a. But **plēnus** more commonly takes the Genitive. See § 204, 1.

9. Under 'Means' belongs also the Ablative of the way by which; as, —

**vīnum Tiberī dēvectum**, *wine brought down (by) the Tiber.*

10. The means may be a person as well as a thing. Thus:—

**militibus a lacū Lemannō ad montē Jūram mūrūm perduct**, *with (i.e. by means of) his troops he runs a wall from Lake Geneva to Mt. Jura.*

### Ablative of Cause.

219. The Ablative is used to denote *cause*; as, —  
**multa glōriæ cupiditatē fēcit**, *he did many things on account of his love of glory.*

1. So especially with verbs denoting mental states; as, **dēlector**, **gaudeō**, **laetor**, **glōrior**, **fīdō**, **cōnfīdō**. Also with **contentus**; as, —

**fortūnā amīcī gaudeō**, *I rejoice at the fortune of my friend (i.e. on account of it);*

**victōriā suā glōriantur**, *they exult over their victory;*

**nātūrā locī cōnfīdebant**, *they trusted in the character of their country (lit. were confident on account of the character).*

a. **fīdō** and **cōnfīdō** always take the Dative of the person (§ 187, II. a); sometimes the Dative of the thing.

2. As Ablatives of Cause are to be reckoned also such Ablatives as **jussū**, *by order of*, **injussū**, **rogātū**, etc.

### Ablative of Manner.

220. The Ablative with **cum** is used to denote *manner*; as, —

**cum gravitatē loquitur**, *he speaks with dignity.*

1. The preposition may be omitted when the Ablative is modified by an adjective; as, —

**magnā gravitatē loquitur**, *he speaks with great dignity.*

2. The preposition is regularly omitted in the expressions **jūre**, **injūriā**, **jocō**, **vī**, **fraude**, **voluntātē**, **fūrtō**, **silentiō**.

3. A special variety of the Ablative of Manner denotes that *in accordance with which* or *in pursuance of which* anything is or is done. It is generally used without a preposition. Thus: —

**meā sententiā**, according to my opinion ;  
**suīs mōribus**, in accordance with their custom ;  
**suā sponte**, voluntarily, of their own accord ;  
**eā condiōne**, on these terms.

#### Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

221. The Ablative is often used to denote an *attendant circumstance* of an action or an event ; as, —

**bonīs auspiciis**, under good auspices ;  
**nūlla est altercatiō clāmōribus umquam habita mājōribus**, no  
*debate was ever held under circumstances of greater applause ;*  
**extinguitur ingentī luctū prōvinciae**, he dies under circumstances  
*of great grief on the part of the province ;*  
**longō intervallō sequitur**, he follows at a great distance.

#### Ablative of Accompaniment.

222. The Ablative with **cum** is used to denote *accompaniment* ; as, —

**cum comitibus profectus est**, he set out with his attendants ;  
**cum febrī rediit**, he returned with a fever.

1. In military expressions the Ablative may stand without **cum** when modified by any adjective except a numeral ; as, —

**omnibus cōpiis, ingentī exercitū, magnā manū** ; but always **cum exercitū, cum duābus legiōnibus**.

#### Ablative of Degree of Difference.

223. The Ablative is used with comparatives and words involving comparison (as **post**, **ante**, **infra**, **supra** ; **superāre**, **surpass**) to denote the *degree of difference* ; as, —

**dīmidiō minor**, smaller by a half ;  
**tribus pedibus altior**, three feet higher ;  
**paulō post**, a little afterwards ;  
**quō plūra habēmus, eō cupimus ampliōra**, the more we have, the more we want.

## Ablative of Quality.

224. The Ablative, modified by an adjective, is used to denote *quality*; as, —

**puella eximiā fōrmā**, a girl of exceptional beauty;  
**vir singulārī industriā**, a man of singular industry.

1. The Ablative of Quality may also be used predicatively; as, —  
**est māgnā prūdentiā**, he is (a man) of great wisdom;  
**bonō animō sunt**, they are of good courage.
2. In place of the Adjective we sometimes find a limiting Genitive; as, —  
**sunt speciēs et colōre taurī**, they are of the appearance and color of a bull.
3. In all numerical designations of *weight, value, dimension, etc.*, the Genitive of Quality takes the place of the Ablative of Quality. See § 203. 2.

## Ablative of Price.

225. With verbs of *buying* and *selling*, price is designated by the Ablative; as, —

**servum quīnque minīs ēmit**, he bought the slave for five minae.

1. The Ablatives **māgnō**, **plūrimō**, **parvō**, **minimō** (by omission of **pretiō**) are used to denote *indefinite price*; as, —  
**aedēs māgnō vēdidit**, he sold the house for a high price.
2. For the Genitive of Indefinite Price, see § 203. 4.

## Ablative of Specification.

226. The Ablative of Specification is used to denote that *in respect to which* something is or is done; as, —

**Helvētiī omnibus Gallīs virtūte praestābant**, the Helvetians surpassed all the Gauls in valor;  
**pede claudus**, lame in his foot.

1. Note the phrases: —  
**māior nātū**, older (lit. greater as to age);  
**minor nātū**, younger.
2. Here belongs the use of the Ablative with **dignus** and **indignus**; as, —  
**dignī honōre**, worthy of honor;  
**fidē indignī**, unworthy of confidence.

## Ablative Absolute.

**227.** The Ablative Absolute is grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. In its commonest form it consists of a noun or pronoun limited by a participle; as, —

**urbe captā, Aenēās fūgit**, *when the city had been captured, Aeneas fled* (lit. *the city having been captured*).

1. Instead of a participle we often find an adjective or noun; as, —  
**vīvō Caesare rēs pūblica salva erat**, *while Caesar was alive the state was safe* (lit. *Caesar being alive*);

**Tarquiniō rēge, Pŷthagorās in Italiā vēnit**, *in the reign of Tarquin Pythagoras came into Italy* (lit. *Tarquin being king*).

**Cn. Pompējō, M. Crassō cōsulibus**, *in the consulship of Gnaeus Pompey and Marcus Crassus*.

2. The Ablative Absolute is generally used in Latin where in English we employ subordinate clauses. Thus the Ablative Absolute may correspond to a clause denoting —

a) Time, as in the foregoing examples.

b) Condition; as, —

**omnēs virtūtēs jacent, voluptāte dominante**, *all virtues lie prostrate, if pleasure is master*.

c) Opposition; as, —

**perditis omnibus rēbus, virtūs sē sustentāre potest**, *though everything else is lost, yet Virtue can maintain herself*.

d) Cause; as, —

**nūllō adversante rēgnum obtinuit**, *since no one opposed him, he secured the throne*.

e) Attendant circumstance; as, —

**passis palmis pācem petivērunt**, *with hands outstretched they sued for peace*.

3. An Infinitive or clause sometimes occurs in the Ablative Absolute construction in Livy and later writers; as, —

**audītō eum fūgisse**, *when it was heard that he had fled*.

4. A noun or pronoun stands in the Ablative Absolute construction only when it denotes a different person or thing from any in the clause in which it stands. Exceptions to this principle are extremely rare.



## LOCATIVE USES OF THE ABLATIVE.

## Ablative of Place.

## A. Place where.

**228.** The place where is regularly denoted by the *Ablative with a preposition*; as, —

*in urbe habitat, he dwells in the city.*

1. But certain words stand in the Ablative without a preposition; *viz.* —

- a) Names of towns, — except Singulars of the First and Second Declensions; as, —

**Carthāgine**, at Carthage;

**Athēnīs**, at Athens;

**Vēiīs**, at Veii.

- b) The general words **locō**, **locīs**, **parte**, also many words modified by **tōtus** or even by other Adjectives; as, —

**hōc locō**, at this place;

**tōtīs castrīs**, in the whole camp.

- c) The special words: **forīs**, out of doors; **rūrī**, in the country; **terrā marīque**, on land and sea.

- d) The poets freely omit the preposition with any word denoting place; as, —

**stant litore puppēs**, the ships rest on the beach.

B. Place from which.<sup>1</sup>

**229.** Place from which is regularly denoted by the *Ablative with a preposition*; as, —

**ab Italiā profectus est**, he set out from Italy;

**ex urbe rediit**, he returned from the city.

1. But certain words stand in the Ablative without a preposition; *viz.* —

- a) Names of towns and small islands; as, —

**Rōmā profectus est**, he set out from Rome;

**Rhodō revertit**, he returned from Rhodes.

<sup>1</sup> Place from which, though strictly a Genuine Ablative use, is treated here for sake of convenience.

b) *domō*, from home; *rūre*, from the country.

c) Freely in poetry; as, —

*Italiā dēcessit*, he withdrew from Italy.

2. With names of towns, *ab* is used to mean *from the vicinity of*, or to denote the point *whence distance is measured*; as, —

*ā Gergoviā dīcessit*, he withdrew from the vicinity of Gergovia.

*ā Rōmā X mīlia aberat*, he was ten miles distant from Rome.

*Urbe* and *oppidō*, when standing in apposition with a town name, are accompanied by a preposition; as, —

*Curibus ex oppidō Sabīnōrum*, from Cures, a town of the Sabines.

### Ablative of Time.

#### A. Time at which.

230. The Ablative is used to denote the time *at which*; as, —

*quārtā hōrā mortuus est*, he died at the fourth hour;

*annō septuāgēsīmō cōsul creātus*, elected consul in his seventieth year.

1. Any word denoting a period of time may stand in this construction, particularly *annus*, *vēr*, *aestās*, *hiems*, *diēs*, *nox*, *hōra*, *comitia* (*Election Day*), *lūdī* (*the Games*), etc.

2. Words not denoting time require the preposition *in*, unless accompanied by a modifier. Thus: —

*in pāce*, in peace;

*in bellō*, in war;

but

*secundō bellō Pūnicō*, in the second Punic War.

3. Expressions like *in eō tempore*, *in summā senectūte* take the preposition because they denote *situation* rather than *time*.

#### B. Time within which.

231. Time *within which* is denoted by the Ablative either *with* or *without a preposition*; as, —

*stella Sātūrnī trīgintā annīs cursum cōficit*, the planet Saturn completes its orbit within thirty years;

*ter in annō*, thrice in the course of the year.

1. Occasionally the Ablative denotes *duration of time*; as, —

*bienniō prōsperās rēs habuit*, for two years he had a prosperous administration.

## THE LOCATIVE.

**232.** The Locative case occurs only in the following words:—

1. Regularly in the Singular of names of towns and small islands of the first and second declensions, to denote the place *in which*; as,—

**Rōmae**, at Rome;                      **Corinthī**, at Corinth;  
**Rhodī**, at Rhodes.

2. In the following special forms:—

**domī**, at home;                      **humī**, on the ground;  
**bellī**, in war;                      **militiae**, in war;  
**vesperī**, at evening;                      **herī**, yesterday.

3. Note the phrase **pendēre animī**, lit. *to be in suspense in one's mind*.

4. Consonant Stems occasionally form a Locative in **-ī**; as,—

**Lacedaemonī**, at Sparta;                      **Carthāginī**, at Carthage;  
**Tīburī**, at Tibur.

CHAPTER III.—*Syntax of Adjectives.*

**233.** 1. The word with which an Adjective agrees is called its Subject.

2. **Attributive and Predicate Adjectives.** An Attributive Adjective is one that limits its subject directly; as,—

**vir sapiēns**, a wise man;

A Predicate Adjective is one that limits its subject through the medium of a verb (usually **esse**); as,—

**vir est sapiēns**, the man is wise;  
**vir vidēbātur sapiēns**, the man seemed wise;  
**vir iudicātus est sapiēns**, the man was judged wise.

3. Participles and Adjective Pronouns have the construction of Adjectives.

# AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

**234. Agreement with One Noun.** When an Adjective limits one noun it agrees with it in Gender, Number, and Case.

1. Two Adjectives in the Singular may limit a noun in the Plural; as, *prīma et vīcēsima legiōnēs*, *the first and twentieth legions*.

2. A Predicate Adjective may stand in the Neuter when its Subject is Masculine or Feminine and denotes a thing; as, —

*mors est miserum*, *death is a wretched thing*.

## 235. Agreement with Two or More Nouns.

### A. AGREEMENT AS TO NUMBER.

1. When the Adjective is Attributive, it regularly agrees in number with the nearest noun; as, —

*pater tuus et māter*, *your father and mother*;  
*eadem alacritās et studium*, *the same eagerness and zeal*.

2. When the Adjective is Predicative, it is regularly Plural; as, —

*pāx et concordia sunt pulchrae*, *peace and concord are glorious*.

### B. AGREEMENT AS TO GENDER.

1. When the Adjective is Attributive, it regularly agrees in gender with the nearest noun; as, —

*rēs operae multae ac labōris*, *a matter of much effort and labor*.

2. When the Adjective is Predicative —

a) If the nouns are of the same gender, the Adjective agrees with them in gender; as, —

*pater et filius capti sunt*, *father and son were captured*.

Yet with feminine abstract nouns, the Adjective is more frequently Neuter; as, —

*stultitia et timiditas fugienda sunt*, *folly and cowardice must be shunned*.

b) If the nouns are of different gender; then, —

α) In case they denote persons, the Adjective is Masculine; as, —

**pater et māter mortuī sunt**, *the father and mother have died.*

β) In case they denote things, the Adjective is Neuter; as, —

**honōrēs et victōriae fortuita sunt**, *honors and victories are accidental.*

γ) In case they include both persons and things, the Adjective is, —

αα) Sometimes Masculine; as, —

**domus, uxor, liberī inventī sunt**, *home, wife, and children are secured.*

ββ) Sometimes Neuter; as, —

**parentēs, liberōs, frātrēs vilia habere**, *to hold parents, children, brothers, cheap.*

γγ) Sometimes it agrees with the nearest noun; as, —

**populī prōvinciaeque liberatae sunt**, *nations and provinces were liberated.*

c) **Construction according to Sense.** Sometimes an Adjective does not agree with a noun according to strict grammatical form, but according to sense; as, —

**pars bēstīlis objectī sunt**, *part (of the men) were thrown to beasts.*

### ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY.

**236. I. PLURAL ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY.** Adjectives are quite freely used as Substantives in the Plural. The Masculine denotes persons; the Neuter denotes things; as, —

**doctī**, *scholars;*

**parva**, *small things;*

**malī**, *the wicked;*

**māgna**, *great things;*

**Graeci**, *the Greeks;*

**ūtilia**, *useful things;*

**nostrī**, *our men.*

2. Neuter Plural Adjectives thus used are confined mainly to the Nominative and Accusative cases. Such forms as **māgnōrum, omnium**; **māgnis, omnibus**, would ordinarily lead to ambiguity; yet where there is no ambiguity, they sometimes occur; as, —

**parva compōnere māgnis**, *to compare small things with great.*

Otherwise the Latin says: **māgnārum rērum, māgnis rēbus**, *etc.*

**237. SINGULAR ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY.** Adjectives are less freely used as Substantives in the Singular than in the Plural.

1. Masculine Adjectives occur only occasionally in this use; as, —  
**probus invidet nēmīni**, *the honest man envies nobody.*

a. Usually **vir, homō**, or some similar word is employed; as, —  
**homō doctus**, *a scholar*;  
**vir Rōmānus**, *a Roman.*

b. But when limited by a pronoun any adjective may be so used; as, —  
**hic doctus**, *this scholar*;  
**doctus quīdam**, *a certain scholar.*

2. Neuters are likewise infrequent; as, —

**vērū**, *truth*;  
**iūstū**, *justice*;  
**honestū**, *virtue.*

a. This substantive use of Neuter Singulars is commonest in the construction of the Genitive of the Whole, and after Prepositions; as, —  
**aliquid vērī**, *something true*;  
**nihil novī**, *nothing new*;  
**in mediō**, *in the midst.*

**238.** From Adjectives which, like the above, occasionally admit the substantive use, must be carefully distinguished certain others which have become nouns; as, —

<b>adversārius</b> , <i>opponent</i> ;	<b>hiberna</b> , <i>winter quarters</i> ;
<b>aequālis</b> , <i>contemporary</i> ;	<b>propinquus</b> , <i>relative</i> ;
<b>amīcus</b> , <i>friend</i> ;	<b>socius</b> , <i>partner</i> ;
<b>cognātus</b> , <i>kinsman</i> ;	<b>sodālis</b> , <i>comrade</i> ;
<b>vicīnus</b> , <i>neighbor</i> ; <i>etc.</i>	

## ADJECTIVES WITH THE FORCE OF ADVERBS.

239. The Latin often uses an Adjective where the English idiom employs an Adverb or an adverbial phrase; as,—

**senātus frequēns convēnit**, *the senate assembled in great numbers*;  
**fuit assiduus mēcum**, *he was constantly with me*.

## COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

240. 1. The Comparative often corresponds to the English Positive with 'rather,' 'somewhat,' 'too'; as,—

**senectūs est loquācior**, *old age is rather talkative*.

2. So the Superlative often corresponds to the Positive with 'very'; as,—

**vir fortissimus**, *a very brave man*.

3. **Strengthening Words.** **Vel** and **quam** are often used with the Superlative as strengthening particles, **vel** with the force of 'very,' and **quam** with the force of 'as possible'; as,—

**vel māximus**, *the very greatest*;

**quam māximae cōpiae**, *as great forces as possible*.

4. Phrases of the type 'more rich than brave' regularly take the Comparative in both members; as,—

**exercitus erat dītilior quam fortior**, *the army was more rich than brave*.

## OTHER PECULIARITIES.

241. 1. Certain Adjectives may be used to denote *a part of an object*, chiefly **prīmus**, **extrēmus**, **summus**, **medius**, **infīmus**, **īmus**; as,—

**summus mōns**, *the top of the mountain*;

**extrēmā hieme**, *in the last part of the winter*.

2. **Prior**, **prīmus**, **ultimus**, and **postrēmus** are frequently equivalent to a relative clause; as,—

**prīmus eam vīdī**, *I was the first who saw her*;

**ultimus dēcessit**, *he was the last who withdrew*.

3. When **multus** and another adjective both limit the same noun, **et** is generally used; as,—

**multae et māgnae cōgitātiōnēs**, *many (and) great thoughts*.

## CHAPTER IV. — Syntax of Pronouns.

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

**242.** 1. The Personal Pronouns as subjects of verbs are, as a rule, not expressed except for the purpose of *emphasis, contrast, or clearness*. Thus ordinarily :—

**videō, I see; amat, he loves.**

But **ego tē videō, et tū mē vidēs, I see you, and you see me.**

2. The Genitives **meī, tuī, nostrī, vestrī** are used only as Objective Genitives; **nostrum** and **vestrum** as Genitives of the Whole. Thus :—

**memor tuī, mindful of you;**

**dēsiderium vestrī, longing for you;**

**nēmō vestrum, no one of you.**

a. But **nostrum** and **vestrum** are regularly used in place of the Possessive in the phrases **omnium nostrum, omnium vestrum**.

3. The First Plural is often used for the First Singular of Pronouns and Verbs. Compare the Eng. editorial 'we.'

4. When two Verbs govern the same object, the Latin does not use a pronoun with the second, as is the rule in English. Thus :—

**virtūs amicitias conciliat et cōservat, virtue establishes friendships and maintains them** (not **eās cōservat**).

### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

**243.** 1. The Possessive Pronouns, as a rule, are not employed except for the purpose of *clearness*. Thus :—

**patrem amō, I love my father;**

**dē filiī morte flēbās, you wept for the death of your son.**

But—

**dē morte filiī meī flēbās, you wept for the death of my son.**

a. When expressed merely for the sake of clearness, the possessive usually stands after its noun; but in order to indicate emphasis or contrast, it precedes; as,—

**suā manū liberōs occīdit, with his own hand he slew his children;**

**meā quidem sententiā, in my opinion at least.**



2. Sometimes the Possessive Pronouns are used with the force of an Objective Genitive; as, —

**metus vester**, *fear of you*;  
**dēsiderium tuum**, *longing for you*.

3. For special emphasis, the Latin employs **ipsius** or **ipsōrum**, in apposition with the Genitive idea implied in the Possessive; as, —

**meā ipsius operā**, *by my own help*;  
**nostrā ipsōrum operā**, *by our own help*;

a. So sometimes other Genitives; as, —

**meā ūnius operā**, *by the assistance of me alone*.

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

244. I. The Reflexive Pronoun **sē** and the Possessive Reflexive **suus** have a double use: —

I. They may refer to the subject of the clause (either principal or subordinate) in which they stand, — ‘Direct Reflexives’; as, —

**sē amant**, *they love themselves*;  
**suos amicos adjuvat**, *he helps his own friends*;  
**eum orāvi, ut sē servāret**, *I besought him to save himself*.

II. They may stand in a subordinate clause and refer to the subject of the principal clause, — ‘Indirect Reflexives’; as, —

**mē orāvit ut sē dēfenderem**, *he besought me to defend him* (lit. *that I defend himself*);  
**mē orāvērunt, ut fortunārum suārum dēfēnsiōnem susciperem**,  
*they besought me to undertake the defense of their fortunes*.

a. The Indirect Reflexive is mainly restricted to those clauses which express the thought, not of the author, but of the subject of the principal clause.

2. The Genitive **sui** is regularly employed, like **mei** and **tui**, as an Objective Genitive, e.g. **oblītus sui**, *forgetful of himself*; but it occasionally occurs — particularly in post-Augustan writers — in place of the Possessive **suus**; as, **fruitur fāmā sui**, *he enjoys his own fame*.

3. **Sē** and **suus** are sometimes used in the sense, *one’s self*, *one’s own*, where the reference is not to any particular person; as, —

**sē amāre**, *to love one’s self*;  
**suum genium propitiāre**, *to propitiate one’s own genius*.

4. **Suus** sometimes occurs in the meaning *his own, their own, etc.* referring not to the subject but to an oblique case; as,—

**Hannibalem sui civēs ē civitāte ejēcērunt**, *his own fellow-citizens drove out Hannibal.*

a. This usage is particularly frequent in combination with **quisque**; as,—

**suus quemque error vexat**, *his own error troubles each.*

5. The Reflexives for the first and second persons are supplied by the oblique cases of **ego** and **tū** (§ 85); as,—

**vōs dēfenditis**, *you defend yourselves.*

## RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS.

245. 1. The Latin has no special reciprocal pronoun ('each other'), but expresses the reciprocal notion by the phrases: **inter nōs**, **inter vōs**, **inter sē**; as,—

**Belgae obsidēs inter sē dedērunt**, *the Belgae gave each other hostages* (lit. *among themselves*);

**amāmus inter nōs**, *we love each other*;

**Gallī inter sē cohortātī sunt**, *the Gauls exhorted each other.*

a. Note that the Object is not expressed in sentences of this type.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

**Hic**, **Ille**, **Iste**.

246. 1. Where **hic** and **ille** are used in contrast, **hic** usually refers to the latter of two objects, and **ille** to the former.

2. **Hic** and **ille** are often used in the sense of 'the following'; as,—

**Themistoclēs hīs verbīs epistulam mīsit**, *Themistocles sent a letter (couched) in the following words*;

**illud intellegō, omnium ōra in mē conversa esse**, *I understand this, that the faces of all are turned toward me.*

3. **Ille** often means *the famous*; as, **Solōn ille**, *the famous Solon.*

4. **Iste** frequently involves contempt; as, **iste homō**, *that fellow!*

5. The above pronouns, along with **is**, are usually attracted to the gender of a predicate noun; as, **hic est honor, meminisse officium suum**, *this is an honor, to be mindful of one's duty.*

## Is.

**247.** 1. **Is** often serves as the antecedent of the relative **qui**.  
Thus:—

**Māximum, eum qui Tarentum recēpit, dilēxī, I loved Maximus, the man who retook Tarentum.**

- a. Closely akin to this usage is **is** in the sense of *such* (= *tālis*); as, —

**nōn sum is qui terrear, I am not such a person as to be frightened.**

- b. Note the phrase **id quod**, where **id** stands in apposition with an entire clause; as, —

**nōn suspicābātur (id quod nunc sentiet) satis multōs testēs nobīs reliquōs esse, he did not suspect (a thing which he will now perceive) that we had witnesses enough left.**

Yet **quod** alone, without preceding **id**, sometimes occurs in this use.

2. **Is** also in all cases serves as the personal pronoun of the third person, 'he,' 'she,' 'it,' 'they,' 'them.'

3. When the English uses 'that of,' 'those of' to avoid repetition of the noun, the Latin omits the pronoun; as, —

**in exercitū Sullae et postea in Crassī fuerat, he had been in the army of Sulla and afterward in that of Crassus;**  
**nūllae mē fābulae dēlectant nisi Plautī, no plays delight me except those of Plautus.**

4. Note the phrases **et is, et ea, etc.**, in the sense: *and that too*; as, —  
**vincula, et ea aēmpiterna, imprisonment, and that too permanently.**

## Idem.

**248.** 1. **Idem** in apposition with the subject or object often has the force of *also, likewise*; as, —

**quod idem mihi contigit, which likewise happened to me (lit. which, the same thing);**

**bonus vir, quem eundem sapientem appellāmus, a good man, whom we call also wise.**

2. For **idem atque (ac)**, *the same as*, see § 341, I, c.

**Ipse.**

**249.** 1. **Ipse**, literally *self*, acquires its special force from the context; as, —

**eō ipsō diē**, *on that very day* ;  
**ad ipsam rīpam**, *close to the bank* ;  
**ipsō terrōre**, *by mere fright* ;  
**valvae sē ipsae aperuērunt**, *the doors opened of their own accord* ;  
**ipse aderat**, *he was present in person*.

2. The reflexive pronouns are often emphasized by the addition of **ipse**, but **ipse** in such cases, instead of standing in apposition with the reflexive, more commonly agrees with the subject; as, —

**sēcum ipsī loquuntur**, *they talk with themselves* ;  
**sē ipse continēre nōn potest**, *he cannot contain himself*.

3. **Ipse** is also used as an Indirect Reflexive for the purpose of marking a contrast or avoiding an ambiguity; as, —

**Persae pertimuērunt nē Alcibiadēs ab ipsīs dēscisceret et cum suis in grātiā redīret**, *the Persians feared that Alcibiades would break with them and become reconciled with his countrymen*.  
**ea molestissimē ferre dēbent hominēs quae ipsōrum culpā contrācta sunt**, *men ought to chafe most over those things which have been brought about by their own fault* (as opposed to the fault of others).

**RELATIVE PRONOUNS.**

**250. Agreement.** 1. The Relative Pronoun agrees with its antecedent in Gender and Number, but its case is determined by its construction in the clause in which it stands; as, —

**mulier quam vidēbāmus**, *the woman whom we saw* ;  
**bona quibus fruimur**, *the blessings which we enjoy*.

2. Where the antecedent is compound, the same principles for number and gender prevail as in case of predicate adjectives under similar conditions (see § 235, B, 2). Thus: —

**pater et filius, quī captī sunt**, *the father and son who were captured* ;  
**stultitia et timiditās quae fugienda sunt**, *folly and cowardice which must be shunned* ;  
**honōrēs et victōriae quae sunt fortuita**, *honors and victories which are accidental*.

3. The Relative regularly agrees with a predicate noun (either Nominative or Accusative) instead of its antecedent; as, —

**carcer, quae lautumiae vocantur, the prison, which is called Lautumiae;**

**Celtae, quae est tertia pars, the Celts, who are the third part.**

4. Sometimes the Relative takes its gender and number from the meaning of its antecedent; as, —

**pars quī bēstīis objecti sunt, a part (of the men) who were thrown to beasts.**

5. Occasionally the Relative is attracted into the case of its antecedent; as, —

**nātus eō patre quō dixi, born of the father that I said.**

**251. Antecedent.** 1. The antecedent of the Relative is sometimes omitted; as, —

**quī nātūram sequitur sapiēns est, he who follows Nature is wise.**

2. The antecedent may be implied in a possessive pronoun (or rarely an adjective); as, —

**nostra quī remānsimus caedēs, the slaughter of us who remained; servīlī tumultū, quōs usus ac disciplīna sublevāvunt, at the uprising of the slaves, whom experience and discipline assisted (servīlī = servōrum).**

3. Sometimes the antecedent is repeated with the Relative; as, —  
**erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus, there were two routes, by which (routes).**

4. **Incorporation of Antecedent in Relative Clause.** The antecedent is often incorporated in the relative clause. Thus: —

a) When the relative clause stands first; as, —

**quam quisque nōvīt artem in hāc sē exerceat, let each one practice the branch which he knows.**

b) When the antecedent is an appositive; as, —

**nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā, they are not far from the borders of the Tolosates, a state which is in our province.**

c) When the logical antecedent is a superlative; as, —

**Themistoclēs dē servīs suis, quem habuit fidēlissimum misit, Themistocles sent the most trusty slave he had.**

d) In expressions of the type —

**quā es prūdentiā ; quae tua est prūdentiā**, *such is your prudence* (lit. *of which prudence you are ; which is your prudence*).

5. The Relative is never omitted in Latin as it is in English. Thus *the boy I saw* must be **puer quem vīdī**.

6. The Relative is used freely in Latin, particularly at the beginning of a sentence, where in English we employ a demonstrative ; as, —

**quō factum est**, *by this it happened ;*  
**quae cum ita sint**, *since this is so ;*  
**quibus rēbus cognitis**, *when these things became known.*

7. The Relative introducing a subordinate clause may belong grammatically to a clause which is subordinate to the one it introduces ; as, —

**numquam dīgnē satis laudārī philosophia poterit, cui qui pāreat, omne tempus aetātis sine molestiā possit dēgere**, *philosophy can never be praised enough, since he who obeys her can pass all his life without annoyance* (lit. *he who obeys which, etc.*).

Here **cui** introduces the subordinate clause **possit** and connects it with **philosophia** ; but **cui** is governed by **pāreat**, which is subordinate to **possit**.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

252. 1. **Quis**, *any one*, is the weakest of the Indefinites, and stands usually in combination with **sī, nisi, nē, num** ; as, —

**sī quis putat**, *if any one thinks.*

2. **Aliquis** (adj. **aliquī**) is more definite than **quis**, and corresponds usually to the English *some one, somebody, some* ; as, —

**nunc aliquis dīcat mihi**, *now let somebody tell me ;*  
**utinam modo agātur aliquid**, *oh that something may be done.*

3. **Quīdam**, *a certain one*, is still more definite than **aliquis** ; as, —  
**homō quīdam**, *a certain man* (i.e. *one whom I have in mind*).

a. **Quīdam** (with or without **quasi**, *as if*) is sometimes used in the sense : *a sort of, kind of* ; as, —

**quaedam cognātiō**, *a sort of relationship ;*  
**mors est quasi quaedam migrātiō**, *death is a kind of transfer, as it were.*

4. **Quisquam**, *any one, any one whoever* (more general than **quis**), and its corresponding adjective **ullus**, *any*, occur mostly in negative and conditional sentences, in interrogative sentences implying a negative, and in clauses of comparison; as, —

**jūstitia numquam nocet cuiquam**, *justice never harms anybody*;

**sī quisquam**, **Catō sapiēns fuit**, *if anybody was ever wise, Cato was*;

**potestne quisquam sine perturbātiōne animī irāscī**, *can anybody be angry without excitement?*

**sī ullō modō fierī potest**, *if it can be done in any way*;

**taetrior hīc tyrannus fuit quam quisquam superiōrum**, *he was a viler tyrant than any of his predecessors.*

5. **Quisque**, *each one*, is used especially under the following circumstances: —

a) In connection with **suus**. See § 244, 4, a.

b) In connection with a Relative or Interrogative Pronoun; as, —

**quod cuique obigit, id teneat**, *what falls to each, that let him hold.*

c) In connection with superlatives; as, —

**optimus quisque**, *all the best* (lit. *each best one*).

d) With ordinal numerals; as, —

**quintō quōque annō**, *every four years* (lit. *each fifth year*).

6. **Nēmō**, *no one*, in addition to its other uses, stands regularly with adjectives used substantively; as, —

**nēmō mortālis**, *no mortal*;

**nēmō Rōmānus**, *no Roman*.

### PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

253. 1. **Alius**, *another*, and **alter**, *the other*, are often used correlatively; as, —

**aliud loquitur, aliud sentit**, *he says one thing, he thinks another*;

**alii resistunt, alii fugiunt**, *some resist, others flee*;

**alter exercitum perdidit, alter vēdidit**, *one ruined the army, the other sold it*;

**alterī sē in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta sē contulērunt**, *the one party retreated to the mountain, the others betook themselves to the baggage.*

2. Where the English says *one does one thing, another another*, the Latin uses a more condensed form of statement; as, —

**alius aliud amat**, *one likes one thing, another another* ;  
**aliud aliis placet**, *one thing pleases some, another others*.

a. So sometimes with adverbs; as, —

**alii aliō fugiunt**, *some flee in one direction, others in another*.

3. The Latin also expresses the notion 'each other' by means of **alius** repeated; as, —

**Galli alius alium cohortātī sunt**, *the Gauls encouraged each other*.

4. **Cēteri** means *the rest, all the others*; as, —

**cēteris praestāre**, *to be superior to all the others*.

5. **Reliqui** means *the others* in the sense of *the rest, those remaining*, — hence is the regular word with numerals; as, —

**reliqui sex**, *the six others*.

6. **Nescio quis** forms a compound indefinite pronoun with the force of *some one or other*; as, —

**causidicus nescio quis**, *some pettifogger or other* ;  
**mīsit nescio quem**, *he sent some one or other* ;  
**nescio quō pacto**, *somehow or other*.



## CHAPTER V. — Syntax of Verbs.

### AGREEMENT.

#### With One Subject.

254. 1. **Agreement in Number and Person.** A Finite Verb agrees with its subject in Number and Person; as, —

**vōs vidētis**, *you see* ;  
**pater filiōs instituit**, *the father trains his sons*.

2. **Agreement in Gender.** In the compound forms of the verb the participle regularly agrees with its subject in gender; as, —

**seditiō repressa est**, *the mutiny was checked*.



3. But when a predicate noun is of different gender or number from its subject, the verb usually agrees with its nearest substantive; as, —

**Tarquinii māterna patria erat,** *Tarquinii was his native country on his mother's side;*

**nōn omnis error stultitia est dīcenda,** *not every error is to be called folly.*

a. Less frequently the verb agrees with an appositive; as, —

**Corioli, oppidum Volscōrum, captum est,** *Corioli, a town of the Volsci, was captured.*

4. **Construction according to Sense.** Sometimes the verb agrees with its subject according to sense instead of strict grammatical form. Thus: —

a) In Number; as, —

**multitūdō hominum convēnerant,** *a crowd of men had gathered.*

b) In Gender; as, —

**duo milia crucibus affixi sunt,** *two thousand (men) were crucified.*

#### With Two or More Subjects.

255. I. **Agreement in Number.** With two or more subjects the verb is regularly plural; as, —

**pater et filius mortui sunt,** *the father and son died.*

2. But sometimes the verb agrees with the nearest subject; *viz.*, —

a) When the verb precedes both subjects or stands between them; as, —

**mortuus est pater et filius;  
pater mortuus est et filius.**

b) When the subjects are connected by *aut*; *aut . . . aut*; *vel . . . vel*; *neque . . . neque*; as, —

**neque pater neque filius mortuus est,** *neither father nor son died.*

3. When the different subjects are felt together as constituting a whole, the singular is used; as, —

**temeritās ignōrātiōque vitiōsa est,** *rashness and ignorance are bad.*

a. This is regularly the case in **senātus populusque Rōmānus.**

4. **Agreement in Person.** With subjects of different persons the verb always takes the *first* person rather than the *second*, and the *second* rather than the *third*; as, —

*sī tū et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicerō valēmus, if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.*

5. **Agreement in Gender.** With subjects of different genders the participle in the compound tenses follows the same principles as laid down for predicate adjectives. See § 235, B, 2.

### VOICES.

256. 1. The Passive Voice sometimes retains traces of its original middle or reflexive meaning; as, —

*ego nōn patiar eum dēfendī, I shall not allow him to defend himself.*

2. In imitation of Greek usage many perfect passive participles are used by the poets as indirect middles, *i.e.* the subject is viewed as acting not upon himself, but as doing something *in his own interest*; as, —

*vēlātus tempora, having veiled his temples.*

a. Occasionally finite forms of the verb are thus used; as, —  
*tunicā inducitur artūs, he covers his limbs with a tunic.*

3. Intransitive Verbs may be used impersonally in the passive; as, —  
*curritur, people run (lit. it is run);*  
*ventum est, he (they, etc.) came (lit. it was come).*

### TENSES.

#### TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

257. 1. The Latin tenses express two distinct notions: —

- a) The *period of time* to which the action belongs: Present, Past, or Future.
- b) The *kind of action*: Undefined, Going on, or Completed.

The Latin with its six tenses is able to express each of the three kinds of action for each of the three periods of time (making practically nine

tenses). It does this by employing certain tenses in more than one way, as may be seen by the following table:—

		PERIOD OF TIME.		
		PRESENT.	PAST.	FUTURE.
KIND OF ACTION.	UNDEFINED.	Present: <b>scribō</b> , <i>I write.</i>	Historical Perfect: <b>scripsi</b> , <i>I wrote.</i>	Future: <b>scribam</b> , <i>I shall write.</i>
	GOING ON.	Present: <b>scribō</b> , <i>I am writing.</i>	Imperfect: <b>scribēbam</b> , <i>I was writing.</i>	Future: <b>scribam</b> , <i>I shall be writing.</i>
	COMPLETED.	Present Perfect: <b>scripsi</b> , <i>I have written.</i>	Pluperfect: <b>scripseram</b> , <i>I had written.</i>	Future Perfect: <b>scripserō</b> , <i>I shall have written.</i>

2. It will be seen that the Present may express Undefined action or action Going on; so also the Future. The Perfect likewise has a double use, according as it denotes action Completed in present time (Present Perfect) or Undefined action belonging to past time (Historical Perfect).

### Principal and Historical Tenses.

258. Tenses which denote Present or Future time are called **Principal** Tenses; those which denote Past time are called **Historical**.

The Principal Tenses of the Indicative are: Present, Future, Present Perfect, Future Perfect.

The Historical Tenses are: Imperfect, Historical Perfect, Pluperfect.

### Present Indicative.

259. Besides the two uses indicated in the table, the Present Indicative presents the following peculiarities:—

1. It is used to denote a *general truth*, i.e. something true not merely in the present but at all times ('Gnomic Present'); as,—

**virtūs conciliat amicitias et cōservat**, *virtue establishes ties of friendship and maintains them* (i.e. always does so).

2. It is used of an attempted action ('Conative Present'); as, —  
**dum vitant vitia, in contraria currunt**, *while they try to avoid (vitant) vices, they rush into opposite ones.*

3. In lively narration the Present is often used of a past action ('Historical Present'); as, —  
**Caesar AeduIs obsidēs imperat**, *Caesar demanded hostages of the Aedui (lit. demands).*

4. In combination with **jam**, **jam diū**, **jam pridem**, and similar words, the Present is frequently used of an action originating in the past and continuing in the present; as, —  
**jam diū cupiō tē vīdere**, *I have long been desiring to visit you (i.e. I desire and have long desired).*

### Imperfect Indicative.

260. 1. The Imperfect primarily denotes action *going on in past time*; as, —

**librum legēbam**, *I was reading a book.*

a. This force makes the Imperfect especially adapted to serve as the tense of *description* (as opposed to mere *narration*).

2. From the notion of action *going on*, there easily develops the notion of *repeated* or *customary* action; as, —

**lēgātōs interrogābat**, *he kept asking the envoys*;

**puer C. Duīlium vidēbam**, *as a boy I often used to see Gaius Duilius.*

3. Like the Present, the Imperfect often denotes an attempted action ('Conative Imperfect'); as, —

**hostēs nostrōs intrā mūnitiōnēs prōgredi prohibēbant**, *the enemy tried to prevent (prohibēbant) our men from advancing within the fortifications.*

4. The Imperfect, with **jam**, **jam diū**, **jam dūdum**, etc., is sometimes used of a past action which had been continuing for some time; as, —

**domicilium Rōmae multōs jam annōs habēbat**, *he had had his residence at Rome for many years (i.e. he had it at this time and had long had it).*

## Future Indicative.

261. 1. The two regular uses of the Future have been given above in the Table (p. 168).

2. The Latin is much more exact in the use of the Future than is the English. We say: '*If he comes, I shall be glad,*' where we really mean: '*If he shall come,*' etc. In such cases the Latin rarely admits the Present, but generally employs the Future.

3. Sometimes the Future has Imperative force; as, **dicēs, say!**

## Perfect Indicative.

262. A. PRESENT PERFECT. Several Present Perfects denote the state resulting from a completed act, and so seem equivalent to the Present; as, —

**nōvī** } *I know* (lit. *I have become acquainted with*);  
**cognōvī** }  
**cōnsuēvī**, *I am wont* (lit. *I have become accustomed*).

B. HISTORICAL PERFECT. The Historical Perfect is primarily the tense of *narration* (as opposed to the Imperfect, the tense of *description*); as, —

**Rēgulus in senātum vēnit, mandāta exposuit, reddī captīvōs negāvit esse ūtile**, *Regulus came into the Senate, set forth his commission, said it was useless for captives to be returned.*

1. Occasionally the Historical Perfect is used of a general truth ('Gnomic Perfect').

## Pluperfect Indicative.

263. The Latin Pluperfect, like the English Past Perfect, denotes an act *completed in the past*; as, —

**Caesar Rhēnum trānsire dēcrēverat, sed nāvēs deerant**, *Caesar had decided to cross the Rhine, but had no boats.*

## Future Perfect Indicative.

264. The Future Perfect denotes an action *completed in future time*. Thus: —

**scribam epistolam, cum redieris**, *I will write the letter when you have returned* (lit. *when you shall have returned*).

a. The Latin is much more exact in the use of the Future Perfect than the English, which commonly employs the Present Perfect instead of the Future Perfect.

## Epistolary Tenses.

**265.** In letters the writer often uses tenses which are not appropriate at the time of writing, but which will be so at the time when his letter is received; he thus employs the Imperfect and the Perfect for the Present, and the Pluperfect for the Present Perfect; as, —

**nihil habēbam quod scriberem, neque enim novī quidquam audieram et ad tuās omnēs epistulās jam rescripseram, I have nothing to write, for I have heard no news and have already answered all your letters.**

## TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**266. A. In Independent Sentences.** See §§ 272-280.

**B. In Dependent Sentences.** In dependent sentences the tenses of the subjunctive usually conform to the so-called

## Sequence of Tenses.

**267. 1.** In the Subjunctive the Present and Perfect are Principal tenses, the Imperfect and Pluperfect, Historical.

**2.** By the Sequence of Tenses Principal tenses are followed by Principal, Historical by Historical. Thus: —

## PRINCIPAL SEQUENCE, —

**videō quid faciās, I see what you are doing.**

**vidēbō quid faciās, I shall see what you are doing.**

**viderō quid faciās, I shall have seen what you are doing.**

**videō quid feceris, I see what you have done.**

**vidēbō quid feceris, I shall see what you have done.**

**viderō quid feceris, I shall have seen what you have done.**

## HISTORICAL SEQUENCE, —

**vidēbam quid facerēs, I saw what you were doing.**

**vidī quid facerēs, I saw what you were doing.**

**videram quid facerēs, I had seen what you were doing.**

**vidēbam quid fecissēs, I saw what you had done.**

**vidī quid fecissēs, I saw what you had done.**

**videram quid fecissēs, I had seen what you had done.**

**3.** The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive denote incomplete action, the Perfect and Pluperfect completed action, exactly as in the Indicative.

## Peculiarities of Sequence.

**268.** 1. The Perfect Indicative is usually an historical tense (even when translated in English as a Present Perfect), and so is followed by the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive; as, —

**dēmōnstrāvī quārē ad causam accōderem**, *I have shown why I took the case* (lit. *I showed why, etc.*).

2. A dependent Perfect Infinitive is treated as an historical tense wherever, if resolved into an equivalent Indicative, it would be historical; as, —

**videor ostendisse quālēs deī essent**, *I seem to have shown of what nature the gods are* (**ostendisse** here corresponds to an Indicative, **ostendī**, *I showed*).

3. The Historical Present is sometimes regarded as a principal tense, sometimes as historical. Thus: —

**Sulla suōs hortātur ut fortī animō sint**, *Sulla exhorts his soldiers to be stout-hearted*;

**Gallōs hortātur ut arma caperent**, *he exhorted the Gauls to take arms*.

4. Conditional sentences of the 'contrary-to-fact' type are not affected by the principles for the Sequence of Tenses; as, —

**honestum tāle est ut vel sī ignōrārent id hominēs suā tamen pulchritūdine laudābile esset**, *virtue is such a thing that even if men were ignorant of it, it would still be worthy of praise for its own loveliness*.

5. In conditional sentences of the 'contrary-to-fact' type the Imperfect Subjunctive is usually treated as an Historical tense; as, —

**sī solōs eōs dīcerēs miserōs, quibus moriendum esset, nēminem tū quidem eōrum quī vīverēt exciperēs**, *if you called only those wretched who must die, you would except no one of those who live*.

6. In clauses of Result and some others, the Perfect Subjunctive is sometimes used as an historical tense. Thus: —

**rēx tantum mōtus est, ut Tissaphernem hostem iūdicārit**, *the king was so much moved that he adjudged Tissaphernes an enemy*.

This construction is rare in Cicero, but frequent in Nepos and subsequent historians. The Perfect Subjunctive in this use represents a

result simply as a fact without reference to the continuance of the act, and therefore corresponds to an Historical Perfect Indicative of direct statement. Thus, *jūdicārit* in the above example corresponds to a *jūdicāvit*, *he adjudged*. To denote a result as *something continuous*, all writers use the Imperfect Subjunctive after historical tenses.

7. Sometimes perspicuity demands that the ordinary principles of Sequence be abandoned altogether. Thus:—

- a) We may have the Present or Perfect Subjunctive after an historical tense; as,—

**Verrēs Siciliam ita perdidit ut ea restitui nōn possit,**  
*Verrēs so ruined Sicily that it cannot be restored*  
 (Direct statement; *nōn potest restitui*);

**ardēbat Hortēnsius dicendi cupiditāte sic, ut in**  
**nūllō flāgrantius studium viderim,** *Hortensius*  
*burned so with eagerness to speak that I have seen in no*  
*one a greater desire* (Direct statement: *in nūllō vidi*,  
*I have seen in no one*).

NOTE.—This usage is different from that cited under 6. Here, by neglect of Sequence, the Perfect is used as a principal tense; there the Perfect was used as an historical tense.

- b) We may have a principal tense followed by the Perfect Subjunctive used historically; as,—

**nesciō quid causae fuerit cūr nūllās ad mē litterās**  
**darēs,** *I do not know what reason there was why you*  
*did not send me a letter.*

Here *fuerit* is historical, as is shown by the following Imperfect Subjunctive.

#### Method of expressing Future Time in the Subjunctive.

269. The Future and Future Perfect which are lacking to the Latin Subjunctive are supplied in subordinate clauses as follows:—

1. a) The Future is supplied by the Present after principal tenses, by the Imperfect after historical tenses.
- b) The Future Perfect is supplied by the Perfect after principal tenses, by the Pluperfect after historical tenses.

This is especially frequent when the context clearly shows, by the presence of a future tense in the main clause, that the reference is to future time. Thus:—



**Galli pollicentur sē factūrōs, quae Caesar imperet, the Gauls promise they will do what Caesar shall order ;**

**Galli pollicēbantur sē factūrōs, quae Caesar imperāret, the Gauls promised they would do what Caesar should order ;**

**Galli pollicentur sē factūrōs quae Caesar imperāverit, the Gauls promise they will do what Caesar shall have ordered ;**

**Galli pollicēbantur sē factūrōs quae Caesar imperāvisset, the Gauls promised they would do what Caesar should have ordered.**

2. Even where the context does not contain a Future tense in the main clause, Future time is often expressed in the subordinate clauses by the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. Thus : —

**timeō nē veniat, I am afraid he will come ;**

**Caesar exspectābat quid cōsiliī hostēs caperent, Caesar was waiting to see what plan the enemy would adopt.**

3. Where greater definiteness is necessary the periphrastic forms in -ūrus *sim* and -ūrus *essem* are employed, especially in clauses of Result, Indirect Questions, and after *nōn dubitō quīn* ; as, —

**nōn dubitō quīn pater ventūrus sit, I do not doubt that my father will come ;**

**nōn dubitābam quīn pater ventūrus esset, I did not doubt that my father would come.**

4. Where the verb has no Future Active Participle or where it stands in the passive voice, its Future character may be indicated by the use of the particles *mox*, *brevi*, *statim*, etc., in connection with the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive ; as, —

**nōn dubitō quīn tē mox hūjus rei paeniteat, I do not doubt that you will soon repent of this thing ;**

**nōn dubitābam quīn haec res brevī cōnficeretur, I did not doubt that this thing would soon be finished.**

#### TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

**270.** 1. The tenses of the Infinitive denote time not absolutely, but *with reference to the verb on which they depend*. Thus : —

a) The Present Infinitive represents an act as *contemporaneous* with the time of the verb on which it depends ; as, —

**videtur honorēs adsequī, he seems to be gaining honors ;**

**vidēbatur honorēs adsequī, he seemed to be gaining honors.**

- b) The Perfect Infinitive represents an act as *prior* to the time of the verb on which it depends ; as, —

**vidētur honorēs adsecūtus esse**, he seems to have gained honors ;

**visus est honorēs adsecūtus esse**, he seemed to have gained honors.

- c) The Future Infinitive represents an act as *subsequent* to that of the verb on which it depends ; as, —

**vidētur honorēs adsecūtūrus esse**, he seems about to gain honors ;

**visus est honorēs adsecūtūrus esse**, he seemed about to gain honors.

2. Where the English says '*ought to have done*,' '*might have done*,' etc., the Latin uses **dēbui**, **oportuit**, **potui**, with the Present Infinitive ; as, —

**dēbuit dicere**, he ought to have said (lit. owed it to say) ;

**oportuit venire**, he ought to have come ;

**potuit vidēre**, he might have seen.

- a. **Oportuit**, **volō**, **nōlō** (and in poetry some other verbs), may take a Perfect Infinitive instead of the Present ; as, —

**hōc jam pridem factum esse oportuit**, this ought long ago to have been done.

3. PERIPHRASTIC FUTURE INFINITIVE. Verbs that have no Participial Stem express the Future Infinitive Active and Passive by **fore** ut or **futūrum esse** ut, with the Subjunctive ; as, —

**spērō fore ut tē paeniteat levitātis**, I hope you will repent of your fickleness (lit. hope it will happen that you repent) ;

**spērō futūrum esse ut hostēs arceantur**, I hope that the enemy will be kept off.

- a. The Periphrastic Future Infinitive is often used, especially in the Passive, even in case of verbs which have the Participial Stem ; as, —

**spērō fore ut hostēs vincantur**, I hope the enemy will be conquered.

4. Passives and Deponents sometimes form a Future Perfect Infinitive with **fore** ; as, —

**spērō epistolam scriptam fore**, I hope the letter will have been written ;

**putō mē omnia adeptum fore**, I think that I shall have gained everything.

## THE MOODS.

## MOODS IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.

## The Indicative in Independent Sentences.

**271.** The Indicative is used for the *statement of facts, the supposition of facts, or inquiry after facts.*

1. Note the following idiomatic uses :—

a) With **possum** ; as, —

**possum multa dicere**, *I might say much* ;

**poteram multa dicere**, *I might have said much* (§ 270, 2).

b) In such expressions as **longum est**, **aequum est**, **melius est**, **difficile est**, **utilius est**, and some others ; as, —

**longum est ea dicere**, *it would be tedious to tell that* ;

**difficile est omnia persequi**, *it would be difficult to enumerate everything.*

## The Subjunctive in Independent Sentences.

**272.** The Subjunctive is used in Independent Sentences to express something —

1. **As willed** — **Volitive Subjunctive** ;

2. **As desired** — **Optative Subjunctive** ;

3. **Conceived of as possible** — **Potential Subjunctive.**

## VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**273.** The Volitive Subjunctive represents the action *as willed*. It always implies authority on the part of the speaker, and has the following varieties :—

## A. HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

**274.** The Hortatory Subjunctive expresses *an exhortation*. This use is confined to the first person plural, of the Present. The negative is **nē**. Thus :—

**eāmus**, *let us go* ;

**amēmus patriam**, *let us love our country* ;

**nē dēspērēmus**, *let us not despair.*

B. JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**275.** The Jussive Subjunctive expresses a *command*. The Jussive stands regularly in the Present Tense, and is used —

1. Most frequently in the third singular and third plural ; as, —  
**dīcat**, *let him tell* ;  
**dīcant**, *let them tell* ;  
**impiī nē plācāre audeant deōs**, *let not the wicked dare to appease the gods*.
2. Less frequently in the second person ; as, —  
**istō bonō ūtāre**, *use that advantage* ;  
**modestē vivās**, *live temperately*.

C. PROHIBITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**276.** The Subjunctive is used in the second person singular and plural, with **nē**, to express a *prohibition*. As regards the use of tenses, the Perfect seems to be used where there is *special excitement or emotion*, otherwise the Present ; as, —

**nē repūgnētis**, *do not resist* !

**tū vērō istam nē reliqueris**, *DON'T YOU LEAVE HER* !

- a. Neither of these constructions is frequent in classical prose.
- b. The distinction sometimes drawn between the Present and the Perfect in this construction, restricting the former to general prohibitions, and the latter to those addressed to a definite second person, will not hold.
- c. A commoner method of expressing a prohibition is by the use of **nōlī** (**nōlīte**) with a following infinitive, or by **cavē nē** with the Subjunctive ; as, —  
**nōlī hōc facere**, *don't do this* (lit. *be unwilling to do*) !  
**nōlīte mentīrī**, *do not lie* !  
**cavē nē haec faciās**, *do not do this* (lit. *take care lest you do*) .

D. DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**277.** The Deliberative Subjunctive is used *in questions and exclamations implying doubt or indignation*. The

Present is used referring to present time, the Imperfect referring to past. The negative is **nōn**. Thus:—

**quid faciam**, *what shall I do?*

**ego redeam**, *shall I go back?*

**quid facerem**, *what was I to do?*

**hunc ego nōn dīligam**, *shall I not cherish this man?*

- a. These Deliberative Questions are usually purely Rhetorical in character, and do not expect an answer.

#### E. CONCESSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**278.** The Subjunctive is used to indicate something *as granted or conceded for the sake of argument*. The Present is used for present time, the Perfect regularly for past. The negative is **nē**. Thus:—

**sit hōc vērūm**, *granting that this is true* (lit. *let this be true*);

**nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certō est**, *granting that pain is not the greatest evil, yet it is certainly an evil*;

**fuerit malus cīvis aliīs, tibi quandō esse coepit**, *granting that he was a bad citizen to others, when did he begin to be so toward you?*

#### OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**279.** The Optative Subjunctive occurs in expressions of *wishing*. The negative is regularly **nē**. The use of tenses is as follows:—

1. The Present Tense, often accompanied by **utinam**, is used where the wish is conceived of as *possible*.

**dī istaec prohibeant**, *may the gods prevent that!*

**falsus utinam vātēs sim**, *oh that I may be a false prophet!*

**nē veniant**, *may they not come!*

2. The Imperfect expresses, in the form of a wish, the *regret that something is not so now*; the Pluperfect that *something was not so in the past*. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are regularly accompanied by **utinam**; as,—

**utinam istud ex animō dīcerēs**, *would that you were saying that in earnest, (i.e. I regret that you are not saying it in earnest)*;

**Pēlīdēs utinam vītāssset Apollinis arcūs**, *would that Achilles had escaped the bow of Apollo*;

**utinam nē nātus essem**, *would that I had not been born*.

POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

**280.** The Potential Subjunctive expresses *a possibility*. The negative is *nōn*. The following uses are to be noted:—

1. The Potential Subjunctive may designate *a mere objective possibility* (English auxiliary *may*). Both Present and Perfect occur, and without appreciable difference of meaning. The subject is generally an indefinite pronoun. Thus:—

*dīcat aliquis, some one may say;*

*dīxerit aliquis, some one may say.*

a. This construction is by no means frequent, and is confined mainly to a few phrases like those given as examples.

2. The Potential Subjunctive may represent something as *contingent upon a condition expressed or understood* (English auxiliary *should, would*). Both Present and Perfect occur, and without appreciable difference of meaning. Thus:—

*fortūnam citius reperiās quam retineās, one would more quickly find Fortune than keep it (i.e. if one should make the trial);*

*paene dīcam, I should almost say (i.e. if I were to express an opinion);*  
*crēdidērim, I should believe.*

a. Here belongs the use of *velim, mālim, nōlim*, as softened forms of statement for *volō, mālō, nōlō*. Thus:—

*velim mihi ignōscās, I wish you would forgive me;*

*nōlim putēs mē jocārī, I don't want you to think I'm joking.*

b. When the condition is expressed, we get one of the regular types of Conditional Sentences (see § 303); as,—

*dīēs dēficiat, si cōner ēnumerāre causās, time would fail if I should attempt to enumerate the reasons.*

3. In the Imperfect the Potential occurs in the second person singular (with *indefinite force*; § 356, 3) of a few verbs, chiefly the following:—

*crēderēs, one might have believed;*

*vidērēs, cernerēs, one might have seen, perceived;*

*putārēs, one might have thought.*

4. The Imperfect and Pluperfect in the Apodosis of conditional sentences of the contrary-to-fact type (see § 304) are also Potential in character. By omission of the Protasis such an Apodosis sometimes stands alone, particularly *vellem, nōllem, māllem*; as,—

*vellem id quidem, I would wish that (i.e. were I bold enough).*

## The Imperative.

281. The Imperative is used in *commands, admonitions, and entreaties* (negative *nē*); as, —

**ēgrederere ex urbe**, *depart from the city* ;  
**mihi ignōsce**, *pardon me* ;  
**valē**, *farewell*.

1. The Present is the tense of the *Imperative* most commonly used, but the Future is employed —

- a) Where there is a distinct reference to future time, especially in the apodosis of conditional sentences ; as, —

**rem vōbīs prōpōnam** ; **vōs eam penditōte**, *I will lay the matter before you ; do you (then) consider it* ;  
**sī bene disputābit**, **tribuitō litterīs Graecīs**, *if he shall speak well, attribute it to Greek literature*.

- b) In laws, treaties, wills, maxims, etc. ; as, —

**cōnsulēs summum jūs habentō**, *the consuls shall have supreme power* ;  
**hominem mortuom in urbe nē sepelitō**, *no one shall bury a dead body in the city* ;  
**amīcitiā rēgī Antiochō cum populō Rōmānō hīs lēgibus et condiciōnibus estō**, *let there be peace between Antiochus and the Roman people on the following terms and conditions*.  
**quārtae estō partis Mārouis hērēs**, *let Marcus be heir to a fourth (of the property)* ;  
**ignōscitō saepe alterī, numquam tibi**, *forgive your neighbor often, yourself never*.

2. Except with the Future Imperative the negative is not used in classical prose. Prohibitions are regularly expressed in other ways. See § 276, c.

3. Questions in the Indicative introduced by **quīn** (*why not?*) are often equivalent to an Imperative or to the Hortatory Subjunctive ; as, —

**quīn abīs**, *go away!* (lit. *why don't you go away?*)  
**quīn vōcem continētis**, *keep still!* (lit. *why don't you stop your voices?*)  
**quīn equōs cōnscendimus**, *let us mount our horses* (lit. *why do we not mount our horses?*)

MOODS IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

**Clauses of Purpose.**

**282.** I. Clauses of Purpose are introduced most commonly by *ut* (*utī*), *quō* (*that, in order that*), *nē* (*in order that not, lest*), and stand in the Subjunctive; as, —

*edimus, ut vivāmus, we eat that we may live.*

*adjūtā mē quō hōc fiat facilius, help me, in order that this may be done more easily.*

*portās clausit, nē quam oppidānī injūriam acciperent, he closed the gates, lest the townspeople should receive any injury.*

- a. *Quō*, as a rule, is employed only when the purpose clause contains a comparative or a comparative idea. Occasional exceptions occur; as, —

*haec faciunt quō Chremētem absterreant, they are doing this in order to frighten Chremes.*

- b. *Ut nē* is sometimes found, as more emphatic than *nē*. Thus: —

*ut nē quid neglegenter agāmus, in order that we may not do anything carelessly.*

- c. *Ut nōn* (for *nē*) is used where the negation belongs to some single word, instead of to the purpose clause as a whole. Thus: —

*ut nōn ējectus ad aliēnōs, sed invitātus ad tuōs vidēre, that you may seem not driven out among strangers, but invited to your own friends.*

- d. To say ‘*and that not*’ or ‘*or that not*,’ the Latin regularly uses *nēve* (*neu*); as, —

*ut eārum rerum vis minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent, that the violence of these things might be lessened, and that they might not harm the bridge;*

*profūgit, nē caperētur nēve interficerētur, he fled, that he might not be captured or killed.*

- e. But *neque* (for *nēve*) is sometimes used in the second clause when *ut* stands in the first, and, after the Augustan era, even when the first clause is introduced by *nē*.



2. A Relative Pronoun (**qui**) or Adverb (**ubi**, **unde**, **quō**) is frequently used to introduce a Purpose Clause; as, —

**Helvētīī lēgātōs mittunt, qui dīcerent**, *the Helvetii sent envoys to say* (lit. *who should say*);

**haec habuī, dē sēnecūtē quae dīcerem**, *I had these things to say about old age*;

**nōn habēbat quō fugeret**, *he had no place to which to flee* (lit. *whither he might flee*).

a. **Qui** in such clauses is equivalent to **ut is**, **ut ego**, etc.; **ubi** to **ut ibi**; **unde** to **ut inde**; **quō** to **ut eō**.

3. Relative clauses of purpose follow **dignus**, **indignus**, and **idōneus**; as, —

**idōneus fuit nēmō quem imitārēre**, *there was no one suitable for you to imitate* (cf. **nēmō fuit quem imitārēre**, *there was no one to imitate*);

**dignus est qui aliquandō imperet**, *he is worthy to rule sometime*.

4. Purpose clauses often depend upon something to be supplied from the context instead of upon the principal verb of their own sentences; as, —

**ut haec omnia omittam, abimus**, *to pass over all this (I will say that) we departed*.

#### Clauses of Characteristic.

283. I. A relative clause used *to express an essential quality or characteristic of an antecedent not otherwise defined* is called a Clause of Characteristic, and stands in the Subjunctive; as, —

**multa sunt, quae mentem acuant**, *there are many things which sharpen the wits*.

Clauses of Characteristic are opposed to those relative clauses which are used merely to state or assume some fact about an antecedent already defined, and which therefore take the Indicative; as, —

**Catō, senex iucundus, qui sapiēns appellātus est**, *Cato, a delightful old man, who was called 'The Wise.'*

The Clause of Characteristic implies '*a man of the sort that does something*'; the Indicative relative clause implies '*a man who actually does something*.'

2. Clauses of Characteristic are used especially after such expressions as, *est quī; sunt quī; nēmō est quī; nūllus est quī; ūnus est quī; sōlus est quī; quis est quī; is quī; etc.* Thus:—

*sunt quī dīcant, there are (some) who say;*

*nēmō est quī putet, there is nobody who thinks;*

*sapientia est ūna quae maestitiam pellat, philosophy is the only thing that drives away sorrow;*

*quae cīvitās est quae nōn ēvertī possit, what state is there that cannot be overthrown?*

*nōn is sum quī improbōs laudem, I am not the sort of man that praises the wicked.*

a. Sometimes (very rarely in Cicero and Caesar) the clause of characteristic is used after comparatives; as,—

*nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quōd tēlum adigī posset, the enemy were not too far off for a dart to reach them (lit. further off than [a point] to which a dart could be cast).*

3. The Clause of Characteristic often conveys an accessory notion of cause (*since*) or opposition (*although*). Thus:—

a) Cause. The relative is then frequently accompanied by *ut, quippe, utpote; as,—*

*ō fortunāte adulēscēns, quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēneris, O fortunate man, since you have found a Homer as the herald of your valor;*

*ut quī optimō jūre eam prōvinciam obtinuerit, since he held that province by excellent right.*

b) Opposition:—

*egomet quī sērō Graecās litterās attigissem, tamen complūrēs diēs Athēnīs commorātus sum, I, although I had taken up Greek literature late in life, nevertheless tarried several days at Athens.*

4. Clauses of Characteristic may also be introduced by *quīn = quī (quae, quod) nōn; as,—*

*nēmō est quīn saepe audierit, there is no one who has not often heard;*

*nēmō fuit mīlitum quīn vulnerārētur, there was no one of the soldiers who was not wounded.*

5. Under Clauses of Characteristic belong also phrases of the type: *quod sciam, so far as I know; quod audierim, so far as I have heard.*

## Clauses of Result.

**284.** 1. Clauses of Result are usually introduced by *ut* *nōn* (*so that not*), and take the Subjunctive. The main clause often contains *tantus*, *tālis*, *tot*, *is* (= *tālis*), *tam*, or some similar word. Thus:—

*quis tam dēmōns est ut suā voluntāte maereat, who is so senseless as to mourn of his own volition?*

*Siciliam ita vāstāvit ut restitui in antiquum statum nōn possit, he has so ravaged Sicily that it cannot be restored to its former condition;*

*mōns altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpauci prohibēre possent, a very high mountain overhung, so that a very few could easily stop them.*

2. A Result Clause is often introduced by a Relative Pronoun or Adverb, *qui* (= *ut is*), *quō* (= *ut eō*), *etc.*; *as*,—

*nēmō est tam senex qui se annum nōn putet posse vivere, nobody is so old as not to think he will live a year;*

*habētis eum cōsulem qui pārere vestris dēcrētis nōn dubitet, you have a consul such as does not hesitate to obey your decrees.*

a. These relative clauses of result are a development of the Clause of Characteristic, and sometimes it is difficult to distinguish the two constructions. It is best to class the relative clause as one of Characteristic, unless the result idea is clear and unmistakable.

3. Result clauses may also be introduced by *quīn* = *ut nōn*; *as*,—  
*nihil tam difficile est quīn quaerendō invēstigārī possit, nothing is so difficult that it cannot be discovered by searching.*  
*nēmō est tam fortis quīn rei novitāte perturbētur, no one is so steadfast as not to be thrown into confusion by a strange occurrence.*

Note phrases of the type:—

*fieri nōn potest quīn scribam, } I cannot avoid writing.*  
*facere nōn possum quīn scribam, }*

4. Note the use of *quam ut* (sometimes *quam* alone) to denote Result after comparatives; *as*,—

*urbs erat mūnitiōr quam ut primō impetū capi posset, the city was too strongly fortified to be taken at the first attack* (lit. *more strongly fortified than [so] that it could be taken, etc.*).

## Causal Clauses.

285. Causal clauses are introduced chiefly by the following particles:—

1. **Quod, quia, quoniam.**
2. **Cum.**
3. **Quandō.**

286. The use of moods is as follows:—

1. **Quod, quia, quoniam** take the Indicative when the reason is *that of the writer or speaker*; they take the Subjunctive when the reason is viewed *as that of another*. Thus:—

**Parthōs timeō quod diffidō cōpiis nostris,** *I fear the Parthians, because I distrust our troops.*

**Themistoclēs, quia nōn tūtus erat, Corcyrā dēmigrāvit,** *Themistocles, since he was not safe, moved to Corcyra.*

**neque mē vixisse paenitet, quoniam bene vixi,** *I do not regret having lived, since I have lived well.*

**Sōcratēs accūsātus est quod corrumperet juventūtem,** *Socrates was arraigned on the ground that he was corrupting the young.*  
(Here the reason is not that of the writer but of the accuser. Hence the Subjunctive.)

**Aedui Caesarī grātiās ēgērunt, quod sē periculō liberāvisset,** *the Aedui thanked Caesar because he had delivered them from danger.* (The reason of the Aedui.)

**quoniam Miltiadēs dīcere nōn posset, verba prō eō fēcit Tisagorās,** *since Miltiades could not speak, Tisagoras spoke for him.* (The reason of Tisagoras.)

**noctū ambulābat Themistoclēs, quod somnum capere nōn posset,** *Themistocles used to walk at night because (as he said) he couldn't sleep.*

a. Verbs of *thinking* and *saying* often stand in the Subjunctive in causal clauses as though the act of thinking or saying, and not the contents of the thought or language, constituted the reason. Thus:—

**Bellovacī suum numerum nōn complēvērunt, quod sē suō nōmine cum Rōmānis bellum gestūrōs dīcerent,** *the Bellovaci did not furnish their complement, be-*

*cause they said they were going to wage war with the Romans on their own account.*

- b. **Nōn quod, nōn quō** (by attraction for **nōn eō quod**), **nōn quia**, *not that, not because*; and **nōn quod nōn, nōn quō nōn, nōn quīn**, *not that . . . not; not because . . . not; not but what*, are usually employed merely to introduce a hypothetical reason, and hence take the Subjunctive; as, —

**id fēcī, nōn quod vōs hanc dēfēnsiōnem dēsīderāre arbitrārer, sed ut omnēs intellegerent**, *this I did, not because I thought you needed this defense, but that all might perceive*;

**Crassō commendātiōnem nōn sum pollicitus, nōn quīn eam valitūram apud tē arbitrārer, sed egēre mihi commendātiōne nōn vidēbātur**, *I did not promise a recommendation to Crassus, not that I did not think it would have weight with you, but because he did not seem to me to need recommendation.*

- c. But clauses introduced by **nōn quod, nōn quia** take the Indicative *if they state a fact*, even though that fact is denied to be the reason for something; as, —

**hōc ita sentiō, nōn quia sum ipse augur, sed quia sīc exīstimāre nōs est necesse**, *this I think, not because I am myself an augur (which I really am), but because it is necessary for us to think so.*

## 2. Cum causal regularly takes the Subjunctive; as, —

**quae cum ita sint**, *since this is so*;

**cum sīs mortālis, quae mortālia sunt, cūrā**, *since you are mortal, care for what is mortal.*

- a. Note the phrase **cum praesertim** (**praesertim cum**), *especially since*; as, —

**Aeduōs accūsāt, praesertim cum eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscipit**, *he blamed the Aedui, especially since he had undertaken the war at their entreaties.*

## 3. Quandō (less frequent than the other causal particles) governs the Indicative; as, —

**id omittō, quandō vōbīs ita placet**, *I pass over that, since you so wish.*

**Temporal Clauses introduced by *Postquam, Ut, Ubi, Simul ac, etc.***

**287. I. Postquam** (*posteaquam*), *after*; **ut, ubi, when**; **cum primum, simul, simul ac** (*simul atque*), *as soon as*, when used to refer to a single occurrence regularly take the Perfect Indicative; as, —

**Epaminōndās postquam audīvit vīcisse Boeōtiōs**, 'Satis' inquit 'vixi,' *Epaminondas, after he heard that the Boeotians had conquered, said, 'I have lived enough.'*

**id ut audīvit, Corcōram dēmigrāvit**, *when he heard this, he moved to Corcyra*;

**Caesar cum primum potuit, ad exercitum contendit**, *Caesar, as soon as he could, hurried to the army*;

**ubi dē Caesaris adventū certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt**, *when they were informed of Caesar's arrival, they sent envoys to him.*

- a. The Historical Present may take the place of the Perfect in this construction.

2. To denote the repeated occurrence of an act, **ut, ubi, simul atque, as often as**, when following an historical tense, take the Pluperfect Indicative (compare §§ 288, 3; 302, 3); as, —

**ut quisque Verris animum offenderat, in lautumiās statim coniciēbātur**, *whenever anybody had offended Verres's feelings, he was forthwith put in the stone-quarry*;

**hostēs, ubi aliquōs ēgredientēs cōspexerant, adoriēbantur**, *whenever the enemy had seen any men disembarking, they attacked them.*

- a. In Livy and succeeding historians the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used to denote this repeated occurrence of an act ('Indefinite Frequency'); as, —

**id ubi dixisset, hastam mittēbat**, *whenever he had said that, he hurled a spear.*

3. Occasionally the above conjunctions are followed by the Pluperfect Indicative of a single occurrence. This is regularly the case with **postquam** in expressions denoting a definite interval of time (days, months, years, etc.), such as **post tertium annum quam, tribus post annis quam**. Thus: —

paucis post diebus quam Lucā discesserat, ad Sardiniam vēnit,  
*a few days after he had departed from Luca he came to Sardinia;*

postquam occupatae Syracūsae erant, profectus est Carthāginem,  
*after Syracuse had been seized, he set out for Carthage.*

4. The Imperfect Indicative also sometimes occurs to denote a *continued state*; as, —

postquam Rōmam adventābant, senātus cōsultus est, *after they were on the march towards Rome, the Senate was consulted;*

postquam strūcti utrimque stābant, *after they had been drawn up on both sides and were in position.*

5. Rarely **postquam**, **posteaquam**, following the analogy of **cum**, take the Subjunctive, but only in the historical tenses; as, —

posteaquam sūmptuosa fieri fūnera coepissent, lēge sublata sunt,  
*after funerals had begun to be elaborate, they were done away with by law.*

### Temporal Clauses introduced by **Cum**.

#### A. **Cum** REFERRING TO THE PAST.

288. I. **Cum**, when referring to the past, takes —

A. The Indicative (Imperfect, Historical Perfect, or Pluperfect) to denote *the point of time at which* something occurs.

B. The Subjunctive (Imperfect or Pluperfect) to denote *the situation or circumstances under which* something occurs.

Examples: —

#### INDICATIVE.

an tum erās cōsul, cum in Palātiō mea domus ardēbat, *or were you consul at the time when my house burned up on the Palatine?*

crēdō tum cum Sicilia florēbat opibus et cōpiis magna artificia fuisse in eā Insulā, *I believe that at the time when Sicily was powerful in riches and resources there were great crafts in that island;*

eō tempore pārui cum pārere necesse erat, *he obeyed at the time when it was necessary to obey;*

illō diē, cum est lata lēx dē mē, *on that day when the law concerning me was passed.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

**Lysander cum vellet Lycūrgi lēgēs commūtāre, prohibitus est,** *when Lysander desired to change the laws of Lycurgus, he was prevented;*

**Pythagorās cum in geōmetriā quiddam novī invēnisset, Mūsīs bovem immolāsse dīcitur,** *when Pythagoras had discovered something new in geometry, he is said to have sacrificed an ox to the Muses.*

- a. Note that the Indicative is much less frequent in such clauses than the Subjunctive, and is regularly confined to those cases where the main clause has **tum, eō diē, eō annō, eō tempore** or some similar correlative of the **cum**. Sometimes it depends entirely upon the point of view of the writer whether he shall employ the Indicative or Subjunctive.

2. When the logical order of the clauses is inverted, we find **cum** with the Perfect Indicative or Historical Present, in the sense of *when, when suddenly*. The main clause in such cases often has **jam, vix, aegrē, nōndum**; as, —

**jam Galli ex oppidō fugere apparābant, cum mātres familiae repente prōcurrerunt,** *the Gauls were already preparing to flee, when suddenly the matrons rushed forth (logically, the matrons rushed forth as the Gauls were preparing to flee);*

**Trēvirī Labiēnum adoriri parābant, cum duās legiōnēs vēnisse cognōscunt,** *the Treviri were preparing to attack, when (suddenly) they learned that two legions had arrived.*

3. To denote a *recurring action* in the past **cum** is followed by the Indicative, particularly of the Pluperfect (compare §§ 287, 2; 302, 3); as, — **cum ad aliquod oppidum vēnerat, eādē lectiā ad cubiculum dēferēbātur,** *whenever he had arrived at some town, he was (always) carried in the same litter to his room;*

**cum equitātus noster sē in agrōs ējēcerat, essedāriōs ex silvis ēmittēbat,** *whenever our cavalry had advanced into the fields, he would send his charioteers out from the woods.*

- a. Sometimes the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive is thus used; as, — **saepe cum aliquem vidēret minus bene vestitum, suum amiculum dedit,** *often, whenever he saw some one more poorly clothed, he gave him his own mantle;*  
**cum prōcucurrissent, Numidae effugiēbant,** *as often as they had advanced, the Numidians ran away.*

This construction is frequent in Livy and subsequent historians.



## B. Cum REFERRING TO THE PRESENT OR FUTURE.

289. When **cum** refers to the Present or Future it regularly takes the Indicative ; as, —

**tum tua res agitur, paries cum proximus ardet**, *your own interests are at stake when your neighbor's house is burning* ;  
**cum vidēbis, tum sciēs**, *when you see, then you will know*.

- a. The Indicative of the Present or Future may denote also a recurring action ; as, —

**stabilitas amicitiae confirmari potest, cum homines cupidinibus imperabunt**, *firm friendship can be established whenever men shall control their desires*.

## C. OTHER USES OF Cum.

290. 1. **Cum Explicative.** **Cum**, with the Indicative, is sometimes used to indicate the identity of one act with another ; as, —

**cum tacent, clamant**, *their silence is a shout* (lit. *when they are silent, they shout*).

2. **Cum . . . tum.** When **cum . . . tum** mean *both . . . and*, the **cum**-clause is in the Indicative ; but when **cum** has the force of *while, though*, it may take the Subjunctive ; as, —

**cum te semper dilexerim, tum tuis factis incensus sum**, *while I have always loved you, at the same time I am incensed at your conduct*.

Clauses introduced by *Antequam* and *Priusquam*.

## A. WITH THE INDICATIVE.

291. **Antequam** and **priusquam** (often written **ante . . . quam, prius . . . quam**) take the Indicative to denote an actual fact.

1. Sometimes the Present or Future Perfect ; as, —  
**prius respondēs quam rogō**, *you answer before I ask* ;  
**nihil contrā disputābō priusquam dixerit**, *I will say nothing in opposition, before he speaks*.

2. Sometimes the Perfect, especially after negative clauses ; as, —  
**nōn prius jugulandī finis fuit, quam Sulla omnēs suōs divitiis explēvit**, *there was no end of murder until Sulla satisfied all his henchmen with wealth*.

**B. WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.**

**292.** **Antequam** and **priusquam** take the Subjunctive to denote an act as *anticipated*.

1. Thus the Subjunctive may denote —

- a) An act in preparation for which the main act takes place; as, —  
**priusquam dīmīcārent, foedus ictum est, i.e. in anticipation of the fight, a treaty was struck.**

By an extension of this usage, the Subjunctive is sometimes used of *general truths*, where the anticipatory notion has faded out; as, —

**tempestās minātur antequam surgat, the tempest threatens before it rises.**

- b) An act anticipated and forestalled; as, —  
**priusquam tēlum adici posset, omnis acies terga vertit, before a spear could be hurled, the whole army fled.**

- c) An act anticipated and deprecated; as, —  
**animum omittunt priusquam locō dēmigrent, they die rather than quit their post.**

2. After historical tenses the Imperfect Subjunctive is used, especially by post-Augustan writers, where the notion of anticipation has practically vanished; as, —

**sōl antequam sē abderet fugientem vidit Antōnium, the sun before it set saw Antony fleeing.**

**Clauses introduced by Dum, Dōnec, Quoad.**

**293. I. Dum, while, regularly takes the Indicative of the Historical Present; as, —**

**Alexander, dum inter prīmōrēs pūgnat, sagittā ictus est, Alexander, while he was fighting in the van, was struck by an arrow; dum haec geruntur, in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit, while these things were being done, he arrived in the territory of the Venelli.**

**II. Dum, dōnec, and quoad, as long as, take the Indicative; as, —**

**dum anima est, spēs est, as long as there is life, there is hope; Lacedaemoniōrum gēns fortis fuit, dum Lycūrgi lēgēs vigēbant, the race of the Lacedaemonians was powerful, as long as the laws of Lycurgus were in force;**

**Catō, quoad vixit, virtūtum laude crēvit, Cato, as long as he lived, increased in the fame of his virtues.**

III. **Dum, donec, and quoad, until, take:—**1. The Indicative, to denote *an actual event*; as,—

**donec rediit, fuit silentium, there was silence till he came;**  
**ferrum in corpore retinuit, quoad renuntiatum est Boeotiis**  
**viciisse, he kept the iron in his body until word was brought that**  
**the Boeotians had conquered.**

- a. In Livy and subsequent historians **dum** and **donec** in this sense often take the Subjunctive instead of the Indicative; as,—

**trepidationis aliquantum edebant, donec timor quietem**  
**fecisset, they showed some trepidation, until fear produced quiet.**

2. The Subjunctive, to denote *anticipation or expectancy*; as,—

**expectavit Caesar dum navee convenirent, Caesar waited for the**  
**ships to assemble;**  
**dum hostes veniant, morabor, I shall wait for the enemy to come.**

**Substantive Clauses.**

**294.** A Substantive Clause is one which as a whole serves as the Subject or Object of a verb, or denotes some other case relation.

**A. Substantive Clauses developed from the Volitive.**

**295.** These are generally used as object-clauses, and occur with the following classes of verbs:—

1. With verbs signifying *to admonish, request, command, urge, persuade, induce*,<sup>1</sup> etc. (conjunctions **ut, ne**); as,—

**postulo ut fiat, I demand that it be done** (dependent form of the Jussive **fiat, let it be done!**);

**orat, ne abeat, he begs that you will not go away;**

**milites cohortatus est ut hostium impetum sustinerent, he ex-**  
**horted his soldiers to withstand the attack of the enemy;**

**Helvetiis persuasit ut exirent, he persuaded the Helvetii to march**  
**forth.**

- a. **Jubeo, command, order**, regularly takes the Infinitive.

<sup>1</sup> Especially: **moneo, admoneo; rogo, oro, peto, postulo, precor, flagito; mando, impero, praecipio; suadeo, hortor, cohortor; persua-deo, impello.**

2. With verbs signifying *to grant, concede, permit, allow*,<sup>1</sup> etc. (conjunction *ut*); as, —

**huic concēdō ut ea praetereat**, *I allow him to pass that by* (dependent form of the Jussive *ea praetereat*, *let him pass that by!*);  
**cōsulī permissum est ut duās legiōnēs scriberet**, *the consul was permitted to enroll two legions.*

3. With verbs of *hindering, preventing*,<sup>2</sup> etc. (conjunctions *nē*, *quōminus*, *quīn*); as, —

**nē lūstrum perficeret, mors prohibuit**, *death prevented him from finishing the lustrum* (dependent form after past tense of *nē lūstrum perficiat*, *let him not finish*, etc.);

**prohibuit quōminus in ūnum cōirent**, *he prevented them from coming together*;

**nec, quīn ērumperet, prohibērī poterat**, *nor could he be prevented from rushing forth.*

a. *Quīn* is used only when the verb of *hindering* is accompanied by a negative, or stands in a question implying a negative; it is not necessarily used even then.

Clauses introduced by *quōminus* and *quīn* are probably developed from Purpose Clauses.

4. With verbs of *deciding, resolving*,<sup>3</sup> etc. (conjunctions *ut*, *nē*); as, —

**cōstitueram ut pridīe Idūs Aquinī manērem**, *I had decided to remain at Aquinum on the 12th*;

**dēcrēvit senātus ut Opīmius vidēret**, *the Senate decreed that Opimius should see to it*;

**convēnit ut finīs castrīs miscērentur**, *it was agreed that they should be united in one camp.*

5. With verbs of *striving*,<sup>4</sup> etc. (conjunctions *ut*, *nē*); as, —

**labōrābat ut reliquās cīvitātēs adjungeret**, *he was striving to join the remaining states to him*;

**contendit nē ea ēnūntiārentur**, *he strove that those things should not be reported.*

a. *Cōnor*, *try*, always takes the Infinitive.

NOTE.—Verbs of all the above classes also admit the Infinitive, especially in poetry.

<sup>1</sup> Especially: *permittō, concēdō, nōn patior.*

<sup>2</sup> Especially: *prohibeō, impediō, dēterreō.*

<sup>3</sup> Especially: *cōstituō, dēcernō, cēnseō, placuit, convenit, pascor.*

<sup>4</sup> Especially: *labōrō, dō operam, id agō, contendō, impetrō.*

6. With a few other expressions, such as **necesse est, reliquum est, sequitur, licet, oportet**; as,—

**reliquum est ut doceam**, *it remains for me to show*;

**licet redeās**, *you may return*;

**oportet loquāmur**, *we must speak*.

On **licet** and **oportet** without **ut**, see paragraph 8.

7. Here also belong phrases of the type: **nūlla causa est cūr, quārē, quīn**; **nōn est cūr**, *etc.*; **nihil est cūr**, *etc.*; as,—

**nūlla causa est cūr timeam**, *there is no reason why I should fear*  
(originally Deliberative: *why should I fear? There's no reason*);

**nōn est quārē timeam**, *there is no reason why I should fear*;

**nihil est quīn dīcam**, *there is no reason why I should not say*.

8. Many of the above classes of verbs at times take the simple Subjunctive without **ut**. In such cases we must not recognize any omission of **ut**, but simply an earlier form of expression which existed before the **ut**-clause arose. This is regularly the case with **necesse est, licet**, and **oportet**; see 6. Other examples are:—

**eōs hōc moneō dēsinant**, *I warn them to stop*;

**huic imperat adeat cīvitātēs**, *he orders him to visit the states*.

### B. Substantive Clauses developed from the Optative.

296. Here belong clauses:—

1. With verbs of *wishing, desiring*, especially **cupiō, optō, volō, mālō** (conjunctions **ut, nē**); as,—

**optō ut in hōc jūdicīō nēmō improbus reperiātur**, *I hope that in this court no bad man may be found* (here **ut reperiātur** represents a simple optative of direct statement, *viz. reperiātur, may no bad man be found!*);

**cupiō nē veniat**, *I desire that he may not come*.

a. The simple Subjunctive (without **ut**) sometimes occurs with verbs of this class. (See § 295, 8.) Examples are: **vellem scriberēs**, *I could wish you were writing*; **vellem scripsisset**, *I could wish he had written*.

2. With verbs of *fearing* (**timeō, metuō, vereor**). Here **nē** means *that, lest*, and **ut** means *that not*; as,—

**timeō nē veniat**, *I fear that he will come* (originally: *may he not come! I'm afraid [he will]*);

**timeō ut veniat**, *I fear that he will not come* (originally: *may he come I'm afraid [he won't]*).

- a. **Nē nōn** sometimes occurs instead of **ut**, especially where the verb of *fearing* has a negative, or where the writer desires to emphasize some particular word in the dependent clause; as, —

**nōn vereor nē hōc nōn fiat**, *I am not afraid that this will not happen*;

**vereor nē exercitum firmum habēre nōn possit**, *I fear that he is unable (nōn possit) to have a strong army.*

### C. Substantive Clauses of Result.

**297.** Substantive Clauses of Result (introduced by **ut**, **ut nōn**) are a development of pure Result clauses, and occur with the following classes of words: —

1. As object clauses after verbs of *doing*, *accomplishing* (especially **faciō**, **efficiō**, **cōficiō**). Thus: —

**gravitās morbī facit ut medicīnā egeāmus**, *the severity of disease makes us need medicine.*

2. As the subject of several impersonal verbs, particularly **fit**, **efficitur**, **accidit**, **evenit**, **contingit**, **accēdit**, **fieri potest**, **fore**, **sequitur**, **relinquitur**. Thus: —

**ex quō efficitur, ut voluptās nōn sit summum bonum**, *from which it follows that pleasure is not the greatest good*;

**ita fit, ut nēmō esse possit beātus**, *thus it happens that no one can be happy*;

**accēdēbat ut nāvēs deessent**, *another thing was the lack of ships* (lit. *it was added that ships were lacking*).

3. As predicate or appositive after expressions like **jūs est**, **mōs est**, **cōnsuetūdō est**; also after neuter pronouns, **hōc**, **illud**, etc. Thus: —

**est mōs hominum ut nōlint eundem plūribus rēbus excellere**, *it is the way of men not to wish the same person to excel in many things.*

### D. Substantive Clauses introduced by **Quīn**.

**298.** Substantive Clauses introduced by **quīn** (used sometimes as subject, sometimes as object) occur after negative and interrogative expressions of *doubt*, *omission*, and the like, particularly after **nōn dubitō**, *I do not doubt*; **quis**

*dubitat, who doubts?; nōn (haud) dubium est, there is no doubt.* The mood is the Subjunctive. Examples:—

*quis dubitat quīn in virtūte dīvitiae sint, who doubts that in virtue there are riches?*

*nōn dubium erat quīn ventūrus esset, there was no doubt that he was about to come.*

- a. In Nepos, Livy, and post-Augustan writers an Infinitive sometimes takes the place of the *quīn*-clause after *nōn dubitō*; as, —  
*nōn dubitāmus inventōs esse, we do not doubt that men were found.*
- b. *Nōn dubitō, I do not hesitate,* is regularly followed by the Infinitive, though sometimes by a *quīn*-clause.

### **E. Substantive Clauses introduced by Quod.**

**299. 1. Quod, the fact that, that,** introduces Substantive Clauses in the Indicative. This construction occurs especially —

- a) In apposition with a preceding demonstrative, as *hōc, id, illud, illa, ex eo, inde, etc.* Thus:—  
*illud est admirātiōne dīgnum, quod captīvōs retinendōs cēnsuit, this is especially worthy of admiration, that he thought the prisoners ought to be kept;*  
*hōc ūnō praestāmus vel māximē ferīs, quod colloquimur inter nōs, in this one respect are we especially superior to the beasts, that we talk with each other.*
- b) After *bene fit, bene accidit, male fit, bene facere, etc.*; as —  
*bene mihi accidit, quod mittor ad mortem, it is well for me that I am sent to death;*  
*bene fēcistī quod mānsistī, you did well in remaining.*

**2. Quod** at the beginning of the sentence sometimes has the force of *as regards the fact that*. Thus:—

*quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id meī mūniendī causā faciō, as regards the fact that I am transporting a multitude of Germans into Gaul, I am doing it for the sake of strengthening myself;*

*quod mē Agamemnona aemulārī putās, falleris, as regards your thinking that I emulate Agamemnon, you are mistaken.*

## Indirect Questions.

**300.** 1. Indirect Questions are Substantive Clauses used after verbs of *asking, inquiring, telling* and the like. They take their verb in the Subjunctive.<sup>1</sup> Like Direct Questions (see § 162) they may be introduced —

a) By Interrogative Pronouns or Adverbs; as, —

**dīc mihi ubi fueris, quid fēceris,** *tell me where you were, what you did;*

**oculīs iūdicārī nōn potest in utram partem fluat Arar,** *it cannot be determined by the eye in which direction the Arar flows;*

**bis bīna quot essent, nesciēbat,** *he did not know how many two times two were.*

NOTE. — Care should be taken to distinguish Indirect Questions from Relative Clauses. The difference between the two appears clearly in the following: —

**effugere nēmō id potest quod futūrum est,** *no one can escape what is destined to come to pass;* but

**saepe autem ne ūtile quidem est scīre quid futūrum sit,** *but often it is not even useful to know what is coming to pass.*

b) By **num** or **-ne**, without distinction of meaning; as, —

**Epaminōndās quaesivīt num salvus esset clipeus,** or **salvusne esset clipeus,** *Epaminondas asked whether his shield was safe;*

**disputātur num interfīre virtūs in homine possit,** *the question is raised whether virtue can die in a man;*

**ex Sōcrate quaesītum est nōne Archelāum beātum putāret,** *the question was asked of Socrates whether he did not think Archelaus happy.*

NOTE. — **Nōne** in Indirect Questions occurs only after **quaerō**, as in the last example above.

2. Often the Indirect Question represents a Deliberative Subjunctive of the direct discourse; as, —

**nesciō quid faciam,** *I do not know what to do.* (Direct: **quid faciam, what shall I do!**)

<sup>1</sup> Exclamations, also, upon becoming indirect, take the Subjunctive, as **cōnsiderā quam variae sint hominum cupidinēs,** *consider how varied are the desires of men.* (Direct: **quam variae sunt hominum cupidinēs!**)



3. After verbs of *expectation* and *endeavor* (**expectō**, **cōnor**, **experior**, **temptō**) we sometimes find an Indirect Question introduced by **sī**; as, —

**cōnantur sī perrumpere possint**, *they try whether they can break through.*

a. Sometimes the governing verb is omitted; as, —

**pergit ad proximam spēluncam sī forte eō vēstigia ferrent**, *he proceeded to the nearest cave (to see) if the tracks led thither.*

4. **Indirect Double Questions** are introduced in the main by the same particles as direct double questions (§ 162, 4); *viz.*: —

**utrum . . . an**;  
**-ne . . . . an**;  
 — . . . . **an**;  
 — . . . . **ne**.

Examples: —

<b>quaerō utrum vērū an falsū sit,</b>	} <i>I ask whether it is true or false?</i>
<b>quaerō vērūne an falsū sit,</b>	
<b>quaerō vērū an falsū sit,</b>	
<b>quaerō vērū falsūne sit,</b>	

a. 'Or not' in the second member of a double question is ordinarily expressed by **necne**, less frequently by **an nōn**; as, —

**dī utrum sint necne, quaeritur**, *it is asked whether there are gods or not.*

5. **Haud sciō an, nesciō an**, by omission of the first member of the double question, occur with the Subjunctive in the sense: *I am inclined to think, probably, perhaps*; as, —

**haud sciō an hōc vērū sit**, *I am inclined to think this is true.*

6. In early Latin and in poetry the Indicative is sometimes used in Indirect Questions.

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**301.** Conditional Sentences are compound sentences (§ 164) consisting of two parts, the Protasis (or *condition*), usually introduced by **sī**, **nisi**, or **sīn**, and the Apodosis (or *conclusion*). We distinguish the following types of Conditional Sentences: —

**First Type.**—Nothing Implied as to the Reality of the Supposed Case.

**302.** 1. Here we regularly have the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis. Any tense may be used; as,—

**sī hōc crēdis, errās,** *if you believe this, you are mistaken;*

**nātūram sī sequēmur, numquam aberrābimus,** *if we follow Nature, we shall never go astray;*

**sī hōc dīxistī, errāstī,** *if you said this, you were in error.*

2. Sometimes the Protasis takes the Indefinite Second Person Singular (§ 356, 3) of the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, with the force of the Indicative; as,—

**memoria minuitur, nisi eam exerceās,** *memory grows weak unless you exercise it.*

3. Here belong also those conditional sentences in which the Protasis denotes a repeated action (compare §§ 287, 2; 288, 3); as,—

**sī quis equitum dēciderat, peditēs circumsistēbant,** *if any one of the horsemen fell, the foot-soldiers gathered about him.*

a. Instead of the Indicative, Livy and subsequent writers employ the Subjunctive of the Historical tenses in the Protasis to denote repeated action; as,—

**sī dīcendō quis diem eximeret,** *if (ever) anybody consumed a day in pleading;* **sī quandō adsidēret,** *if ever he sat by.*

4. Where the sense demands it the Apodosis in conditional sentences of the First Type may be an Imperative or one of the Independent Subjunctives (Hortatory, Deliberative, etc.); as,—

**sī hōc crēditis, tacēte,** *if you believe this, be silent;*

**sī hōc crēdimus, taceāmus,** *if we believe this, let us keep silent.*

**Second Type.**—Supposed Case represented as Contingent.

**303.** Here we regularly have the Subjunctive (of the Present or Perfect tense) in both Protasis and Apodosis; as,—

**sī hōc dīcas, errēs,** } *if you should say this, you would be mis-*  
**sī hōc dīxeris, errāveris,** } *taken.*

**sī velim Hannibalis proelia omnia dēscribere, diēs mē dēficiat,** *if I should wish to describe all the battles of Hannibal, time would fail me;*

**mentiar, si negem, I should lie, if I should deny it;**  
**haec si tecum patria loquatur, nonne impetrare debeat, if your**  
*country should plead thus with you, would she not deserve to*  
*obtain her request?*

a. The Subjunctive in the Apodosis of conditional sentences of this type is of the Potential variety.

b. Sometimes we find the Indicative in the Apodosis of sentences of the Second Type, where the writer wishes to assert the consummation of a result more positively; as, —

**aliter si faciat, nullam habet auctoritatem, if he should do**  
*otherwise, he has no authority.*

### Third Type. — Supposed Case represented as Contrary to Fact.

**304. 1.** Here we regularly have the Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Imperfect referring to *present time*, and the Pluperfect referring to *past*; as, —

**si amici mei adessent, opis non indigerem, if my friends were**  
*here, I should not lack assistance;*

**si hoc dixisses, errasses, if you had said this, you would have**  
*erred;*

**sapientia non expeteretur, si nihil efficeret, philosophy would not**  
*be desired, if it accomplished nothing;*

**consilium, ratio, sententia nisi essent in senibus, non summum**  
**consilium majores nostri appellassent senatum, unless de-**  
*liberation, reason, and wisdom existed in old men, our ances-*  
*tors would not have called their highest deliberative body a*  
*senate.*

2. Sometimes the Imperfect Subjunctive is found referring to the past, especially to denote *a continued act, or a state of things still existing*; as, —

**Laelius, Furius, Cato, si nihil litteris adjuvarentur, numquam se**  
**ad eorum studium contulissent, Laelius, Furius, and Cato**  
*would never have devoted themselves to the study of letters,*  
*unless they had been (constantly) helped by them;*

**num igitur si ad centesimum annum vixisset, senectutis eum**  
**suae paeniteret, if he had lived to his hundredth year,**  
*would he have regretted (and now be regretting) his old*  
*age?*

3. The Apodosis in conditional sentences of this type sometimes stands in the Indicative (Imperfect, Perfect, or Pluperfect), *viz.* —

a) Frequently in expressions of *ability, obligation, or necessity*; as, —

**nisi fēllicitās in sōcordiam vertisset, exuere jugum potuērunt**, *unless their prosperity had turned to folly, they could have thrown off the yoke*;

NOTE. — In sentences of this type, however, it is not the *possibility* that is represented as contrary-to-fact, but something to be supplied in thought from the context. Thus in the foregoing sentence the logical apodosis is **et exuissent** understood (*and they would have shaken it off*). When the *possibility* itself is conditioned, the Subjunctive is used.

**eum patris locō colere dēbēbās, si illa in tē pietās esset**, *you ought to revere him as a father, if you had any sense of devotion*.

b) With both the Periphrastic Conjugations; as, —

**si Pompējus occisus esset, fuistisne ad arma itūrī**, *if Pompey had been slain, would you have proceeded to arms?*

**si ūnum diem morātī essētis, moriendum omnibus fuit**, *if you had delayed one day, you would all have had to die*.

### Protasis expressed without **SI**.

305. 1. The Protasis is not always expressed by a clause with **si**, but may be implied in a word, a phrase, or merely by the context; as, —

**aliōquī haec nōn scriberentur**, *otherwise (i.e. if matters were otherwise) these things would not be written*;

**nōn potestis, voluptātē omnia dīrigentēs, retinēre virtūtem**, *you cannot retain virtue, if you direct everything with reference to pleasure*.

2. Sometimes an Imperative, or a Jussive Subjunctive serves as Protasis. Thus: —

**crās petitō, dabitur**, *if you ask to-morrow, it shall be given you* (lit. *ask to-morrow, etc.*);

**haec repūtent, vidēbunt**, *if they consider this, they will see* (lit. *let them consider, etc.*);

**cavē haec faciās**, *beware not to do this!* (Originally: *do this! then beware! i.e. if you do it, beware!* Hence *beware not to do it!*)

Use of *Nisi*, *Si* *Nōn*, *Sīn*.

306. 1. *Nisi*, unless, negatives the entire protasis; *sī nōn* negatives a single word; as, —

*ferreus essem, nisi tē amārem*, I should be hard-hearted unless I loved you; but —

*ferreus essem, sī tē nōn amārem*, I should be hard-hearted if I did NOT love you.

In the first example, it is the notion of *loving you* that is negated, in the second, the notion of *loving*.

2. *Sī nōn* (*sī minus*) must be employed: —

a) When an apodosis with *at*, *tamen*, *certē* follows; as, —

*dolōrem sī nōn potuerō frangere, tamen occultābō*, if I cannot crush my sorrow, yet I will hide it.

b) When an affirmative protasis is repeated in negative form; as, —

*sī fēceris, magnam habēbō grātiā; sī nōn fēceris, ignōscam*, if you do it, I shall be deeply grateful; if you do not do it, I shall pardon you.

a. But if the verb is omitted in the repetition, only *sī minus* is admissible; as, —

*hōc sī assecūtus sum, gaudeō; sī minus, mē cōnsōlor*, if I have attained this, I am glad; if not, I console myself.

3. *Sīn*. Where one protasis is followed by another opposed in meaning, but affirmative in form, the second is introduced by *sīn*; as, —

*hunc mihi timōrem ēripe; sī vērū est, nē opprimar, sīn falsus, ut timēre dēsinam*, relieve me of this fear; if it is well founded, that I may not be destroyed; but if it is groundless, that I may cease to fear.

4. *Nisi* has a fondness for combining with negatives (*nōn*, *nēmō*, *nihil*); as, —

*nihil cōgitāvit nisi caedem*, he had no thought but murder.

a. *Nōn* and *nisi* are always separated in the best Latinity.

5. *Nisi forte*, *nisi vērō*, *nisi sī*, unless perchance, unless indeed (often with ironical force), take the Indicative; as, —

*nisi vērō, quia perfecta rēs nōn est, nōn vidētur pūnienda*, unless indeed, because an act is not consummated, it does not seem to merit punishment.

### Conditional Clauses of Comparison.

307. 1. Conditional Clauses of Comparison are introduced by the particles, *ac sī, ut sī, quasi, quam sī, tamquam sī, velut sī*, or simply by *velut* or *tamquam*. They are followed by the Subjunctive mood and regularly involve an ellipsis, as indicated in the following examples:—

*tantus patrēs metus cēpit, velut sī jam ad portās hostis esset, as great fear seized the senators as (would have seized them) if the enemy were already at the gates;*

*sed quid ego hīs testibus ūtor quasi rēs dubia aut obscura sit, but why do I use these witnesses, as (I should do) if the matter were doubtful or obscure;*

*serviam tibi tamquam sī ēmeris mē argentō, I will serve you as though you had bought me for money.*

2. Note that in sentences of this kind the Latin observes the regular principles for the Sequence of Tenses. Thus after principal tenses the Latin uses the Present and Perfect (as in the second and third examples), where the English uses the Past and the Past Perfect.

### Concessive Clauses.

308. The term 'Concessive' is best restricted to those clauses developed from the Jussive Subjunctive which have the force of *granted that, etc.* (see § 278); as,—

*sit fūr, sit sacrilegus, at est bonus imperātor, granted that he is a thief and a robber, yet he is a good commander;*

*ut hōc vērū sit, granted that this is true;*

*nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est, granted that pain is not the greatest evil, yet it is certainly an evil.*

a. Here also belongs the use of the Subjunctive with *licet* (see § 295, 6), where *licet* has the force of *he may, they may, etc.*; as,—

*fremant omnēs licet, dicam quod sentiō, they may all shout, (but) I shall say what I think.*

• **Adversative Clauses with *Quamvis, Quamquam, etc.***

309. Clauses introduced by *quamvis, quamquam, etsi, tametsi, cum, although*, while often classed as 'Concessive,' are yet essentially different from genuine Concessive

clauses. As a rule, they do not *grant* or *concede* anything, but rather state that something is true *in spite of something else*. They accordingly emphasize the adversative idea, and are properly Subordinate Adversative Clauses. The different particles used to introduce these clauses have different meanings and take different constructions, as follows:—

1. **Quamvis**, *however much, although*, does not introduce a statement of fact, but represents an act merely as conceived. It is followed by the Subjunctive, usually of the present tense; as,—

**hominēs quamvis in turbidis rēbus sint, tamen interdum animis relaxantur**, *in however stirring events men may engage, yet at times they relax their energies*;

**nōn est potestas opitulandī rei publicae quamvis ea prematur periculis**, *there is no opportunity to succor the state, though it be beset by dangers*.

2. **Quamquam**, **etsi**, **tametsi**, *although*, introduce a statement of fact, and are followed by the Indicative (of any tense); as,—

**quamquam omnis virtus nōs allicit, tamen iustitia id maximē efficit**, *although all virtue attracts us, yet justice does so especially*;

**Caesar, etsi nondum cōnsilium hostium cognoverat, tamen id quod accidit suspiciabatur**, *Caesar, though he did not yet know the plans of the enemy, yet was suspecting what actually occurred*.

a. **Etsi**, *although*, must be distinguished from **etsi**, *even if*. The latter is a conditional particle and takes any of the constructions admissible for **si**. (See §§ 302–304.)

3. **Cum**, *although*, is followed by the Subjunctive; as,—  
**Atticus honōrēs nōn petiit, cum ei patērent**, *Atticus did not seek honors, though they were open to him*.

4. **Licet** sometimes loses its verbal force (see § 308, a) and sinks to the level of a conjunction with the force of *although*. It takes the Subjunctive, Present or Perfect; as,—

**licet omnes terrōrēs impendeant, succurram**, *though all terrors hang over me, (yet) I will lend aid*.

5. **Quamquam**, with the force *and yet*, is often used to introduce principal clauses; as,—

**quamquam quid loquor**, *and yet why do I speak?*

6. In post-Augustan writers **quamquam** is freely construed with the Subjunctive, while **quamvis** is often used to introduce statements of fact, and takes either the Indicative or the Subjunctive. Thus:—

**quamquam** movērētur his vōcibus, *although he was moved by these words*;  
**quamvis** multī opīnārentur, *though many thought*;  
**quamvis** infēstō animō pervēnerās, *though you had come with hostile intent.*

**Clauses with *Dum, Modo, Dummodo*, denoting a Wish or a Proviso.**

310. These particles are followed by the Subjunctive (negative **nē**) and have two distinct uses:—

I. They are used to introduce clauses *embodying a wish* entertained by the subject of the leading verb; as,—

**multī honesta neglegunt dummodo potentiam cōnsequantur**,  
*many neglect honor in their desire to obtain power (if only they may attain);*

**omnia postposui, dum praeceptis patris pārērem**, *I made everything else secondary, in my desire to obey the injunctions of my father*;  
**nū obstat tibi, dum nē sit dītor alter**, *nothing hinders you in your desire that your neighbor may not be richer than you.*

II. They are used to express a *proviso* ('provided that'); as,—

**ōderint, dum metuant**, *let them hate, provided they fear*;  
**manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium et industria**,  
*old men retain their faculties, provided only they retain their interest and vigor*;

**nūbant, dum nē dōs fiat comes**, *let them marry, provided no dowry goes with it.*

NOTE.—Of these two uses of **dum**, **modo**, and **dummodo**, the first is the original one; the second has grown out of the first, and frequently retains the original notion of *wishing*, as in **ōderint, dum metuant**.

### **Relative Clauses.**

311. Relative Clauses are introduced by Relative Pronouns, Adjectives, or Adverbs.

312. 1. Relative clauses usually stand in the Indicative Mood, especially clauses introduced by those General Relatives which are doubled or have the suffix **-cunque**; as,—



**quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs, whatever it is, I fear the Greeks even when they offer gifts;**  
**quidquid oritur, quāleocunque est, causam ā nātūrā habet, whatever comes into being, of whatever sort it is, has its primal cause in Nature.**

2. Any simple Relative may introduce a conditional sentence of any of the three types mentioned in §§ 302-304; as, —

**quī hōc dīcit, errat, he who says this is mistaken (First Type);**

**quī hōc dīcat, erret, he would be mistaken who should say this (Second Type);**

**quī hōc dīxisset, errāisset, the man who had said this would have been mistaken.**

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE (ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA).

313. When the language or thought of any person is quoted without change, that is called Direct Discourse (*Ōrātiō Rēcta*); as, *Caesar said, 'The die is cast.'* When, on the other hand, one's language or thought is made to depend upon a verb of *saying, thinking, etc.*, that is called Indirect Discourse (*Ōrātiō Oblīqua*); as, *Caesar said that the die was cast; Caesar thought that his troops were victorious.*

a. For the verbs most frequently employed to introduce Indirect Discourse, see § 331.

### MOODS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

#### Declaratory Sentences.

314. 1. Declaratory Sentences upon becoming Indirect change their main clause to the Infinitive with Subject Accusative, while all subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive; as, —

**Rēgulus dīxit quā diū jūre jūrāndō hostium tenērētur nōn esse sē senātōrem, Regulus said that as long as he was held by his pledge to the enemy he was not a senator. (Direct: quā diū teneor nōn sum senātor.)**

2. The verb of *saying, thinking, etc.*, is sometimes to be inferred from the context; as, —

**tum Rōmulus lēgātōs circā vīcīnās gentēs mīsit quī societātem cōnūbiumque peterent: urbēs quoque, ut cētera, ex infimō nāscī, then Romulus sent envoys around among the neighboring tribes, to ask for alliance and the right of inter-marriage, (saying that) cities, like everything else, start from a modest beginning.**

3. Subordinate clauses which contain an explanatory statement of the writer are not properly a part of the Indirect Discourse, and hence regularly take the Indicative; as, —

**certior factus ex eā parte vīcī, quam Gallīs concesserat, omnēs noctū discessisse, he was informed that all had departed by night from that part of the village which he had granted to the Gauls.**

4. Sometimes a subordinate clause is such only in its external form, and in sense is principal. It then takes the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. This occurs especially in case of relative clauses, where **quī** is equivalent to **et hīc, nam hīc, etc.**; as, —

**dixit urbem Athēniēnsium prōpugnāculum oppositum esse barbarīs, apud quam jam bis classēs regiās fecisse naufragium, he said the city of the Athenians had been set against the barbarians like a bulwark, near which (= and near it) the fleets of the King had twice met disaster.**

5. The Subject Accusative of the Infinitive is sometimes omitted when it refers to the same person as the subject of the leading verb, or can easily be supplied from the context; as, —

**cum id nescire Māgō diceret, when Mago said he did not know this (for sē nescire).**

### Interrogative Sentences.

315. 1. Real questions of the Direct Discourse, upon becoming indirect, are regularly put in the Subjunctive; as, —

**Ariovistus Caesarī respondit: sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret, Ariovistus replied to Caesar that he**

*had come into Gaul before the Roman people. What did he (Caesar) mean? Why did he come into his domain?* (Direct: *quid tibi vis? cur in meas possessiones venis?*)

2. Rhetorical questions, on the other hand, being asked merely for effect, and being equivalent in force to emphatic statements, regularly stand in the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse. Thus:—

*quid est levius* (lit. *what is more trivial*, = nothing is more trivial) of the Direct Discourse becomes *quid esse levius* in the Indirect.

3. Deliberative Subjunctives of the Direct Discourse remain unchanged in mood in the Indirect; as,—

*quid faceret*, *what was he to do?* (Direct: *quid faciam?*)

### Imperative Sentences.

316. All Imperatives or Jussive Subjunctives of the Direct Discourse appear as Subjunctives in the Indirect; as,—

*milites certiores facit paulisper intermitterent proelium*, *he told the soldiers to stop the battle for a little.* (Direct: *intermittite*.)

a. The Negative in such sentences is *ne*; as,—

*ne suae virtuti tribueret*, *let him not attribute it to his own valor!*

### TENSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

#### A. Tenses of the Infinitive.

317. These are used in accordance with the regular principles for the use of the Infinitive as given in § 270.

a. The Perfect Infinitive may represent any past tense of the Indicative of Direct Discourse. Thus:—

*scio te haec egisse* may mean—

*I know you were doing this.* (Direct: *haec agebas*.)

*I know you did this.* (Direct: *haec egisti*.)

*I know you had done this.* (Direct: *haec egeras*.)

**B. Tenses of the Subjunctive.**

**318.** These follow the regular principle for the Sequence of Tenses, being Principal if the verb of *saying* is Principal; Historical if it is Historical. Yet for the sake of vividness, we often find the Present Subjunctive used after an historical tense; as, —

**Caesar respondit, si obsidēs dentur, sese pacem esse facturum,**  
*Caesar replied that, if hostages be given, he would make peace.*

a. For the sequence after the Perfect Infinitive, see § 268, 2.

**CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.****Conditional Sentences of the First Type.**

**319. A. THE APODOSIS.** Any tense of the Indicative is changed to the corresponding tense of the Infinitive (§§ 270; 317, a).

**B. THE PROTASIS.** The protasis takes those tenses of the Subjunctive which are required by the Sequence of Tenses.

Examples: —

DIRECT.	INDIRECT.
sī hōc crēdis, errās,	{ dicō, sī hōc crēdās, tē errāre; dixī, sī hōc crēderēs, tē errāre.
sī hōc crēdēs, errābis,	{ dicō, sī hōc crēdās, tē errātūrum esse; dixī, sī hōc crēderēs, tē errātūrum esse.
sī hōc crēdideris, errābis,	{ dicō, sī hōc crēdideris, tē errātūrum esse; dixī, sī hōc crēdidissēs, tē errātūrum esse.
sī hōc crēdēbās, errāvisti,	{ dicō, sī hōc crēderēs, tē errāvisse; dixī, sī hōc crēderēs, tē errāvisse.

a. Note that a Future Perfect Indicative of the Direct Discourse regularly appears in the Indirect as a Perfect Subjunctive after a principal tense, and as a Pluperfect Subjunctive after an historical tense.

### Conditional Sentences of the Second Type.

**320. A. THE APODOSIS.** The Present Subjunctive of the Direct Discourse regularly becomes the Future Infinitive of the Indirect.

**B. THE PROTASIS.** The Protasis takes those tenses of the Subjunctive demanded by the sequence of tenses.

Examples:—

*sī hōc crēdās, errēs,* { *dicō, sī hōc crēdās, tē errātūrum esse;*  
*dixi, sī hōc crēderēs, tē errātūrum esse.*

### Conditional Sentences of the Third Type.

#### 321. A. THE APODOSIS.

1. The Imperfect Subjunctive of the Direct Discourse becomes:—

- a) In the Active Voice the Future Infinitive.
- b) In the Passive Voice it takes the form *futūrum esse* (fore) *ut*, with the Imperfect Subjunctive.

2. The Pluperfect Subjunctive of the Direct Discourse becomes:—

- a) In the Active Voice the Infinitive in *-ūrus fuisse*.
- b) In the Passive Voice it takes the form *futūrum fuisse ut* with the Imperfect Subjunctive.

**B. THE PROTASIS.** The protasis in Conditional Sentences of this type always remains unchanged.

Examples:—

<i>sī hōc crēderēs, errārēs,</i>	<i>dicō (dixi), sī hōc crēderēs, tē errātūrum esse;</i>
<i>sī hōc crēdidissēs, errāvissēs,</i>	<i>dicō (dixi), sī hōc crēdidissēs, tē errātūrum fuisse;</i>
<i>sī hōc dixissēs, pūnītus essēs,</i>	<i>dicō (dixi), sī hōc dixissēs futūrum fuisse ut pūnīrēris.</i>

**322.** When an apodosis of a conditional sentence of the Third Type referring to the past is at the same time a Result clause, or a

quīn-clause (after *nōn dubitō, etc.*), it stands in the Perfect Subjunctive in the form *-ūrus fuerim*; as, —

*ita territī sunt, ut arma trāditūrī fuerint,<sup>1</sup> nisi Caesar subitō advēnisset, they were so frightened that they would have given up their arms, had not Caesar suddenly arrived;*

*nōn dubitō quīn, sī hōc dīxissēs, errātūrus fueris,<sup>1</sup> I do not doubt that, if you had said this, you would have made a mistake.*

- a. This peculiarity is confined to the Active Voice. In the Passive, such sentences, when they become dependent, remain unchanged; as, —

*nōn dubitō, quīn, sī hōc dīxissēs, vituperātus essēs, I do not doubt that, if you had said this, you would have been blamed.*

- b. When an Indirect Question becomes an apodosis in a conditional sentence of the Third Type, *-ūrus fuerim* (rarely *-ūrus fuisset*) is used; as, —

*quaerō, num, sī hōc dīxissēs, errātūrus fueris (or fuissēs).*

- c. *Potui*, when it becomes a dependent apodosis in sentences of this Type, usually changes to the Perfect Subjunctive; as, —

*concurṣū tōtīus civitātis dēfēnsī sunt, ut frigidissimōs quoque orātōrēs populi studia excitāre potuerint, they were defended before a gathering of all the citizens, so that the interest of the people would have been enough to excite even the most apathetic orators.*

## IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**323.** The Subjunctive is often used in subordinate clauses whose Indirect character is *merely implied by the context*; as, —

*dēmōnstrābantur mihi praetereā, quae Sōcratēs dē immortalitātē animōrum disseruisset, there were explained to me besides, the arguments which Socrates had set forth concerning the immortality of the soul (i.e. the arguments which, it was said, Socrates had set forth);*

*Paetus omnēs librōs quōs pater suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit, Paetus gave me all the books which (as he said) his father had left.*

<sup>1</sup> *Trāditūrī fuerint* and *errātūrus fueris* are to be regarded as representing *trāditūrī fuērunt* and *errātūrus fuisti* of Direct Discourse. (See § 304, 3, δ).

## SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION.

**324.** 1. Subordinate clauses dependent upon the Subjunctive are frequently attracted into the same mood, especially when they do not express a fact, but constitute *an essential part of one complex idea*; as, —

*nēmō avārus adhūc inventus est, cui, quod habēret, esset satis,*  
*no miser has yet been found who was satisfied with what he*  
*had;*

*cum dīversās causās afferrent, dum fōrmam suī quisque et*  
*animī et ingenī redderent,* *as they brought forward differ-*  
*ent arguments, while each mirrored his own individual type of*  
*mind and natural bent.*

*quod ego fatear, pudeat,* *should I be ashamed of a thing which I*  
*admit?*

2. Similarly a subordinate clause dependent upon an Infinitive is put in the Subjunctive when the two form one closely united whole; as, —

*mōs est Athēnīs quotanni in cōtiōne laudārī eōs qui sint in*  
*proeliis interfecti,* *it is the custom at Athens every year for*  
*those to be publicly eulogized who have been killed in battle.*  
 (Here the notion of 'praising those who fell in battle' forms  
 an inseparable whole.)

## NOUN AND ADJECTIVE FORMS OF THE VERB.

**325.** These are the Infinitive, Participle, Gerund, and Supine. All of these partake of the nature of the Verb, on the one hand, and of the Noun or Adjective, on the other. Thus: —

As Verbs, —

- a)* They may be limited by adverbs;
- b)* They admit an object;
- c)* They have the properties of voice and tense.

As Nouns or Adjectives, —

- a)* They are declined;
- b)* They take Noun or Adjective constructions.

# THE INFINITIVE.

## Infinitive without Subject Accusative.

**326.** This may be used either as Subject or Object.

NOTE. — The Infinitive was originally a Dative, and traces of this are still to be seen in the poetical use of the Infinitive to express *purpose*; as, *nec dulcēs occurrent ōscula nātī praeripere*, and *no sweet children will run to snatch kisses*.

### A. As Subject.

**327. 1.** The Infinitive without Subject Accusative is used as the Subject of *esse* and various impersonal verbs, particularly *opus est*, *necesse est*, *oportet*, *juvat*, *dēlectat*, *placet*, *libet*, *licet*, *praestat*, *condūcit*, *expedit*, *debet*, *pudet*, *interest*, *etc.*; as, —

*dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī*, *it is sweet and noble to die for one's country*;

*virōrum est fortium toleranter dolōrem pati*, *it is the part of brave men to endure pain with patience*;

*senātūī placuit lēgātōs mittere*, *the Senate decided* (lit. *it pleased the Senate*) *to send envoys*.

2. Even though the Infinitive itself appears without Subject, it may take a Predicate Noun or Adjective in the Accusative; as, —

*aliud est irācundum esse*, *aliud irātum*, *it is one thing to be irascible, another to be angry*;

*impūne quaelibet facere*, *id est rēgem esse*, *to do whatever you please with impunity, that is to be a king*.

- a. But when *licet* is followed by a Dative of the person, a Predicate Noun or Adjective with *esse* is attracted into the same case; as, *licuit esse ōtīdōs Themistocli*, lit. *it was permitted to Themistocles to be at leisure*. So sometimes with other Impersonals.

### B. As Object.

**328. 1.** The Infinitive without Subject Accusative is used as the Object of many verbs, to denote another action of the same subject, particularly after —

<i>volō</i> , <i>cupiō</i> , <i>mālō</i> , <i>nōlō</i> ;	<i>cōgitō</i> , <i>meditor</i> , <i>purpose</i> , <i>intend</i> ;
<i>dēbeō</i> , <i>ought</i> ;	<i>neglegō</i> , <i>neglect</i> ;
<i>statuō</i> , <i>cōstituō</i> , <i>decide</i> ;	<i>vereor</i> , <i>timeō</i> , <i>fear</i> ;



audeō, dare ;	mātūrō, festinō, properō, con-
studeō, contendō, strive ;	tendō, hasten ;
parō, <i>prepare</i> (so parātus) ;	assuēscō, cōsuēscō, <i>accustom</i>
incipiō, coepi, instituō, <i>begin</i> ;	myself (so assuētus, insuētus,
pergō, <i>continue</i> ;	assuēfactus) ;
dēsino, dēsistō, <i>cease</i> ;	discō, <i>learn</i> ;
possum, <i>can</i> ;	sciō, <i>know how</i> ;
cōnor, <i>try</i> ;	soleō, <i>am wont</i> ; as, —

tū hōs intuerī audēs, *do you dare to look on these men?*

Dēmostenēs ad fluctum maris dēclāmāre solēbat, *Demosthenes used to declaim by the waves of the sea.*

2. A Predicate Noun or Adjective with these Infinitives is attracted into the Nominative ; as, —

beātus esse sine virtūte nēmō potest, *no one can be happy without virtue ;*

Catō esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat, *Cato preferred to be good rather than to seem so.*

### Infinitive with Subject Accusative.

329. This may be used either as Subject or Object.

#### A. As Subject.

330. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative (like the simple Infinitive) appears as Subject with *esse* and Impersonal verbs, particularly with *aequum est*, *iustum est*, *utile est*, *turpe est*, *apertum est*, *perspicuum est*, *fāma est*, *opīniō est*, *spēs est*, *fās est*, *nefās est*, *opus est*, *necesse est*, *oportet*, *appāret*, *cōstat*, *praestat*, *etc.* ; as, —

nihil in bellō oportet contemnī, *nothing ought to be despised in war ;*  
apertum est sibi quemque nātūrā esse cārum, *it is manifest that by nature everybody is dearest to himself.*

#### B. As Object.

331. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is used as Object after the following classes of verbs : —

I. Most frequently after verbs of *saying*, *thinking*, *knowing*, *perceiving*, and the like (*Verba Sentiendī et Dēclārandī*). This is the

regular construction of Principal Clauses of Indirect Discourse. Verbs that take this construction are, among others, the following: **sentiō**, **audiō**, **videō**, **cognōscō**; **putō**, **iudicō**, **spērō**, **cōnfidō**; **sciō**, **meminī**; **dīcō**, **affirmō**, **negō** (*say that . . . not*), **trādō**, **nārrō**, **fateor**, **respondeō**, **scribō**, **prōmittō**, **glōrior**. Also the phrases: **certiōrem faciō** (*inform*), **memoriā teneō** (*remember*), etc.

Examples: —

**Epicūrēi putant cum corporibus simul animōs interfīre**, *the Epicureans think that the soul perishes with the body*;

**Thalēs dīxit aquam esse initium rērum**, *Thales said that water was the first principle of the universe*;

**Dēmocritus negat quicquid esse sempiternum**, *Democritus says nothing is everlasting*;

**spērō eum ventūrum esse**, *I hope that he will come*.

II. With **jubeō**, *order*, and **vetō**, *forbid*; as, —

**Caesar mīlitēs pontem facere jussit**, *Caesar ordered the soldiers to make a bridge*.

- a. When the name of the person who is ordered or forbidden to do something is omitted, the Infinitive with **jubeō** and **vetō** is put in the Passive; as, **Caesar pontem fieri jussit**.

III. With **patior** and **sinō**, *permit*, *allow*; as, —

**nūllō sē implicārī negōtiō passus est**, *he did not permit himself to be involved in any difficulty*.

IV. With **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō**, **cupiō**, when the Subject of the Infinitive is different from that of the governing verb; as, —

**nec mihi hunc errōrem extorquērī volō**, *nor do I wish this error to be wrested from me*;

**eās rēs jactārī nōlēbat**, *he was unwilling that these matters should be discussed*;

**tē tuīs dīvitīs fruī cupimus**, *we desire that you enjoy your wealth*.

- a. When the Subject of both verbs is the same, the simple Infinitive is regularly used in accordance with § 328, 1. But exceptions occur, especially in case of **esse** and Passive Infinitives; as, —  
**cupiō mē ēsse clēmētem**, *I desire to be lenient*;  
**Timoleōn māluit sē diligī quam metui**, *Timoleon preferred to be loved rather than feared*.

- b. **Volō** and **nōlō** also admit the Subjunctive, with or without **ut**. (See § 296, 1, a.)

V. With Verbs of *emotion* (*joy, sorrow, regret, etc.*), especially *gaudeō, laetor, doleō; aegrē ferō, molestē ferō, graviter ferō, am annoyed, distressed; miror, queror, indignor; as, —*

*gaudeō tē saluum advenīre, I rejoice that you arrive safely;*  
*nōn molestē ferunt sē libīdinum vinculis laxātōs esse, they are*  
*not troubled at being released from the bonds of passion;*  
*miror tē ad mē nihil scribere, I wonder that you write me nothing.*

- a. Instead of an Infinitive these verbs also sometimes admit a *quod*-clause as Object. (See § 299.) Thus: —

*miror quod nōn loqueris, I wonder that you do not speak.*

VI. Some verbs which take two Accusatives, one of the Person and the other of the Thing (§ 178, 1) may substitute an Infinitive for the second Accusative; as, —

*cōgō tē hōc facere, I compel you to do this (cf. tē hōc cōgō);*  
*docuī tē contentum esse, I taught you to be content (cf. tē modestiam docuī, I taught you temperance).*

#### Passive Construction of the Foregoing Verbs.

332. Those verbs which in the Active are followed by the Infinitive with Subject Accusative, usually admit the personal construction in the Passive. This is true of the following: —

- a) *jubeor, vetor, sinor; as, —*  
*mīlitēs pontem facere jussī sunt, the soldiers were ordered*  
*to build a bridge;*  
*pōns fierī jussus est, a bridge was ordered built;*  
*mīlitēs castris exīre vetitī sunt, the troops were forbidden*  
*to go out of the camp;*  
*Sēstius Clōdium accusāre nōn est situs, Sestius was*  
*not allowed to accuse Clodius.*
- b) *videor, I am seen, I seem; as, —*  
*vidētur comperisse, he seems to have discovered.*
- c) *dīcor, putor, exīstimator, jūdicor (in all persons); as, —*  
*dīcitur in Italiam vēnisse, he is said to have come into*  
*Italy;*  
*Rōmulus primus rēx Rōmānōrum fuisse putātur, Romu-*  
*lus is thought to have been the first king of the Romans.*

d) fertur, feruntur, trāditur, trāduntur (only in the third person); as,—

fertur **Homērus** caecus fuisse, *Homer is said to have been blind*;

carmina **Archilochi** contumēliis referta esse trāduntur, *Archilochus's poems are reported to have been full of abuse*.

NOTE.—In compound tenses and periphrastic forms, the last two classes of verbs, c), d), more commonly take the impersonal construction; as,—

trāditum est **Homērum** caecum fuisse, *the story goes that Homer was blind*.

### Infinitive with Adjectives.

333. The Infinitive with Adjectives (except **parātus**, **assuētus**, etc.; see § 328, 1) occurs only in poetry and post-Augustan prose writers; as,—

contentus **dēmōnstrāsse**, *contented to have proved*;

audāx omnia **perpeti**, *bold for enduring everything*.

### Infinitive in Exclamations.

334. The Infinitive is used in Exclamations implying *scorn*, *indignation*, or *regret*. An interrogative (or intensive) **-ne** is often attached to some word in the clause. Examples:—

**huncine sōlem tam nigrum surrēxe mihi**, *to think that to-day's sun rose with such evil omen for me!*

**sedēre tōtōs diēs in villā**, *to stay whole days at the villa!*

### Historical Infinitive.

335. The Infinitive is often used in historical narrative instead of the Imperfect Indicative. The Subject stands in the Nominative; as,—

interim cottidīē **Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre**, *meanwhile Caesar was daily demanding grain of the Aedui*.

## PARTICIPLES.

### Tenses of the Participle.

336. 1. The tenses of the Participle, like those of the Infinitive (see § 270), express time not absolutely, but with reference to the verb upon which the Participle depends.

2. The Present Participle denotes action *contemporary with* that of the verb. Thus :—

**audiō tē loquentem** = *you ARE speaking and I hear you;*

**audiēbam tē loquentem** = *you WERE speaking and I heard you;*

**audiam tē loquentem** = *you WILL BE speaking and I shall hear you.*

a. The Present Participle is sometimes employed with Conative force; as,—

**assurgentem regem resupīnat**, *as the king was trying to rise, he threw him down.*

3. The Perfect Passive Participle denotes action *prior to* that of the verb. Thus :—

**locūtus taceō** = *I HAVE spoken and am silent;*

**locūtus tacuī** = *I HAD spoken and then was silent;*

**locūtus tacēbō** = *I SHALL speak and then shall be silent.*

4. The **absolute** time of the action of a participle, therefore, is determined entirely by the finite verb with which it is connected.

5. Certain Perfect Passive Participles of Deponent and Semi-Deponent Verbs are used as Presents; *viz.* **arbitrātus, ausus, ratus, gāvīsus, solitus, ūsus, cōfīsus, diffīsus, secūtus, veritus.**

### Use of Participles.

**337.** As an Adjective the Participle may be used either as an attributive or predicate modifier of a Substantive.

1. Attributive Use. This presents no special peculiarities. Examples are :—

**glōria est cōsentiēns laus bonōrum**, *glory is the unanimous praise of the good;*

**Conon mūrōs ā Lysandrō dirutōs reficit**, *Conon restored the walls destroyed by Lysander.*

2. Predicate Use. Here the Participle is often equivalent to a subordinate clause. Thus the Participle may denote :—

a) Time; as,—

**omne malum nāscēns facile opprimitur**, *every evil is easily crushed at birth.*

b) A Condition; as,—

**mente ūti nōn possumus cibō et pōtione complēti**, *if gorged with food and drink, we cannot use our intellects.*

- c) Manner; as, —

**Solōn senēscere sē dīcēbat multa in diēs addiscentem,**  
*Solon said he grew old learning many new things every day.*

- d) Means; as, —

**sōl oriēns diem cōnficit,** *the sun, by its rising, makes the day.*

- e) Opposition ('though'); as, —

**mendāci hominī nē vērūm quidem dīcentī crēdimus,**  
*we do not believe a liar, though he speaks the truth.*

- f) Cause; as, —

**perfidiam veritus ad suōs recessit,** *since he feared treachery, he returned to his own troops.*

3. **Videō** and **audiō**, besides the Infinitive, take the Present Participle in the Predicate use; as, —

**videō tē fugientem,** *I see you fleeing.*

- a. So frequently **faciō**, **ingō**, **inducō**, etc.; as, —

**eīs Catōnem respondentem facimus,** *we represent Cato replying to them;*

**Homērus Laërtem colentem agrum facit,** *Homer represents Laertes tilling the field.*

4. The Future Active Participle (except **futūrus**) is regularly confined to its use in the Periphrastic Conjugation, but in poets and later writers it is used independently, especially to denote *purpose*; as, —

**vēnērunt castra oppugnātūrī,** *they came to assault the camp.*

5. The Perfect Passive Participle in combination with a noun is sometimes equivalent to an abstract noun with a dependent Genitive; as, —

**post urbem conditam,** *after the founding of the city;*

**Quīnctius dēfēnsus,** *the defense of Quinctius;*

**quibus animus occupātus,** *the preoccupation of the mind with which;*  
**nōn redditae rēs,** *the failure to make restitution.*

6. **Habeō** sometimes takes a Perfect Passive Participle in the Predicate construction with a force not far removed from that of the Perfect or Pluperfect Indicative; as, —

**cōpiās quās coāctās habēbat,** *the forces which he had collected.*

7. The Gerundive denotes *obligation* or *necessity*. Like other Participles it may be used either as Attributive or Predicate.

a) Less frequently as Attributive. Thus:—

**liber legendus**, a book worth reading ;

**lēgēs observandae**, laws deserving of observance.

b) More frequently as Predicate.

1) In the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (**amandus est**, etc.). In this use Intransitive Verbs can be used only impersonally, but admit their ordinary case-construction (Gen., Dat., Abl.) ; as,—

**veniendum est**, it is necessary to come ;

**oblīviscendum est injuriarū**, one must forget injuries ;

**numquam prōditōrī crēdendum est**, you must never trust a traitor ;

**suō cuique utendum est iudiciō**, every man must use his own judgment.

2) After **cūrō**, provide for ; **dō**, **trādō**, give over ; **relinquō**, leave ; **concedō**, hand over ; and some other verbs, instead of an object clause or to denote purpose ; as,—

**Caesar pōntem in Arare faciendum cūrāvit**, Caesar provided for the construction of a bridge over the Arar ;

**imperātor urbem mīlitibus dīripiendam concessit**, the general handed over the city to the soldiers to plunder.

8. For the Gerundive as the equivalent of the Gerund, see § 339, 1.

## THE GERUND.

**338.** As a verbal noun the Gerund admits noun constructions as follows:—

1. **Genitive.** The Genitive of the Gerund is used—

a) With nouns, as Objective or Appositional Genitive (see §§ 200, 202) ; as,—

**cupiditās dominandī**, desire of ruling ;

**ars scribendī**, the art of writing.

b) With Adjectives ; as,—

**cupidus audiendī**, desirous of hearing.

c) With **causā**, **grātiā** ; as,—

**discendī causā**, for the sake of learning.

2. **Dative.** The Dative of the Gerund is used —

a) With Adjectives; as, —

**aqua utilis est bibendō**, *water is useful for drinking.*

b) With Verbs (rarely); as, —

**adfuī scribendō**, *I was present at the writing.*3. **Accusative.** The Accusative of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions, chiefly **ad** and **in** to denote purpose; as, —**homō ad agendum nātus est**, *man is born for action.*4. **Ablative.** The Ablative of the Gerund is used —

a) Without a Preposition, as an Ablative of Means, Cause, etc. (see §§ 218, 219); as, —

**mēns discendō alitur et cōgitandō**, *the mind is nourished by learning and reflection.***Themistoclēs maritimōs praedōnēs cōnsectandō mare tūtum reddidit**, *Themistocles made the sea safe by following up the pirates.*b) After the prepositions **ā**, **dē**, **ex**, **in**; as, —**summa voluptās ex discendō capitur**, *the keenest pleasure is derived from learning;***multa dē bene beātēque vivendō ā Platōne disputāta sunt**, *there was much discussion by Plato on the subject of living well and happily.*

## 5. As a rule, only the Genitive of the Gerund and the Ablative (without a preposition) admit a Direct Object.

**Gerundive Construction instead of the Gerund.**

**339.** 1. Instead of the Genitive or Ablative of the Gerund with a Direct Object, another construction *may be, and very often is, used.* This consists in putting the Direct Object in the case of the Gerund (Gen. or Abl.) and using the Gerundive in agreement with it. This is called the Gerundive Construction. Thus: —

## GERUND CONSTRUCTION.

**cupidus urbem videndī**, *desirous*  
*of seeing the city;*

**dēlector orātōrēs legendō**, *I am*  
*charmed with reading the orators.*

## GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION.

**cupidus urbis videndae;**

**dēlector orātōribus legendis.**



2. The Gerundive Construction *must be used* to avoid a Direct Object with the Dative of the Gerund, or with a case dependent upon a Preposition ; as, —

**locus castris muniendis aptus**, a place adapted to fortifying a camp ;  
**ad pacem petendam venerunt**, they came to ask peace ;  
**multum temporis consumō in legendis poetis**, I spend much time in reading the poets.

3. In order to avoid ambiguity (see § 236, 2), the Gerundive Construction must not be employed in case of Neuter Adjectives used substantively. Thus regularly —

**philosophi cupidi sunt verum investigandi**, philosophers are eager for discovering truth (rarely **veri investigandi**) ;  
**studium plura cognoscendi**, a desire of knowing more (not **plurium cognoscendorum**).

4. From the nature of the case only Transitive Verbs can be used in the Gerundive Construction ; but **toror**, **frigor**, **fungor**, **potior** (originally transitive) regularly admit it ; as, —

**hostes in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant**, the enemy had conceived the hope of gaining possession of the camp.

5. The Genitives **mei**, **tui**, **sui**, **nostri**, **vestri**, when used in the Gerundive Construction, are regularly employed without reference to Gender or Number, since they were originally Neuter Singular Adjectives used substantively. Thus : —

**mulier sui servandi causā aufugit**, the woman fled for the sake of saving herself ;

**legati in castra venerunt sui purgandi causā**, the envoys came into camp for the purpose of clearing themselves ;

So **nostri servandi causā**, for the sake of saving ourselves.

6. Occasionally the Genitive of the Gerundive Construction is used to denote *purpose* ; as, —

**si arborum trunci sive navēs dēciendī operis essent a barbaris missae**, if trunks of trees or boats should be sent down by the barbarians for the purpose of destroying the structure.

7. The Dative of the Gerundive Construction occurs in some expressions which have the character of formulas ; as, —

**decemviri legibus scribundis**, decemvirs for codifying the laws ;  
**quindecimviri sacris faciundis**, quindecimvirs for performing the sacrifices.

## THE SUPINE.

**340.** 1. The Supine in **-um** is used after Verbs of motion to express *purpose*; as, —

**lēgātī ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt**, *envoys came to Caesar to congratulate him.*

*a.* The Supine in **-um** may take an Object; as, —

**pācem petītum orātōrēs Rōmam mittunt**, *they send envoys to Rome to ask for peace.*

*b.* Note the phrase: —

**dō (collocō) filiam nūptum**, *I give my daughter in marriage.*

2. The Supine in **-ū** is used as an Ablative of Specification with **facilis**, **difficilis**, **incrēdibilis**, **jūcundus**, **optimus**, *etc.*; also with **fās est**, **nefās est**, **opus est**; as, —

**haec rēs est facilis cognitū**, *this thing is easy to learn;*

**hōc est optimum factū**, *this is best to do.*

*a.* Only a few Supines in **-ū** are in common use, chiefly **audītū**, **cognitū**, **dictū**, **factū**, **vīsū**.

*b.* The Supine in **-ū** never takes an Object.

CHAPTER VI. — *Particles.*

## COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

**341. Copulative Conjunctions.** These *join* one word, phrase, or clause to another.

1. *a)* **et** simply connects.

*b)* **-que** joins more closely than **et**, and is used especially where the two members have an internal connection with each other; as, —

**parentēs liberīque**, *parents and children;*

**cum hominēs aestū febrīque jactantur**, *when people are tossed about with heat and fever.*

- c) **atque (ac)** usually emphasizes the second of the two things connected, — *and also, and indeed, and in fact*. After words of *likeness* and *difference* **atque (ac)** has the force of *as, than*. Thus: —  
**ego idem sentiō ac tū, I think the same as you;**  
**haud aliter ac, not otherwise than.**
- d) **neque (nec)** means *and not, neither, nor*.
2. a) **-que** is an enclitic, and is appended always to the second of two words connected. Where it connects phrases or clauses it is appended to the first word of the second clause; but when the first word of the second clause is a Preposition, **-que** is regularly appended to the next following word; as, —  
**ob eamque rem, and on account of that thing.**
- b) **atque** is used before vowels and consonants; **ac** never before vowels, and seldom before **c, g, qu**.
- c) **et nōn** is used for **neque** when the emphasis of the negative rests upon a special word; as, —  
**vetus et nōn ignōbilis ōrātor, an old and not ignoble orator.**
- d) For *and nowhere, and never, and none*, the Latin regularly said **nec ūsquam, nec umquam, nec ūllus, etc.**

3. **Correlatives.** Copulative Conjunctions are frequently used correlatively; as, —

**et . . . et, both . . . and;**  
**neque (nec) . . . neque (nec), neither . . . nor;**  
**cum . . . tum, while . . . at the same time;**  
**tum . . . tum, not only . . . but also.**

Less frequently: —

**et . . . neque;                      neque . . . et.**

- a. Note that the Latin, with its tendency to emphasize antithetical relations, often uses correlatives, especially **et . . . et, et . . . neque**, where the English employs but a single connective.
4. **In enumerations —**
- a) The different members of a series may follow one another without connectives (Asyndeton; see § 346). Thus: —  
**ex cupiditātibus odia, discidia, discordiae, sēditionēs,**  
**bella nāscuntur, from covetous desires spring up hatred,**  
**dissensions, discord, sedition, wars.**

- b) The different members may severally be connected by **et** (Polysyndeton). Thus:—

**hōrae cēdunt et diēs et mōnsēs et annī**, *hours and days and years and months pass away.*

- c) The connective may be omitted between the former members, while the last two are connected by **-que** (rarely **et**); as,—

**Caesar in Carnūtēs, Andēs Turonēseque legiōnēs addūcit**, *Caesar leads his legions into the territory of the Carnutes, Andes, and Turones.*

### 342. Disjunctive Conjunctions indicate an *alternative*.

1. a) **aut** must be used when the alternatives are mutually exclusive; as,—

**cita mors venit aut victōria laeta**, (*either*) *swift death or glad victory comes.*

- b) **vel**, **-ve** (enclitic) imply a choice between the alternatives; as,—

**quī aethēr vel caelum nōminātur**, *which is called aether or heaven.*

2. **Correlatives**. Disjunctive Conjunctions are often used correlatively; as,—

**aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*;  
**vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or*;  
**sive . . . sive**, *if . . . . . or if*.

### 343. Adversative Conjunctions. These denote *opposition*.

1. a) **sed**, *but*, merely denotes opposition.  
 b) **vērūm**, *but*, is stronger than **sed**, but is less frequently used.  
 c) **autem**, *but on the other hand, however*, marks a transition. It is always post-positive.

**DEFINITION**. A post-positive word is one that cannot begin a sentence, but is placed after one or more words.

- d) **at**, *but*, is used especially in disputation, to introduce an opposing argument.  
 e) **atquē** means *but yet*.  
 f) **tamen**, *yet*, usually stands after the emphatic word, but not always.  
 g) **vērō**, *however, indeed, in truth*, is always post-positive.

2. Note the correlative expressions : —

**nōn solum (nōn modo) . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also* ;  
**nōn modo nōn . . . sed nē . . . quidem**, *not only not, but not even* ; as, —

**nōn modo tibi nōn irāscor, sed nē reprehendō quidem factum tuum**, *I not only am not angry with you, but I do not even blame your action.*

a. But when the sentence has but one verb, and this stands with the second member, **nōn modo** may be used for **nōn modo nōn** ; as, —

**adsententiō nōn modo amicō sed nē liberō quidem digna est**, *flattery is not only (not) worthy of a friend, but not even of a free man.*

**344. Illative Conjunctions.** These represent the statement which they introduce as *following from* or as *in conformity with* what has preceded.

1. a) **itaque** = *and so, accordingly.*  
 b) **ergō** = *therefore, accordingly.*  
 c) **igitur** (regularly post-positive<sup>1</sup>) = *therefore, accordingly.*

2. **Igitur** is never combined with **et**, **atque**, **-que**, or **neque**.

**345. Causal Conjunctions.** These denote *cause*, or *give an explanation*. They are **nam**, **namque**, **enim** (post-positive), **etenim**, *for*.

**346. Asyndeton.** The conjunction is sometimes omitted between coordinate members, particularly in lively or impassioned narration. Thus : —

a) A Copulative Conjunction is omitted ; as, —  
**avaritia infīnīta, insatiābilis est**, *avarice is boundless (and) insatiable* ;

**Cn. Pompējō, M. Crassō cōsulibus**, *in the consulship of Gnaeus Pompey (and) Marcus Crassus.*

The conjunction is regularly omitted between the names of consuls when the praenomen (*Mārcus, Gāius, etc.*) is expressed.

- b) An Adversative Conjunction may be omitted ; as, —  
**rationēs dēfuerunt, ūbertās orātiōnis nōn dēfuit**, *arguments were lacking, (but) abundance of words was not.*

<sup>1</sup> Except in Sallust and Silver Latin.

## ADVERBS.

347. 1. The following particles, sometimes classed as Conjunctions, are more properly Adverbs:—

**etiam**, *also, even*.

**quoque** (always post-positive), *also*.

**quidem** (always post-positive) lays stress upon the preceding word.

It is sometimes equivalent to the English *indeed, in fact*, but more frequently cannot be rendered, except by vocal emphasis.

**nē . . . quidem** means *not even*; the emphatic word or phrase always stands between; as, **nē ille quidem**, *not even he*.

**tamen** and **vērō**, in addition to their use as Conjunctions, are often employed as Adverbs.

2. **Negatives**. Two Negatives are regularly equivalent to an affirmative as in English, as **nōn nūllī**, *some*; but when **nōn**, **nēmō**, **nihil**, **numquam**, *etc.*, are accompanied by **neque . . . neque**, **nōn . . . nōn**, **nōn modo**, or **nē . . . quidem**, the latter particles simply take up the negation and emphasize it; as, —

**habeō hic nēminem neque amicum neque cognātum**, *I have here no one, neither friend nor relative*.

**nōn enim praetereundum est nē id quidem**, *for not even that must be passed by*.

a. **Haud** in Cicero and Caesar occurs almost exclusively as a modifier of Adjectives and Adverbs, and in the phrase **haud sciō an**. Later writers use it freely with verbs.



## CHAPTER VII. — *Word-Order and Sentence-Structure.*

### A. WORD-ORDER.

348. In the normal arrangement of the Latin sentence the Subject stands at the beginning of the sentence, the Predicate at the end; as, —

**Darius classem quingentarum navium comparavit**, *Darius got ready a fleet of five hundred ships*.

349. But for the sake of emphasis the normal arrangement is often abandoned, and the emphatic word is put at the beginning, less frequently at the end of the sentence; as, —

**māgnus in hōc bellō Themistoclēs fuit**, GREAT was Themistocles in this war;  
**aliud iter habēmus nūllum**, other course we have NONE.

### SPECIAL PRINCIPLES.

350. 1. **Nouns.** A Genitive or other oblique case regularly follows the word upon which it depends. Thus: —

a) Depending upon a Noun: —

**tribūnus plēbis**, *tribune of the plebs*;  
**filius rēgis**, *son of the king*;  
**vir māgnī animī**, *a man of noble spirit*.

Yet always **senātūs cōsultum**, *plēbis scītum*.

b) Depending upon an Adjective: —

**ignārus rērum**, *ignorant of affairs*;  
**dignī amīcitiā**, *worthy of friendship*;  
**plūs aequō**, *more than (what is) fair*.

2. **Appositives.** An Appositive regularly follows its Subject; as, —

**Philippus, rēx Macedonum**, *Philip, king of the Macedonians*;  
**adsentātiō, vitiōrum adjūtrix**, *flattery, promoter of evils*.

Yet **flūmen Rhēnus**, *the River Rhine*; and always in good prose **urbs Rōma**, *the city Rome*.

3. The **Vocative** usually follows one or more words; as, —

**Audī, Caesar**, *hear, Caesar!*

4. **Adjectives.** No general law can be laid down for the position of Adjectives. On the whole they precede the noun oftener than they follow it.

a. Adjectives of *quantity* (including *numerals*) regularly precede their noun; as, —

**omnēs hominēs**, *all men*;  
**septingentae nāvēs**, *seven hundred vessels*.

- b. Note the force of position in the following : —  
**media urbs**, *the middle of the city* ;  
**urbs media**, *the middle city* ;  
**extrēmum bellum**, *the end of the war* ;  
**bellum extrēmum**, *the last war*.
- c. **Rōmānus** and **Latīnus** regularly follow ; as, —  
**senātus populusque Rōmānus**, *the Roman Senate and People* ;  
**lūdī Rōmānī**, *the Roman games* ;  
**fēriæ Latīnae**, *the Latin holidays*.
- d. When a Noun is modified both by an Adjective and by a Genitive, a favorite order is : Adjective, Genitive, Noun ; as, —  
**summa omnium rērum abundantia**, *the greatest abundance of all things*.
5. **Pronouns.**
- a. The Demonstrative, Relative, and Interrogative Pronouns regularly precede the Noun ; as, —  
**hic homō**, *this man* ;  
**ille homō**, *that man* ;  
**erant duo itinera, quibus itineribus**, *etc., there were two routes, by which, etc.*  
**quī homō?** *what sort of a man?*
- b. But **ille** in the sense of ‘*that well known*,’ ‘*that famous*,’ usually stands after its Noun ; as, —  
**testula illa**, *that well-known custom of ostracism* ;  
**Mēdēa illa**, *that famous Medea*.
- c. Possessive and Indefinite Pronouns usually follow their Noun ; as, —  
**pater meus**, *my father* ;  
**homō quīdam**, *a certain man* ;  
**mulier aliqua**, *some woman*.  
 But for purposes of contrast the Possessive often precedes its Noun ; as, —  
**meus pater**, *my father* (*i.e.* as opposed to *yours, his, etc.*).
- d. Where two or more Pronouns occur in the same sentence, the Latin is fond of putting them in close proximity ; as, —  
**nisi forte ego vōbīs cessāre videor**, *unless perchance I seem to you to be doing nothing*.



6. Adverbs and Adverbial phrases regularly precede the word they modify ; as, —

**valdē diligēns**, *extremely diligent* ;  
**saepe dixi**, *I have often said* ;  
**tē jam diū hortāmur**, *we have long been urging you* ;  
**paulō post**, *a little after*.

7. **Prepositions** regularly precede the words they govern.

a. But limiting words often intervene between the Preposition and its case ; as, —

**dē commūni hominum memoriā**, *concerning the common memory of men* ;  
**ad beatē vivendum**, *for living happily*.

b. When a noun is modified by an Adjective, the Adjective is often placed before the preposition ; as, —

**māgnō in dolōre**, *in great grief* ;  
**summā cum laude**, *with the highest credit* ;  
**quā dē causā**, *for which cause* ;  
**hanc ob rem**, *on account of this thing*.

c. For Anastrophe, by which a Preposition is put after its case, see § 144. 3.

8. **Conjunctions**. **Autem**, **enim**, and **igitur** regularly stand in the second place in the sentence, but when combined with **est** or **sunt** they often stand third ; as, —

**ita est enim**, *for so it is*.

9. Words or Phrases referring to the preceding sentence or to some part of it, regularly stand first ; as, —

**id ut audīvit**, **Corcȳram dēmigrāvit**, *when he heard that (referring to the contents of the preceding sentence), he moved to Corcyra* ;  
**eō cum Caesar vēnisset**, **timentēs cōnfirmit**, *when Caesar had come thither (i.e. to the place just mentioned), he encouraged the timid*.

10. The Latin has a fondness for putting side by side words which are etymologically related ; as, —

**ut ad senem senex dē senectūte**, **sic hōc librō ad amīcum amīcissimus dē amīcitiā scripsī**, *as I, an old man, wrote to an old man, on old age, so in this book, as a fond friend, I have written to a friend concerning friendship*.

11. Special rhetorical devices for indicating emphasis are the following:—

- a) **Hypérbaton**, which consists in the separation of words that regularly stand together; as,—

**septimus mihi Originum liber est in manibus**, *the seventh book of my 'Origines' is under way*;  
**receptō Caesar Ōricō proficiāscitur**, *having recovered Oricus, Caesar set out*.

- b) **Anáphora**, which consists in the repetition of the same word or the same word-order in successive phrases; as,—

**sed plēnī omnēs sunt librī, plēnae sapientium vōcēs, plēna exemplōrum vetustās**, *but all books are full of it, the voices of sages are full of it, antiquity is full of examples of it*.

- c) **Chiasmus**,<sup>1</sup> which consists in changing the relative order of words in two antithetical phrases; as,—

**multōs dēfendī, laesi nōminem**, *many have I defended, I have injured no one*;  
**horribilem illum diem aliīs, nōbīs faustum**, *that day dreadful to others, for us fortunate*.

- d) **Sýnchysis**, or the interlocked arrangement. This is mostly confined to poetry, yet occurs in rhetorical prose, especially that of the Imperial Period; as,—

**simulātam Pompējānārum grātiā partium**, *pretended interest in the Pompeian party*.

12. **Metrical Close**. At the end of a sentence certain cadences were avoided; others were much employed. Thus:—

- a) Cadences avoided.

— ∪ ∪ — ∪; as, **esse vidētur** (close of hexameter).  
 — ∪ ∪ ∪; as, **esse potest** (close of pentameter).

- b) Cadences frequently employed.

— ∪ —; as, **auxerant**.  
 — ∪ — ∪; as, **comprobāvit**.  
 — ∪ ∪ ∪ — ∪; as, **esse vidētur**.  
 ∪ — — ∪ —; as, **rogātū tuō**.

<sup>1</sup> So named from a fancied analogy to the strokes of the Greek letter X (*chi*).  
 Thus:—

multōs laesi  
 dēfendī nēminem

## B. SENTENCE-STRUCTURE.

**351. 1. Unity of Subject.** — In complex sentences the Latin regularly holds to unity of Subject in the different members ; as, —

**Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equis, ut aequatō periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suōs proelium commisit,** *Caesar having first removed his own horse from sight, then the horses of all, in order, by making the danger equal, to take away hope of flight, encouraged his men and joined battle.*

2. A word serving as the common Subject or Object of the main clause and a subordinate one, stands before both ; as, —

**Aedui cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt,** *since the Aedui could not defend themselves, they sent envoys to Caesar ;*

**ille etsi flāgrābat bellandī cupiditāte, tamen pāci serviendum putāvit,** *although he was burning with a desire to fight, yet he thought he ought to aim at peace.*

a. The same is true also

1) When the Subject of the main clause is Object (Direct or Indirect) of a subordinate clause ; as, —

**Caesar, cum hōc eī nūntiatum esset, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci,** *when this had been reported to Caesar he hastened to set out from the city.*

2) When the Subject of a subordinate clause is at the same time the Object (Direct or Indirect) of the main clause ; as, —

**L. Manliō, cum dictātor fuisset, M. Pompōnius tribūnus plēbis diem dīxit,** *M. Pomponius, tribune of the people, instituted proceedings against Lucius Manlius though he had been dictator.*

3. Of subordinate clauses, temporal, conditional, and adversative clauses more commonly precede the main clause ; indirect questions and clauses of purpose or result more commonly follow ; as, —

**postquam haec dīxit, profectus est,** *after he said this, he set out ;*  
**sī quis ita agat, imprūdēns sit,** *if any one should act so, he would be devoid of foresight ;*

**accidit ut ūnā nocte omnēs Hermae dēicerentur,** *it happened that in a single night all the Hermae were thrown down.*

4. Sometimes in Latin the main verb is placed within the subordinate clause; as, —

**sī quid est in mē ingenī, quod sentiō quam sit exiguum, if there is any talent in me, and I know how little it is.**

5. **The Latin Period.** The term Period, when strictly used, designates a compound sentence in which the subordinate clauses are inserted within the main clause; as, —

**Caesar etsī intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dicerentur, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēverīs cōnsūmere cōgerētur, Indutiomarum ad sē venīre iussit, though Caesar perceived why this was said, yet, lest he should be forced to spend the summer among the Trevēri, he ordered Indutiomarus to come to him.**

In the Periodic structure the thought is suspended until the end of the sentence is reached. Many Roman writers were extremely fond of this sentence-structure, and it was well adapted to the inflectional character of their language; in English we generally avoid it.

6. When there are several subordinate clauses in one Period, the Latin so arranges them as to avoid a succession of verbs. Thus: —

**At hostēs cum mīssissent, quī, quae in castrīs gererentur, cognōscerent, ubi sē dēceptōs intellēxērunt, omnibus cōpiīs subsecūtī ad flūmen contendunt, but the enemy when they had sent men to learn what was going on in camp, after discovering that they had been outwitted, followed with all their forces and hurried to the river.**



## CHAPTER VIII. — Hints on Latin Style.

**352.** In this chapter brief consideration is given to a few features of Latin diction which belong rather to style than to formal grammar.

### NOUNS.

**353.** 1. Where a distinct reference to several persons or things is involved, the Latin is frequently *much more exact in the use of the Plural* than is the English; as, —

**domōs eunt**, *they go home (i.e. to their homes)*;  
**Germanī corpora cūrant**, *the Germans care for the body*;  
**animōs militum recreat**, *he renews the courage of the soldiers*;  
**diēs noctēsque timēre**, *to be in a state of fear day and night*.

2. In case of Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives used substantively, the Latin often employs the Plural where the English uses the Singular; as,—

**omnia sunt perdita**, *everything is lost*;  
**quae cum ita sint**, *since this is so*;  
**haec omnibus pervulgata sunt**, *this is very well known to all*.

3. The Latin is usually *more concrete* than the English, and especially *less bold in the personification* of abstract qualities. Thus:—

**ā puerō, ā pueris**, *from boyhood*;  
**Sullā dictātōre**, *in Sulla's dictatorship*;  
**mē duce**, *under my leadership*;  
**Rōmānī cum Carthāginiēnsibus pācem fēcērunt** = *Rome made peace with Carthage*;  
**liber doctrīnae plēnus** = *a learned book*;  
**prudentiā Themistoclis Graecia servata est** = *Themistocles's foresight saved Greece*.

4. The Nouns of Agency in **-tor** and **-sor** (see § 147, 1) denote a *permanent* or *characteristic activity*; as,—

**accūsātōrēs** (*professional*) *accusers*;  
**ōrātōrēs**, *pleaders*;  
**cantōrēs**, *singers*;  
**Arminius, Germāniae liberātor**, *Arminius, liberator of Germany*.

a. To denote *single instances* of an action, other expressions are commonly employed; as,—

**Numa, quī Rōmulō successit**, *Numa, successor of Romulus*;  
**quī mea legunt**, *my readers*;  
**quī mē audiunt**, *my auditors*.

5. The Latin avoids the use of prepositional phrases as modifiers of a Noun. In English we say: '*The war against Carthage*'; '*a journey through Gaul*'; '*cities on the sea*'; '*the book in my hands*'; '*the fight at Salamis*'; etc. The Latin in such cases usually employs another mode of expression. Thus:—

a) A Genitive; as,—

**dolor injuriarū**, *resentment at injuries*.

- b) An Adjective ; as, —  
*urbēs maritimae, cities on the sea ;*  
*pūgna Salaminia, the fight at Salamis.*
- c) A Participle ; as, —  
*pūgna ad Cannās facta, the battle at Cannae.*
- d) A Relative clause ; as, —  
*liber quī in meis manibus est, the book in my hands.*

NOTE. — Yet within certain limits the Latin does employ Prepositional phrases as Noun modifiers. This is particularly frequent when the governing noun is derived from a verb. The following are typical examples :—

*trānsitus in Britanniam, the passage to Britain ;*  
*excessus ē vitā, departure from life ;*  
*odium ergā Rōmānōs, hatred of the Romans ;*  
*liber dē senectūte, the book on old age ;*  
*amor in patriam, love for one's country.*

### ADJECTIVES.

354. I. Special Latin Equivalents for English Adjectives are —

- a) A Genitive ; as, —  
*virtūtēs animī = moral virtues ;*  
*dolōrēs corporis = bodily ills.*
- b) An Abstract Noun ; as, —  
*novitās rei = the strange circumstance ;*  
*asperitās viārum = rough roads.*
- c) Hendiadys (see § 374, 4) ; as, —  
*ratio et ordo = systematic order ;*  
*ardor et impetus = eager onset.*
- d) Sometimes an Adverb ; as, —  
*omnēs circā populī, all the surrounding tribes ;*  
*suos semper hostēs, their perpetual foes.*

2. Often a Latin Noun is equivalent to an English Noun modified by an Adjective ; as, —

*doctrīna, theoretical knowledge ;*      *prudentia, practical knowledge ;*  
*oppidum, walled town ;*                      *libellus, little book*

3. Adjectives are not used in immediate agreement with proper names; but an Adjective may limit **vir**, **homō**, **ille**, or some other word used as an Appositive of a proper name; as, —

**Sōcratēs**, **homō sapiēs** = *the wise Socrates*;

**Scipiō**, **vir fortissimus** = *the doughty Scipio*;

**Syrācūsae**, **urbs praeclārissima** = *famous Syracuse*.

4. An Adjective *may be* equivalent to a Possessive Genitive; as, —  
**pāstor rēgius**, *the shepherd of the king*;  
**tumultus servīlis**, *the uprising of the slaves*.

### PRONOUNS.

355. In Compound Sentences the Relative Pronoun has a fondness for connecting itself with the subordinate clause rather than the main one; as, —

**ā quō cum quaererētur, quid māximē expedīret, respondit**, *when it was asked of him what was best, he replied*. (Less commonly, **quī, cum ab eō quaererētur, respondit**.)

2. **Uterque, ambō**. **Uterque** means *each of two*; **ambō** means *both*; as, —

**uterque frāter abiit**, *each of the two brothers departed* (*i.e.* separately);

**ambō frātrēs abiērunt**, *i.e.* the two brothers departed together.

a. The Plural of **uterque** occurs —

1) With Nouns used only in the Plural (see § 56); as, —  
**in utrīque castrīs**, *in each camp*.

2) Where there is a distinct reference to two groups of persons or things; as, —

**utrīque ducēs clārī fuērunt**, *the generals on each side* (*several in number*) *were famous*.

### VERBS.

356. 1. In case of Defective and Deponent Verbs a Passive is supplied: —

a) By the corresponding verbal Nouns in combination with **esse**, *etc.*; as, —

**in odiō sumus**, *we are hated*;

**in invidiā sum**, *I am envied*;

**admīrātiōnī** est, *he is admired*;  
**oblīviōne** obruitur, *he is forgotten* (lit. *is overwhelmed by oblivion*);  
**in ūsū** esse, *to be used*.

- b) By the Passive of Verbs of related meaning. Thus:—  
**agitārī** as Passive of **persequī**;  
**temptārī** as Passive of **adorārī**.

2. The lack of the Perfect Active Participle in Latin is supplied —

- a) Sometimes by the Perfect Passive Participle of the Dependent; as,—  
**adhortātus**, *having exhorted*;  
**veritus**, *having feared*.

- b) By the Ablative Absolute; as,—  
**hostium agrīs vāstātīs** Caesar exercitum redūxit, *having ravaged the country of the enemy, Caesar led back his army*.

- c) By subordinate clauses; as,—  
**eō cum advēnisset**, castra posuit, *having arrived there, he pitched a camp*;  
**hostēs quī in urbem irrūperant**, *the enemy having burst into the city*.

3. The Latin agrees with English in the stylistic employment of the Second Person Singular in an indefinite sense (= 'one'). Cf. the English 'You can drive a horse to water, but you can't make him drink.' But in Latin this use is mainly confined to certain varieties of the Subjunctive, especially the Potential (§ 280), Jussive (§ 275), Deliberative (§ 277), and the Subjunctive in conditional sentences of the sort included under § 302, 2, and 303. Examples:—

**vidērēs**, *you could see*;  
**ūtāre vīribus** *use your strength*;  
**quid hōc homine faciās**, *what are you to do with this man?*  
**mēns quoque et animus, nisi tamquam lūminī oleum instillēs**  
**exstinguuntur senectūte**, *the intellect and mind too are extinguished by old age, unless, so to speak, you keep pouring oil into the lamp*;  
**tantō amōre possessiōnēs suās amplexī tenēbant**, *ut ab eīs membra dīvellī citius posse dīcerēs*, *they clung to their possessions with such an affectionate embrace, that you would have said their limbs could sooner be torn from their bodies*.



### PECULIARITIES IN THE USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

357. 1. To denote 'so many years, etc., afterwards or before' the Latin employs not merely the Ablative of Degree of Difference with *post* and *ante* (see § 223), but has other forms of expression. Thus:—

*post quinque annōs, five years afterward;*

*paucōs ante diēs, a few days before;*

*ante quadriennium, four years before;*

*post diem quartum quam ab urbe discessimus, four days after we left the city;*

*ante tertium annum quam dēcesserat, three years before he had died.*

2. The Latin seldom combines both Subject and Object with the same Infinitive; as, —

**Rōmānōs Hannibalem vīcissee cōnstat.**

Such a sentence would be ambiguous, and might mean either that the Romans had conquered Hannibal, or that Hannibal had conquered the Romans. Perspicuity was gained by the use of the Passive Infinitive; as, —

**Rōmānōs ab Hannibale victōs esse cōnstat, it is well established that the Romans were defeated by Hannibal.**

### PECULIARITIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OF THE DATIVE.

358. 1. The English *for* does not always correspond to a Dative notion in Latin, but is often the equivalent of *prō* with the Ablative, *viz.* in the senses —

a) *In defense of; as, —*

**prō patriā morī, to die for one's country.**

b) *Instead of, in behalf of; as, —*

**ūnus prō omnibus dixit, one spoke for all.**

**haec prō lēge dicta sunt, these things were said in behalf of the law.**

c) *In proportion to; as, —*

**prō multitudīne hominum, in proportion to the population.**

2. Similarly, English *to* when it indicates motion is rendered in Latin by *ad*.

a. Note, however, that the Latin may say either *scribere ad aliquem*, or *scribere alicui*, according as the idea of motion is or is not predominant. So in several similar expressions.

3. In the poets, verbs of *mingling with*, *contending with*, sometimes take the Dative. This construction is a Grecism. Thus:—

*sē miscet virīs*, *he mingles with the men*;  
*contendis Homērō*, *you contend with Homer*.

### PECULIARITIES IN THE USE OF THE GENITIVE.

359. 1. The Possessive Genitive gives emphasis to the *possessor*, the Dative of Possessor emphasizes *the fact of possession*; as,—

*hortus patris est*, *the garden is my father's*;  
*mihi hortus est*, *I possess a garden*.

2. The Latin can say either *stultī* or *stultum est dicere*, *it is foolish to say*; but Adjectives of one ending permit only the Genitive; as,—

*sapientis est haec sēcum reputāre*, *it is the part of a wise man to consider this*.

## PART VI.

---

### PROSODY.

---

**360.** Prosody treats of metres and versification.

**361. Latin Verse.** Latin Poetry was essentially different in character from English. In our own language poetry is based upon *accent*, and poetical form consists essentially in a certain succession of *accented* and *unaccented* syllables. Latin poetry, on the other hand, was based not upon accent, but upon *quantity*, so that with the Romans poetical form consisted in a certain succession of *long and short syllables*, *i.e.* of long and short intervals of time.

This fundamental difference in the character of English and Latin poetry is a natural result of the difference in character of the two languages. English is a strongly accented language in which quantity is relatively subordinate. Latin, on the other hand, was a quantitative language, in which accent was relatively subordinate.

### QUANTITY OF VOWELS AND SYLLABLES.

#### GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

**362.** The general principles for the quantity of vowels and syllables have been given above in § 5. The following peculiarities are to be noted here:—

1. A vowel is usually short when followed by another vowel (§ 5. A. 2), but the following exceptions occur:—

- a) In the Genitive termination **-ius** (except **alterius**); as, **illius**, **tōtius**. Yet the **i** may be short in poetry; as, **illius**, **tōtius**.
- b) In the Genitive and Dative Singular of the Fifth Declension; as, **diēi**, **aciēi**. But **fidēi**, **rēi**, **spēi** (§ 52, 1).
- c) In **fiō**, excepting **fit** and forms where **i** is followed by **er**. Thus: **fiēbam**, **fiat**, **fiunt**; but **flerī**, **flerem**.
- d) In a few other words, especially words derived from the Greek; as, **dīus**, **Aenēas**, **Darēus**, **hērōes**, etc.

2. A diphthong is usually long (§ 5. B. 2), but the preposition **prae** in composition is often shortened before a vowel; as, **prāeacūtus**.

3. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two consonants (§ 5. B. 2) is long, even when one of the consonants is in the following word; as, **terret populum**. Occasionally the syllable is long when both consonants are in the following word; as, **prō segete spīcās**.

4. A vowel before **j** is regularly long, but is short in compounds of **jugum**; as, **bījugis**, **quadrījugis**.

5. Compounds of **jaciō**, though written **inicit**, **adicit**, etc., have the first syllable long, as though written **inj-**, **adj-**. The actual pronunciation of such words is not clear. **Rēiciō** has **ē**.

### Quantity of Final Syllables.

#### A. Final Syllables ending in a Vowel.

**363.** 1. Final **a** is mostly short, but is long in the following situations:—

- a) In the Ablative Singular of the First Declension; as, **portā**.
- b) In the Imperative; as, **laudā**.
- c) In indeclinable words (except **itā**, **quā**); as, **trīgintā**, **contrā**, **postea**, **interea**, etc.

2. Final **e** is usually short, but is long—

- a) In the Ablative Singular of the Fifth Declension; as, **diē**, **rē**; hence **hodiē**, **quārē**. Here belongs also **famē** (§ 59. 2. b).
- b) In the Imperative of the Second Conjugation; as, **monē**, **habē**, etc.; yet occasionally **cavē**, **valē**.
- c) In Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the Second Declension, along with **ferē** and **fermē**. **Benē**, **malē**, **temerē**, **saepē** have **e**.
- d) In **ē**, **dē**, **mē**, **tē**, **sē**, **nē** (*not, lest*), **nē** (*verily*).

3. Final **i** is usually long, but is short in **niſi** and **quaſi**. **Mihi**, **tibi**, **sibi**, **ibi**, **ubi**, have regularly **i**, but sometimes **i**; yet always **ibiſdem**, **ibiſque**, **ubiſque**.

4. Final **o** is regularly long, but is short —

a) In **egō**, **duō**, **modō** (*only*), **citō**.

b) Rarely in the First Person Singular of the Verb, and in Nominatives of the Third Declension; as, **amō**, **leō**.

c) In a few compounds beginning with the Preposition **pro**; as, **prōfundere**, **prōficiſci**, **prōfugere**.

5. Final **u** is always long.

#### B. Final Syllables ending in a Conſonant.

**364.** 1. Final syllables ending in any other conſonant than **s** are ſhort. The following words, however, have a long vowel: **sāl**, **sōl**, **Lār**, **pār**, **vēr**, **fūr**, **dīc**, **dūc**, **lāc**, **ēn**, **nōn**, **quīn**, **sīn**, **sīc**, **cūr**, **hīc**<sup>1</sup> (*this*). Also adverbs in **c**; as, **hīc**, **hūc**, **iſtīc**, **illūc**, *etc.*

2. Final ſyllables in **-as** are long; as, **terrās**, **amās**.

3. Final ſyllables in **-es** are regularly long, but are ſhort —

a) In the Nominative and Vocative Singular of dental ſtems (§ 33) of the Third Declenſion which have a ſhort penult in the Genitive; as, **ſegēs** (*ſegetis*), **obſēs** (*obſidis*), **mīlēs**, **dīvēs**. But a few have **-ēs**; *viz.* **pēs**, **ariēs**, **abiēs**, **pariēs**.

b) In **ēs** (*thou art*), **penēs**.

4. Final **-os** is uſually long, but ſhort in **ōs** (*ossis*), **compōs**, **impōs**.

5. Final **-is** is uſually ſhort, but is long —

a) In Plurals; as, **portīs**, **hortīs**, **nōbīs**, **vōbīs**, **nūbīs** (Acc.).

b) In the Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Third Declenſion with long vowel in the Penult of the Genitive; as, **Samnīs** (*-itis*).

c) In the Second Perſon Singular Preſent Indicative Active of the Fourth Conjugation; as, **audīs**.

d) In **vīs**, *force*; **īs**, *thou goeſt*; **ſīs**; **vellīs**; **nōllīs**; **vīs**, *thou wilt*; (**māvīs**, **quamvīs**, **quīvīs**, *etc.*).

6. Final **-us** is uſually ſhort, but is long —

a) In the Genitive Singular and in the Nominative, Accuſative, and Vocative Plural of the Fourth Declenſion; as, **fructūs**.

<sup>1</sup> Rarely **hīc**.

- δ) In the Nominative and Vocative Singular of those nouns of the Third Declension in which the *u* belongs to the stem; as, *palūs* (-ūdis), *servitūs* (-ūtis), *tellūs* (-ūris).

**365. Greek Nouns** retain in Latin their original quantity; as, *Aenēā*, *epitomē*, *Dēlos*, *Pallas*, *Simōis*, *Salamīs*, *Didūs*, *Paridī*, *āēr*, *aethēr*, *crātēr*, *hērōās*. Yet Greek nouns in *-ω* regularly shorten the vowel; as, *rhētōr*, *Hectōr*.

## VERSE-STRUCTURE.

### GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

**366. 1.** The metrical unit in versification is a short syllable, technically called a *mora* (∪). A long syllable (—) is regarded as equivalent to two *morae*.

**2.** A **Foot** is a group of syllables. The following are the most important kinds of feet:—

#### FEET OF THREE MORAE.

— ∪ Trochee.  
∪ — Iambus.

#### FEET OF FOUR MORAE.

— ∪ ∪ Dactyl.  
∪ ∪ — Anapaest.

**3.** A **Verse** is a succession of feet.

**4.** The different kinds of verses are named Trochaic, Iambic, Dactylic, Anapaestic, according to the foot which forms the basis of their structure.

**5. Ictus.** In every foot the long syllable naturally receives the greater prominence. This prominence is called *ictus*.<sup>1</sup> It is denoted thus: ∠ ∪ ∪; ∠ ∪.

**6. Thesis and Arsis.** The syllable which receives the ictus is called the *thesis*; the rest of the foot is called the *arsis*.

**7. Elision.** Final syllables ending in a vowel, a diphthong, or *-m* are regularly elided before a word beginning with a vowel or *h*. In reading, we ordinarily omit the elided syllable entirely. Probably the ancients slurred the words together in some way. This may be indicated as follows: *corpore in ūnō*; *multum ille et*; *mōnstrum horrendum*; *causae irārum*.

- a. Omission of elision is called *hiatus*. It occurs especially before and after monosyllabic Interjections; as, *Ō et praesidium*.

<sup>1</sup> Ictus was not accent,—neither stress accent nor musical accent,—but was simply the quantitative prominence inherent in a long syllable.

8. The ending of a word within a foot is called a *caesūra* (*cutting*). Every verse usually has one prominent caesura. The ending of a word and foot together within the verse is called a *diaeresis*.

9. Verses are distinguished as Catalectic or Acatalectic. A Catalectic verse is one in which the last foot is not complete, but lacks one or more syllables; an Acatalectic verse has its last foot complete.

10. At the end of a verse a slight pause occurred. Hence the final syllable may be either long or short (*syllaba anceps*), and may terminate in a vowel or *m*, even though the next verse begins with a vowel.

11. Iambic, Trochaic, and Anapaestic verses are further designated as dimeter, trimeter, tetrameter, according to *the number of dipodies* (pairs of feet) which they contain. Dactylic verses are measured by *single feet*, and are designated as tetrameter, pentameter, hexameter, accordingly.

### SPECIAL PECULIARITIES.

367. 1. **Synizōsis (Synaeresis).** Two successive vowels in the interior of a word are often united into a long syllable; as, —

*aureis, deinde, antefre, deesse.*

2. **Diastole.** A syllable usually short is sometimes long; as, —  
*vidēt, audīt.*

3. **Systole.** A syllable usually long is sometimes short; as, —  
*stetērunt.*

*a.* Diastole and Systole are not mere arbitrary processes. They usually represent an earlier pronunciation which had passed out of vogue in the ordinary speech.

4. After a consonant, *i* and *u* sometimes become *j* and *v*. The preceding syllable then becomes long; as, —

*abjete* for *abiete*; *genva* for *genua*.

5. Sometimes *v* becomes *u*; as, —

*silua* for *silva*; *dissoluō* for *dissolvō*.

6. Sometimes a verse has an extra syllable. Such a verse is called an **Hypermeter**. The extra syllable ends in a vowel or *-m*, and is united with the initial vowel or *h* of the next verse by **Synapheia**. Thus:—

..... *ignārī hominumque locōrumque*  
*errāmus.*

7. **Tmesis** (*cutting*). Compound words are occasionally separated into their elements; as, —

**quō mē cunque rapit tempestās**, for **quōcunque**, etc.

8. **Syncope**. A short vowel is sometimes dropped between two consonants; as, —

**repostus** for **repositus**.

### THE DACTYLIC HEXAMETER.

**368.** 1. The Dactylic Hexameter, or Heroic Verse, consists theoretically of six dactyls. But in all the feet except the fifth a spondee (— —) may take the place of the dactyl. The sixth foot may be either a spondee or a trochee, since the final syllable of a verse may be either long or short (**syllaba anceps**). The following represents the scheme of the verse: —

⏏ ⏏, ⏏ ⏏, ⏏ ⏏, ⏏ ⏏, ⏏ ⏏, ⏏ ⏏.

2. Sometimes we find a spondee in the fifth foot. Such verses are called Spondaic. A dactyl usually stands in the fourth place, and the fifth and sixth feet are generally made up of a quadrisyllable; as, —

**armātumque aurō circumspicit Ōrīōna**  
**cāra defūm subolēs, māgnū Jovis incrēmentum.**

### 3. **Caesura.**

a) The favorite position of the caesura in the Dactylic Hexameter is after the thesis of the third foot; as, —

**arma virumque canō || Trōjae quī prīmus ab ōrīs.**

b) Less frequently the caesura occurs after the thesis of the fourth foot, usually accompanied by another in the second foot; as, —

**Inde torō || pater Aenēās || sic ōrsus ab altō est.**

c) Sometimes the caesura occurs between the two short syllables of the third foot; as, —

**Ō passi graviōra || dabit deus hīs quoque finem.**

This caesura is called *Feminine* as opposed to the caesura after a long syllable, which is called *Masculine* (as under *a* and *b*).



- d) A pause sometimes occurs at the end of the fourth foot. This is called the Bucolic Diaeresis, as it was borrowed by the Romans from the Bucolic poetry of the Greeks. Thus: —  
*sōlstitium pecorī dēfendite; || jam venīt aestās.*

### DACTYLIC PENTAMETER.

**369.** 1. The Dactylic Pentameter consists of two parts, each of which contains two dactyls, followed by a long syllable. Spondees may take the place of the dactyls in the first part, but not in the second. The long syllable at the close of the first half of the verse always ends a word. The scheme is the following:—

∠ ∞ ∠ ∞ ∠ || ∠ ∞ ∠ ∞ ∞

2. The Pentameter is never used alone, but only in connection with the Hexameter. The two arranged alternately form the so-called Elegiac Distich. Thus:—

*Vergilium vīdī tantum, nec amāra Tibullō  
 Tempus amicitiae fāta dedēre meae.*

### IAMBIC MEASURES.

**370.** 1. The most important Iambic verse is the **Iambic Trimeter** (§ 366, 11) called also **Senarius**. This is an acatalectic verse. It consists of six Iambi. Its pure form is:—

∪ — ∪ — ∪ — ∪ — ∪ —  
*Beātus ille quī procul negōtiis.*

The Caesura usually occurs in the third foot; less frequently in the fourth.

2. In place of the Iambus, a Tribrach (∪ ∪ ∪) may stand in any foot but the last. In the odd feet (first, third, and fifth) may stand a Spondee, Dactyl, or Anapaest, though the last two are less frequent. Sometimes a Proceleusmatic (∪ ∪ ∪ ∪) occurs.

3. In the Latin comic writers, Plautus and Terence, great freedom is permitted, and the various equivalents of the Iambus, *viz.* the Dactyl, Anapaest, Spondee, Tribrach, Proceleusmatic, are freely admitted in any foot except the last.

## SUPPLEMENTS TO THE GRAMMAR.

### I. JULIAN CALENDAR.

371. 1. The names of the Roman months are : **Jānuārius**, **Februārius**, **Mārtius**, **Aprīlis**, **Māius**, **Jūnius**, **Jūlius** (**Quīntilis**<sup>1</sup> prior to 46 B.C.), **Augustus** (**Sextilis**<sup>1</sup> before the Empire), **September**, **Octōber**, **November**, **December**. These words are properly Adjectives in agreement with **mēnsis** understood.

2. Dates were reckoned from three points in the month : —

- a) The Calends, the first of the month.
- b) The Nones, usually the fifth of the month, but the seventh in March, May, July, and October.
- c) The Ides, usually the thirteenth of the month, but the fifteenth in March, May, July, and October.

3. From these points dates were reckoned backward ; consequently all days after the Ides of any month were reckoned as so many days before the Calends of the month next following.

4. The day before the Calends, Nones, or Ides of any month is designated as **prīdiē Kalendās**, **Nōnās**, **Īdūs**. The second day before was designated as **diē tertiō ante Kalendās**, **Nōnās**, etc. Similarly the third day before was designated as **diē quārtō**, and so on. These designations, of course, are arithmetically inaccurate, but the Romans reckoned both ends of the series.

5. In indicating dates, the name of the month is added in the form of an Adjective agreeing with **Kalendās**, **Nōnās**, **Īdūs**. Various forms of expression occur, of which that given under *d*) is most common : —

- a) **diē quīntō ante Īdūs Mārtiās** ;
- b) **quīntō ante Īdūs Mārtiās** ;
- c) **quīntō (V) Īdūs Mārtiās** ;
- d) **ante diem quīntum (V) Īdūs Mārtiās**.

---

<sup>1</sup> Originally the Roman year began with March. This explains the names **Quīntilis**, **Sextilis**, **September**, etc., *fifth month*, *sixth month*, etc.

6. These designations may be treated as nouns and combined with the prepositions *in*, *ad*, *ex*; *as*, —

*ad ante diem IV Kalendās Octōbrēs*, *up to the 28th of September.*

*ex ante diem quintum Idūs Octōbrēs*, *from the 11th of October.*

7. In leap year the 25th was reckoned as the extra day in February. The 24th was designated as *ante diem VI Kalendās Mārtiās*, and the 25th as *ante diem bis VI Kal. Mārt.*

## 372.

## CALENDAR.

Days of the Month.	March, May, July, October.	January, August, December.	April, June, September, November.	February.
1	KALENDĪS.	KALENDĪS.	KALENDĪS.	KALENDĪS.
2	VI. Nōnās.	IV. Nōnās.	IV. Nōnās.	IV. Nōnās.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Prīdiē Nōnās.	Prīdiē Nōnās.	Prīdiē Nōnās.
5	III. "	NŌNĪS.	NŌNĪS.	NŌNĪS.
6	Prīdiē Nōnās.	VIII. Īdūs.	VIII. Īdūs.	VIII. Īdūs.
7	NŌNĪS.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. Īdūs.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Prīdiē Īdūs.	Prīdiē Īdūs.	Prīdiē Īdūs.
13	III. "	ĪDIBUS.	ĪDIBUS.	ĪDIBUS.
14	Prīdiē Īdūs.	XIX. Kalend.	XVIII. Kalend.	XVI. Kalend.
15	ĪDIBUS.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. Kalend.	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. (VI.) "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. (V.) "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. (IV.) "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Prīd. Kal. (III. Kal.)
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	(Prīd. Kal.)
30	III. "	III. "	Prīdiē Kalend.	(Enclosed forms are for leap-year.)
31	Prīdiē Kalend.	Prīdiē Kalend.		

## II. ABBREVIATIONS OF PROPER NAMES.

373. A. = <b>Aulus.</b>	Mam. = <b>Māmercus.</b>
App. = <b>Appius.</b>	N. = <b>Numerius.</b>
C. = <b>Gāius.</b>	P. = <b>Pūblius.</b>
Cn. = <b>Gnaeus.</b>	Q. = <b>Quīntus.</b>
D. = <b>Decimus.</b>	Sex. = <b>Sextus.</b>
K. = <b>Kaesō.</b>	Ser. = <b>Servius.</b>
L. = <b>Lūcius.</b>	Sp. = <b>Spurius.</b>
M. = <b>Mārcus.</b>	T. = <b>Titus.</b>
M'. = <b>Mānius.</b>	Ti. = <b>Tiberius.</b>

## III. FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC.

### A. Figures of Syntax.

374. 1. **Ellipsis** is the omission of one or more words; as, —  
**sed enim audierat, but (she was afraid), for she had heard, etc.**
2. **Brachylogy** is a brief or condensed form of expression; as, —  
**ut ager sine culturā fructuōsus esse nōn potest, sic sine doctrinā animus, as a field cannot be productive without cultivation, so the mind (cannot be productive) without learning.**

Special varieties of Brachylogy are —

- a) **Zeugma**, in which one verb is made to stand for two; as, —  
**minis aut blandimentis corrupta, = (terrified) by threats or corrupted by flattery.**
- b) **Compendiary Comparison**, by which a modifier of an object is mentioned instead of the object itself; as, —  
**dissimilis erat Charēs eōrum et factis et mōribus, lit. Chares was different from their conduct and character, i.e. Chares's conduct and character were different, etc.**
3. **Pléonasm** is an unnecessary fullness of expression; as, —  
**prius praedīcam, lit. I will first say in advance.**
4. **Hendiadys** (ἐν διὰ δύοιν, *one through two*) is the use of two nouns joined by a conjunction, in the sense of a noun modified by a Genitive or an Adjective; as, —  
**febris et aestus, the heat of fever;**  
**celeritate cursūque, by swift running.**

5. **Prolépsis**, or **Anticipation**, is the introduction of an epithet in advance of the action which makes it appropriate; as, —

**submersās obrue puppēs**, lit. *overwhelm their submerged ships*,  
i.e. overwhelm and sink their ships.

a. The name Prolepsis is also applied to the introduction of a noun or pronoun as object of the main clause where we should expect it to stand as subject of a subordinate clause.

Thus: —

**nōstī Mārcellum quam tardus sit**, *you know how slow Marcellus is* (lit. *you know Marcellus, how slow he is*).

Both varieties of Prolepsis are chiefly confined to poetry.

6. **Anacolúthōn** is a lack of grammatical consistency in the construction of the sentence; as, —

**tum Ancī filii . . . impēsius eis indignitās crēscere**, *then the sons of Ancus . . . their indignation increased all the more*.

7. **Hýsteron Próteron** consists in the inversion of the logical order of two words or phrases; as, —

**moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus** = *let us rush into the midst of arms and die*.

### B. Figures of Rhetoric.

375. 1. **Lítotes** is the use of two negatives for an emphatic affirmative; as, —

**haud parum labōris**, *no little toil* (i.e. much toil);  
**nōn ignōrō**, *I am not ignorant* (i.e. I am well aware).

2. **Oxymóron** is the combination of contradictory conceptions; as, —

**sapiēns insānia**, *wise folly*.

3. **Alliteration** is the employment of a succession of words presenting frequent repetition of the same letter (mostly initial); as, **sēnsim sine sēnsū aetās senēscit**.

4. **Onomatopóeia** is the suiting of sound to sense; as, —  
**quadrupedante putrem sonitū quatit ungula campum**, '*And shake with horny hoofs the solid ground.*'

# INDEX TO THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS.

NOTE.—Compounds are not given unless they present some special irregularity. The references are to sections.

## A.

abdō, 122, I, 2.  
 abiciō, 122, III.  
 abnuō, 122, II.  
 aboleō, 121, I.  
 abstergeō, 121, III.  
 absum, 125.  
 accendō, 122, I, 4.  
 accidit, 138, III.  
 acciō, 121, I, N.  
 accipio, 122, III.  
 acquirō, 122, I, 6.  
 acuō, 122, II.  
 addō, 122, I, 2.  
 adhaerescō, 122, IV, 2.  
 adipiscor, 122, V.  
 adolēscō, 122, IV, I.  
 adsum, 125.  
 adveniō, 123, IV.  
 afferō, 129.  
 afficiō, 122, III.  
 affligō, 122, I, I, a.  
 agnōscō, 122, IV, I.  
 agō, 122, I, 3.  
 algeō, 121, III.  
 alō, 122, I, 5.  
 amiciō, 123, III.  
 amō, 120, I.  
 amplector, 122, V.  
 angō, 122, I, 7.  
 aperiō, 123, II.  
 appetō, 122, I, 6.  
 arceō, 121, II, a.  
 arcessō, 122, I, 6.  
 ārdeō, 121, III.  
 ārēscō, 122, IV, 2.  
 arguō, 122, II.

ascendō, 122, I, 4.  
 aspiciō, 122, III.  
 assentior, 123, VII.  
 assuēfaciō, 122, III.  
 assuēfiō, 122, III.  
 audiō, 123, I.  
 auferō, 129.  
 augeō, 121, III.  
 aveō, 121, II, a, N. 2.

## C.

cadō, 122, I, 2.  
 caedō, 122, I, 2.  
 calefaciō, 122, III.  
 calefiō, 122, III.  
 caleō, 121, II, a.  
 calēscō, 122, IV, 2.  
 canō, 122, I, 2.  
 capessō, 122, I, 6.  
 capiō, 122, III.  
 careō, 121, II, a.  
 carpō, 122, I, I, a.  
 caveō, 121, V.  
 cēdō, 122, I, I, b.  
 cēseō, 121, II, b.  
 cernō, 122, I, 6.  
 cieō, 121, I.  
 cingō, 122, I, I, a.  
 circumstisō, 122, I, 2.  
 claudō, 122, I, I, b.  
 claudō, 122, I, 7.  
 coēmō, 122, I, 3.  
 coepī, 133.  
 coērcēō, 121, II, a.  
 cognōscō, 122, IV, I.  
 cōgō, 122, I, 3.  
 colligō, 122, I, 3.

colō, 122, I, 5.  
 comminiscor, 122, V.  
 comperiō, 123, V.  
 compleō, 121, I.  
 concutiō, 122, III.  
 condō, 122, I, 2.  
 cōnferō, 129.  
 cōnfitēor, 121, VII.  
 congruō, 122, II.  
 cōnsenēscō, 122, IV, 2.  
 cōnserō, 122, I, 5.  
 cōnserō, 122, I, 6 (*plant*).  
 cōnsidō, 122, I, 4.  
 cōnsistō, 122, I, 2.  
 cōnspiciō, 122, III.  
 cōnstat, 138, III.  
 cōnstituō, 122, II.  
 cōnsuēscō, 122, IV, I.  
 cōnsulō, 122, I, 5.  
 contineō, 121, II, b.  
 contingit, 138, III.  
 coquō, 122, I, I, a.  
 crepō, 120, II.  
 crēscō, 122, IV, I.  
 cubō, 120, II.  
 cupiō, 122, III.  
 currō, 122, I, 2.

## D.

dēbeō, 121, II, a.  
 dēcernō, 122, I, 6.  
 decet, 138, II.  
 dēdecet, 138, II.  
 dēdō, 122, I, 2.  
 dēfendō, 122, I, 4.  
 dēleō, 121, I.  
 dēligō, 122, I, 3.

The references are to sections.

dēmō, 122, I, 3.  
 dēserō, 122, I, 5.  
 dēsīnō, 122, I, 6.  
 dēsum, 125.  
 dicō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 differō, 129.  
 diligō, 122, I, 3.  
 dimicō, 120, II.  
 dirimō, 122, I, 3.  
 diripiō, 122, III.  
 diruō, 122, II.  
 discernō, 122, I, 6.  
 disco, 122, IV, 1.  
 disserō, 122, I, 5.  
 dīstinguō, p. 87, footnote.  
 dividō, 122, I, 1, b.  
 dō, 127.  
 doceō, 121, II, b.  
 doleō, 121, II, a.  
 domō, 120, II.  
 dūcō, 122, I, 1, a.

## E.

ēdō, 122, I, 2.  
 edō, 122, I, 3.  
 efferō, 129.  
 effugiō, 122, III.  
 egeō, 121, II, a, N. 1.  
 ēliciō, 122, III.  
 ēmineō, 121, II, a, N. 1.  
 emō, 122, I, 3.  
 eō, 132.  
 ēsuriō, 123, VI.  
 ēvādō, p. 87, footnote.  
 ēvānēscō, 122, IV, 3.  
 excolō, 122, I, 5.  
 excūdō, 122, I, 4.  
 exerceō, 121, II, a.  
 experior, 123, VII.  
 explēō, 121, I, N.  
 explicō, 120, II.  
 exstinguō, p. 87, footnote.  
 extimēscō, 122, IV, 2.

## F.

faciō, 122, III.  
 fallō, 122, I, 2.  
 fateor, 121, VII.  
 faveō, 121, V.  
 feriō, 123, VI.  
 ferō, 129.

ferveō, 121, VI.  
 figō, 122, I, 1, b.  
 findō, 122, I, 2, N.  
 fingō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 fiō, 131.  
 flectō, 122, I, 1, b.  
 fleō, 121, I.  
 flōreō, 121, II, a, N. 1.  
 fluō, 122, II.  
 flōrēscō, 122, IV, 2.  
 fodiō, 122, III.  
 foveō, 121, V.  
 frangō, 122, I, 3.  
 fremō, 122, I, 5.  
 fricō, 120, II.  
 frigeō, 121, II, a, N. 2.  
 fruor, 122, V.  
 fugiō, 122, III.  
 fulciō, 123, III.  
 fulgeō, 121, III.  
 fulget, 138, I.  
 fundō, 122, I, 3.  
 fungor, 122, V.  
 furō, 122, I, 7.

## G.

gemō, 122, I, 5.  
 gerō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 glgnō, 122, I, 5.  
 gradior, 122, V.

## H.

habeō, 121, II, a.  
 haereō, 121, III.  
 hauriō, 123, III.  
 horreō, 121, II, a, N. 1.

## I.

ignōscō, 122, IV, 1.  
 illiciō, 122, III.  
 imbuō, 122, II.  
 immineō, 121, II, a, N. 2.  
 impleō, 121, I, N.  
 implicō, 120, II.  
 incipiō, 122, III.  
 incolō, 122, I, 5.  
 incumbō, 122, I, 5.  
 indulgeō, 121, III.  
 induō, 122, II.  
 inferō, 129.

ingemiscō, 122, IV, 2.  
 insum, 125.  
 intellegō, 122, I, 3.  
 interficiō, 122, III.  
 intersum, 125.  
 invādō, p. 87, footnote.  
 inveniō, 123, IV.  
 irāscor, 122, V.

## J.

jaceō, 121, II, a.  
 jaciō, 122, III.  
 jubeō, 121, III.  
 jungō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 juvō, 120, III.

## L.

lābor, 122, V.  
 laccessō, 122, I, 6.  
 laedō, 122, I, 1, b.  
 lambō, 122, I, 7.  
 largior, 123, VII.  
 lateō, 121, II, a, N. 1.  
 lavō, 120, III.  
 legō, 122, I, 3.  
 libet, 138, II.  
 liceor, 121, VII.  
 licet, 138, II.  
 loquor, 122, V.  
 lūceō, 121, III.  
 lūdō, 122, I, 1, b.  
 lugeō, 121, III.  
 luō, 122, II.

## M.

maereō, 121, II, a, N. 2.  
 mālō, 130.  
 maneō, 121, III.  
 mātūrēscō, 122, IV, 3.  
 medeor, 121, VII.  
 memini, 133.  
 mereō, 121, II, a.  
 mereor, 121, VII.  
 mergō, 122, I, 1, b.  
 mētiur, 123, VII.  
 metuō, 122, II.  
 micō, 120, II.  
 minuō, 122, II.  
 misceō, 121, II, b.

The references are to sections.

miseret, 138, II.  
misereor, 121, VII.  
mittō, 122, I, 1, *δ*.  
molō, 122, I, 5.  
moneō, 121, II, *a*.  
mordeō, 121, IV.  
moriō, 122, V.  
moveō, 121, V.

N.

nancīscor, 122, V.  
nāscor, 122, V.  
nectō, 122, I, 1, *δ*.  
neglēgō, 122, I, 3.  
ningit, 138, I.  
niteō, 121, II, *a*, N. I.  
nītor, 122, V.  
noceō, 121, II, *a*.  
nōlō, 130.  
nōscō, 122, IV, 1.  
nūbō, 122, I, 1, *a*.

O.

obdūrēscō, 122, IV, 3.  
oblinō, 122, I, 6.  
oblīvīscor, 122, V.  
obmūtēscō, 122, IV, 3.  
obruō, 122, II.  
obsolēscō, 122, IV, 1.  
obsum, 125.  
obtineō, 121, II, *δ*.  
ōdī, 133.  
offerō, 129.  
oleō, 121, II, *a*, N. I.  
operiō, 123, II.  
oportet, 138, II.  
opporior, 123, VII.  
ōrdior, 123, VII.  
orior, 123, VII.

P.

paenitet, 138, II.  
palleō, 121, II, *a*, N. I.  
pandō, 122, I, 4.  
parcō, 122, I, 2.  
pārēō, 121, II, *a*.  
pariō, 122, III.  
pāscō, 122, IV, 1.  
pāscor, 122, IV, 1.

patefaciō, 122, III.  
patefiō, 122, III.  
pateō, 121, II, *a*, N. I.  
patior, 122, V.  
paveō, 121, V.  
pelliciō, 122, III.  
pellō, 122, I, 2.  
pendeō, 121, IV.  
pendō, 122, I, 2.  
peragō, 122, I, 3.  
percellō, 122, I, 2, N.  
percrebrēscō, 122, IV, 3.  
perdō, 122, I, 2.  
perficiō, 122, III.  
perfringō, 122, I, 3.  
perfruor, 122, V.  
perlegō, 122, I, 3.  
permulceō, 121, III.  
perpetior, 122, V.  
pervādō, p. 87, footnote.  
petō, 122, I, 6.  
piget, 138, II.  
pingō, 122, I, 1, *a*.  
placeō, 121, II, *a*.  
plaudō, 122, I, 1, *δ*.  
pluit, 138, I.  
polleō, 121, II, *a*, N. 2.  
polliceor, 121, VII.  
polluō, 122, II.  
pōnō, 122, I, 6.  
poscō, 122, IV, 1.  
possidō, 122, I, 4.  
possum, 126.  
pōtō, 120, I.  
praebeō, 121, II, *a*.  
praestat, 138, III.  
praesum, 125.  
prandeō, 121, VI.  
prehendō, 122, I, 4.  
premō, 122, I, 1, *δ*.  
prōdō, 122, I, 2.  
prōmō, 122, I, 3.  
prōsum, 125.  
prōsternō, 122, I, 6.  
pudet, 138, II.  
pungō, 122, I, 2.

Q.

quaerō, 122, I, 6.  
quatiō, 122, III.  
queror, 122, V.  
quiēscō, 122, IV, 1.

R.

rādō, 122, I, 1, *δ*.  
rapiō, 122, III.  
reddō, 122, I, 2.  
redimō, 122, I, 3.  
referciō, 123, III.  
referō, 129.  
rēfert, 138, II.  
regō, 122, I, 1, *a*.  
relinquō, 122, I, 3.  
reminīscor, 122, V.  
reor, 121, VII.  
reperiō, 123, V.  
rēpō, 122, I, 1, *a*.  
resistō, 122, I, 2.  
respuō, 122, II.  
restinguō, p. 87, footnote.  
retineō, 121, II, *δ*.  
rideō, 121, III.  
rōdō, 122, I, 1, *δ*.  
rubeō, 121, II, *a*, N. I.  
rumpō, 122, I, 3.  
ruō, 122, II.

S.

saepiō, 123, III.  
saliō, 123, II.  
sanciō, 123, III.  
sapiō, 122, III.  
sarciō, 123, III.  
scindō, 122, I, 2, N.  
scīscō, 122, IV, 2.  
scribō, 122, I, 1, *a*.  
sculpō, 122, I, 1, *a*.  
secō, 120, II.  
sedeō, 121, V.  
sentiō, 123, III.  
sepiō, 123, I.  
sequor, 122, V.  
serō, 122, I, 6.  
serpō, 122, I, 1, *a*.  
sileō, 121, II, *a*, N. I.  
sinō, 122, I, 6.  
solvō, 122, I, 4.  
sonō, 120, II.  
spargō, 122, I, 1, *δ*.  
spernō, 122, I, 6.  
splendeō, 121, II, *a*, N. I.  
spondeō, 121, IV.  
statuō, 122, II.  
sternō, 122, I, 6.  
-stinguō, 122, I, 1, *a*.



The references are to sections.

strepō, 122, I, 5.  
 strideō, 121, VI.  
 stringō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 struō, 122, II.  
 studeō, 121, II, a, N. 1.  
 suādeō, 121, III.  
 subigō, 122, I, 3.  
 subsum, 125.  
 sum, 100.  
 sūmō, 122, I, 3.  
 suō, 122, II.  
 supersum, 125.  
 sustineō, 121, II, b.

## T.

taceō, 121, II, a.  
 taedet, 138, II.  
 tangō, 122, I, 2.  
 tegō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 temnō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 tendō, 122, I, 2.  
 teneō, 121, II, b.  
 terō, 122, I, 6.  
 terreō, 121, II, a.

texō, 122, I, 5.  
 timeō, 121, II, a, N. 1.  
 tingō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 tollō, 122, I, 2, N.  
 tonat, 138, I.  
 tondeō, 121, IV.  
 tonō, 120, II.  
 torpeō, 121, II, a, N. 1.  
 torqueō, 121, III.  
 torreō, 121, II, b.  
 trādō, 122, I, 2.  
 trahō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 tremō, 122, I, 5.  
 tribuō, 122, II.  
 trūdō, 122, I, 1, b.  
 tueor, 121, VII.  
 tundō, 122, I, 2.

## U.

ulciscor, 122, V.  
 unguō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 urgeō, 121, III.  
 ūrō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 ūtor, 122, V.

## V.

vādō, 122, I, 1, b.  
 valeō, 121, II, a.  
 vehō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 vellō, 122, I, 4.  
 veniō, 123, IV.  
 vereor, 121, VII.  
 vergō, 122, I, 7.  
 verrō, 122, I, 4.  
 vertō, 122, I, 4.  
 vescor, 122, V.  
 vetō, 120, II.  
 videō, 121, V.  
 vigeō, 121, II, a, N. 1.  
 vinciō, 123, III.  
 vincō, 122, I, 3.  
 vireō, 121, II, a, N. 1.  
 vīsō, 122, I, 4.  
 vivō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 volō, 130.  
 volvō, 122, I, 4.  
 vomō, 122, I, 5.  
 voveō, 121, V.

# GENERAL INDEX.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

## A.

- a, ending of nom. sing., 1st decl., 20;  
for *ē* in Greek nouns, 22, 1.
- ā*, *ab*, *abs*, use, 142, 1; with town names,  
229, 2.
- ā* to denote agency, 216.
- to denote separation, 214.
- with town names, 229, 2.
- ā*- stems, 20.
- Abbreviations of proper names, 373.
- Ablative case, 17; 213 f.
- formation of sing. of adjs. of 3d  
decl., 67, a; 70, 1-5.
- genuine abl. uses, 214 f.
- absolute, 227.
- of agent, 216.
- of accompaniment, 222.
- of accordance, 220, 3.
- of attendant circumstance, 221;  
227, 2, e).
- of cause, 219.
- of comparison, 217.
- of degree of difference, 223.
- of fine, 208, 2, b.
- of manner, 220.
- of means, 218.
- of penalty, 208, 2, b.
- of place where, 228.
- of place whence, 229.
- of price, 225.
- of quality, 224.
- of separation, 214.
- of source, 215.
- of specification, 226.
- of time at which, 230.
- of time during which, 231, 1.
- of time within which, 231.
- of way by which, 218, 9.
- with *faciō*, *fiō*, 218, 6.

- Ablative case, with prepositions, 142;  
213 f.
- with verbs of filling, 218, 8.
- with adjs. of plenty, 218, 8.
- abs*, 142, 1.
- absēns*, 125.
- Absolute ablative, 227.
- time, of participles, 336, 4.
- use of verbs, 174, a.
- Abstract nouns, 12, 2, b); 55, 4, c).
- ābus*, 21, 2, e).
- ac*, 341, 2, b); = *as*, *than*, 341, 1, c).
- Acatalectic verses, 366, 9.
- Accent, 6; in gen. of nouns in -*ius* and  
-*ium*, 25, 1 and 2.
- Accompaniment, abl. of, 222.
- Accordance, abl. of, 220, 3.
- Accusative case, 17; 172 f.
- of duration of time, 181.
- of result produced, 173, B; 176.
- of extent of space, 181.
- of limit of motion, 182 f.
- of person or thing affected, 173, A;  
175.
- in exclamations, 183.
- as subj. of inf., 184.
- with adv. force, 176, 3.
- with compounds, 175, 2.
- with passive used as middle, 175,  
2, d).
- cognate acc., 176, 4.
- Greek acc., 180.
- synecdochical acc., 180.
- two accs., direct obj. and pred. acc.,  
177; person affected and result pro-  
duced, 178; with compounds of *trāns*,  
179; with other compounds, 179, 2;  
with prepositions, 141; 179 f.
- retained in pass., 178, 2.
- Accusing, verbs of, constr., 208 f.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

*accūsō*, constr., 178, 1, d).

*ācer*, 68.

Acquitting, verbs of, constr., 208 f.

*ac sī*, 307, 1.

*ad*, 'toward,' 'in vicinity of,' 182, 3.

*-adēs*, 148, 6, a.

*adg-* = *agg-*, 9, 2.

Adjectives, 62 f.; 354; derivation of, 150 f.

— of 1st and 2d decl., 63 ff.

— in *-ius*, gen. sing., 63, a.

— of 3d decl., 67 ff.; in abl., 70, 5.

— comparison of adjs., 71 f.; in *-er*, 71, 3; in *-ilis*, 71, 4; comparative lacking, 73, 3; defective comparison, 73; not admitting comparison, 75; comparison by *magis* and *māximē*, 74.

— numerals, 78 f.

— syntax, 233 ff.

— agreement, 234 f.

— used substantively, 236 f.

— denoting part of an object, 241, 1.

— with force of adverbs, 239.

— force of comp. and superl., 240, 1.

— not followed by infinitive, 333.

— not used with proper names, 354, 3.

— equivalent to a poss. gen., 354, 4.

— special Latin equivalents of Eng. adjs., 354, 1.

— equiv. to rel. clause, 241, 2.

— as pred. acc., 177, 2.

— position of adj., 350, 4.

*adl-* = *all-*, 9, 2.

*admoneō*, constr., 207.

*adr-* = *arr-*, 9, 2.

*ads-* = *ass-*, 9, 2.

*ad sensum*, constr., 235, B, 2, c; 254, 4.

*adulēsēns*, 9, 2.

*adulter*, decl., 23, 2.

*adultus*, 114, 2.

Adverbs, formation and comparison, 76 f.; 140, 157.

— in *-iter* from adjs. in *-us*, 77, 4.

— *-tus* and *-tim*, 77, 5.

— in *-o*, 77, 2.

— numeral, 79.

— as preps., 144, 2.

— derivation of, 157.

— special meanings, 347.

— position, 350, 6.

Adversative clauses, 309.

— conjunctions, 343.

*aedēs*, 61.

*aequor*, decl., 34.

*aequum est*, 271, 1, b).

*aes*, 57, 7.

*aetās*, decl., 40, 1, e); *id aetātis*, 185, 2.

*-aews*, 152, 3.

*aeuom*, 24.

Agency, dat. of, 189; abl., 216.

Agent, abl., 216.

*ager*, decl., 23.

*-āi*, case-ending, gen. sing., 1st decl., poet., 21, 2, b).

*ain*, 135, N.

*ājō*, 135.

*alacer*, comp., 73, 4.

*aliqua*, 91, 2.

*aliqui*, 91; 91, 2.

*aliquis*, 91; 252, 2; *aliquis dicat*, *āccerit*, 280, 1.

*-ālis*, 151, 2.

*alius*, 66; 92, 1; used correlatively, 253, 1.

*alius ac*, 341, 1, c).

*Allia*, gender of, 15, 3, N.

*alliciō*, 109, 2, b).

Alliteration, 375, 3.

Alphabet, 1.

*alter*, 66; 92, 1; used correlatively, 253, 1.

Alternative questions, 162, 4; indirect, 300, 4.

*alteruter*, 92, 2.

*atvus*, gender of, 26, 1, b).

*amandus sum*, 115.

*amāfurus sum*, 115.

*ambō*, 80, 2, a; 355, 2.

*amō*, 101.

*amplius* = *amplius quam*, 217, 3.

*an*, 162, 4, and a); 300, 4; *haud sciō an*, *nesciō an*, 300, 5.

Anacoluthon, 374, 6.

Anapaest, 366, 2.

Anaphora, 350, 11, b).

Anastrophe of prep., 141, 2; 142, 3; 144, 3.

*anceps* (*syllaba anceps*), 366, 10.

*Androgeōs*, decl., 27.

*animal*, decl., 39.

*animi*, 232, 3.

*annōn*, 162, 4.

Answers, 162, 5.

*ante* in expressions of time, 144, 1; 357, 1.

Antecedent of rel., 251.

— attraction of, 251, 4.

— incorporated with rel., 251, 4.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

Antecedent omitted, 251, 1.  
 — repeated with rel., 251, 3.  
 Antepenult, 6, 2.  
*antequam*, with ind., 291; with subjv., 292.  
 Anticipation, 374, 5.  
*-ānus*, 151, 2; 152, 1; 3.  
 Aorist tense, see Historical perfect.  
 Apodosis, 301.  
 — in conditional sent. of 1st type, 302, 4.  
 Apposition, 169; partitive, 169, 5; with voc. in nom., 171, 2; genitive, 202.  
 Appositive of locative, 169, 4; with acc. of limit of motion, 182, 2, a; with town names in abl. of place whence, 229, 2.  
 — position of, 350, 2.  
*Archias*, 22.  
*arguō*, constr., 178, 1, d).  
*-āris*, 151, 2.  
*-ārium*, 148, 3.  
*-ārius*, 151, 2.  
*armiger*, decl., 23, 2.  
 Arsis, 366, 6.  
*arx*, decl., 40.  
*-ās*, old Gen. sing., 1st decl., case-ending, 21, 2, a).  
 — ending of Greek nouns, nom. sing. in, 22.  
 — *ātis*, abl. of patrials in, 70, 5, c).  
 Aspirates, 2, 3, c).  
 Assimilation of consonants, 8, 4 f.; 9, 2.  
 Asyndeton, 341, 4, a); 346.  
*at*, 343, 1, d).  
*-ātim*, 157, 2.  
*atomus*, gender of, 26, 1, c).  
*atque*, 341, 2, b); = *as*, 341, 1, c).  
*atque*, 343, 1, e).  
 Attendant circumstance, abl. of, 221; 227, 2, e).  
 Attraction of demonstratives, 246, 5; of relatives, 250, 5; subjunctive by attraction, 324; of adjectives, 327, 2, a; 328, 2.  
*audeō*, 114, 1.  
*audiō*, 107; with pres. partic., 337, 3.  
*aut*, 342, 1, a).  
*autem*, 343, 1, c); 350, 8.  
 Auxiliary omitted in infin., 116, 5.  
*auxilium*, *auxilia*, 61.  
*-āx*, 150, 2.

## B.

*balneum*, *balneae*, 60, 2.  
*barbitos*, decl., 27.  
*belli*, 232, 2.  
*bellum*, decl., 23.  
*bene*, comparison, 77, 1.  
*benevolens*, 71, 5, a).  
*bijugis*, 362, 4.  
*-bilis*, 150, 4.  
*bonus*, 63; comparison, 72.  
*bōs*, 41.  
 Brachylogy, 374, 2.  
 Bucolic diaeresis, 368, 3, d).  
*-bulum*, 147, 4.  
*-bundus*, 150, 1.

## C.

*caedēs*, decl., 40.  
 Caesura, 366, 8; in dactylic hexameter, 368, 3.  
*calcar*, decl., 39.  
 Calendar, 371; 372.  
 Calends, 371, 2, a).  
*canis*, 38, 2.  
*capio*, 110.  
*carbasus*, gender of, 26, 1, b).  
*carcer*, *carcerēs*, 61.  
 Cardinals, 78, 1; 79; 81, 1; decl., 80.  
*carō*, 42.  
*carrus*, *carrum*, 60, 1.  
 Cases, 17; alike in form, 19; 170 ff.  
 Case-endings, 17, 3.  
*castrum*, *castra*, 61.  
 Catalectic verses, 366, 9.  
*causa*, *nūlla causa est cūr*, etc., 295, 7.  
 Causal clauses, 285; 286; clause of characteristic with accessory notion of cause, 283, 3.  
 — conjunctions, 345.  
*causā*, with gen., 198, 1.  
 Cause, abl. of, 219; 227, 2, d).  
*cavē*, 363, 2, b).  
*cavē nē* in prohibitions, 276, c).  
*-ce*, 6, 3 f.; 87, footnote 2.  
*cedo*, *cette*, 137, 3.  
*celer*, 68, 2.  
*cēlō*, constr., 178, 1, e).  
*cēnātus*, 114, 2.  
*cētera*, 185, 2.  
*cēteri*, 253, 4.  
 Characteristic clauses of, 283; gen. of, 203, 1; abl., 224.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

Chiasmus, 350, 11, c).

*circumdō*, constr., 187, 1, a.

*citerior*, 73, 1.

*cito*, 77, 2, a.

*civitas*, decl., 40, 1, e.

*clam*, 144, 2.

Clauses, coörd. and subord., 164, 165.

Clauses of characteristic, 283; purpose, 282; result, 284; causal, 285; temporal with *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, *simul ac*, etc. 287; with *cum*, 288; substantive clauses, 294 f.; condition, 301 f.; concessive, 308; adversative, 309; wish or proviso, 310; relative, 311 f.; 283 f.

*clipeus*, *clipeum*, 60, 1.

Close of sentences, cadences used, 350, 12.

*coepti*, 133; *coeptus est*, 133, 1.

Cognate acc., 176, 4.

*cogō*, 178, 1, d); 331, VI.

Collective nouns, 12, 2, a).

*colus*, gender of, 26, 1, δ).

*comedō*, 128, 2.

*comētes*, 22.

*comitia*, 230, 1.

Common gender, 15, B, N, 1.

— nouns, 12, 1.

— vowels, 5, A, 2, N.

— syllables, 5, B, 3.

*commonefaciō*, 207.

*commoneō*, 207.

*communis*, with gen., 204, 2; with dat., 204, 2, a.

Comparison of adjs., 71 f.

— participles as adjs., 71, 2.

— adjs. in *-dicus*, *-ficus*, *-volus*, 71, 5.

— defective, 73.

— abl. of, 217.

Comparatives, occasional meaning, 240.

—, two required in Latin, 240, 4.

Compendiary comparison, 374, 2, δ).

Compounds, 158 f.; separation into syllables, 4, 4; spelling of, 9, 2.

Compound sentences, 164.

Conative uses of pres., 259, 2; of imperf., 260, 3; of pres. partic., 336, 2, a.

Concessive clauses, 308; 'although' as accessory idea to clause of characteristic, 283, 3.

— subjunctive, 278.

Conclusion, see Apodosis.

Concrete nouns, 12, 2, a).

Condemning, verbs of, constr., 208 f.

Conditional clauses of comparison, 307.

— sentences, 1st type, 302; in indir. disc., 319; 2d type, 303; in indir. disc., 320; 3d type, 304; in indir. disc., 321; abl. abs. equivalent to, 227, 2, δ); introduced by relative pronouns, 312.

*cōnfidō*, 219, 1, a.

Conjugation, 11; 93 f.; the four conjugations, 98; periphrastic, 115; peculiarities of conj., 116.

Conjunctions, 341 f.

*cōnor*, with inf., 295, 5, a.

Consecutive clauses, see Result clauses.

*cōnsistere*, with abl., 218, 4.

Consonant stems, 29 f.

— partially adapted to *i*-stems, 40.

Consonants, 2, 2 f.; 3, 3.

—, double, 2, 9.

— combinations of, in division into syllables, 4, 2 f.

Consonant changes, 8; omission of finals, 8, 3; assimilation of, 8, 4 f.

— stems, 29; following analogy of *i*-stems, 40.

*cōnspiciō*, 109, 2, δ).

*cōnstāre*, 218, 4.

Construction acc. to sense, 254, 4; 235, B, 2, c).

*cōnsuetūdo est*, with substantive clause, 297, 3.

*cōnsuevi* = pres., 262, A.

Contending, verbs of, with dat., 358, 3.

*contentus*, 219, 1.

*continēri*, with abl., 218, 4.

*contrā*, 144, 1.

Contraction, 7, 2.

—, length of vowel as result of, 5, A, 1, δ).

Convicting, verbs of, constr., 208 f.

Coördinate clauses, 165.

— conjunctions, 341 f.

*cōpia*, *cōpiae*, 61.

Copulative conjunctions, 341.

*cor*, 57, 7.

*cornū*, decl., 48.

Correlative conjunctions, 341, 3; 342, 2.

— adverbs, 140.

*collidit*, 9, 2.

*-crum*, 147, 4.

*-culum*, 147, 4.

*-culus* (a, um), 148, 1.

*cum*, appended, 142, 4.

*cum*, 'when,' 288-290.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

*cum*, adversative, 309, 3.  
 — causal, 286, 2.  
 — explicative, 290.  
 — to denote a recurring action, 288, 3;  
 289, a.  
 — 'when suddenly,' 288, 2.  
 — with abl. of manner, 220; with abl.  
 of accompaniment, 222.  
*cum . . . tum*, 290, 2.  
*cum primum*, 287, 1.  
*cum*, spelling of, 9, 1.  
*-cundus*, 150, 1.  
*cupiō*, 109, 2, a); 331, IV, and a.  
*cūr, nulla causa est cūr*, 295, 7.

## D.

Dactyl, 366, 2.  
 Dactylic hexameter, 368.  
 — pentameter, 369.  
*dapis*, 57, 6.  
 Dates, 371, 2-5; as indeclinable nouns,  
 371, 6; in leap year, 371, 7.  
 Dative, 17; irregular, 1st decl., 21, 2, c);  
 3d decl., 47, 5; 4th decl., 49, 2; 3; 5th  
 decl., 52, 1 and 3; 186 ff.  
 — of agency, 189.  
 — of direction, 193.  
 — of indir. obj., 187.  
 — of advantage or disadvantage, so  
 called, 188, 1.  
 — of local standpoint, 188, 2, a).  
 — of person judging, 188, 2, c).  
 — of possession, 190; 359, 1.  
 — of purpose, 191; 339, 7.  
 — of reference, 188.  
 — of separation, 188, 2, d).  
 — with adjs., 192.  
 — with compound verbs, 187, III.  
 — with intrans. verbs, 187, II.  
 — with pass. verbs, 187, II, b).  
 — with trans. verbs, 187, I.  
 — with verbs of *mingling*, 358, 3.  
 — ethical dat., 188, 2, b).  
*dē*, with abl. instead of gen. of whole,  
 201, 1, a).  
*dea, deabus*, 21, 2, c).  
*dēdebam, dēbui* in apodosis, 304, 3, a).  
*dēbui*, with pres. inf., 270, 2.  
*decemvir*, gen. plu. of, 25, 6, b).  
*decet*, 175, 2, c).  
 Declaratory sentences in indir. disc., 314.  
 Declension, 11; heteroclites, 59.  
 —, stems and gen. terminations, 18.

*dēdecet*, 175, 2, c).  
 Defective verbs, 133 f.; nouns, 54 f.; 52,  
 4; 57; comparison, 73.  
 Deliberative subjv., 277; in indir. disc.,  
 315, 3.  
 Demonstrative pronouns, 87; 246.  
 Denominative verbs, 156.  
 Dental mutes, 2, 4.  
 — stems, 33.  
 Deponent verbs, 112; forms with passive  
 meanings, 112, b); semi-deponents,  
 114.  
 Derivatives, 147 f.  
 Desideratives, 155, 3.  
*dēterior*, 73, 1.  
*deus*, 25, 4.  
*dēvertor*, 114, 3.  
*dextrum*, 185, 2.  
 Diaeresis, 366, 8; bucolic d., 368, 3, d).  
 Diastole, 367, 2.  
*dic*, 116, 3.  
*dicitur, dictum est*, 332, note.  
*dicō*, accent of compounds of, in imper.,  
 116, 3.  
*-dicus*, comparison of adjs. in, 71, 5.  
*Didō*, decl., 47, 8.  
*diēs*, decl., 51; gender, 53.  
 Difference, abl. of degree of, 223.  
*difficile est*, 271, 1, b).  
*difficilis*, comp., 71, 4.  
*dignus*, 226, 2; in rel. clauses of purpose,  
 282, 3.  
 Dimeter verses, 366, II.  
 Diminutives, 148, 1.  
 Diphthongs, 2, 1; 3, 2; diphthong  
 stems, 41; diphthongs shortened,  
 362, 2.  
*diphthongus*, gender of, 26, 1, c).  
 Dipodies, 366, II.  
 Direct reflexives, 244, 1.  
 — object, 172.  
 Disjunctive conjunctions, 342.  
*dissimilis*, comp., 71, 4.  
 Distributives, 78, 1; 79; 81, 4.  
*diū*, compared, 77, 1.  
*dives*, 70, 1.  
*diſſi*, 116, 4, c).  
*dō*, 127.  
*doceō*, with acc., 178, 1, b); with inf., 331,  
 VI.  
*domi*, 232, 2.  
*domō*, 229, 1, b).  
*domōs*, 182, 1, b).

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

*domum*, 182, 1, *δ*); 'house,' in acc., 182, note.  
*domus*, 49, 4.  
*dōnec*, with ind., 293; with subjv., 293, III, 2.  
*dōnō*, constr., 187, 1, *a*.  
 Double consonants, 2, 9.  
 — questions, 162, 4; indirect, 300, 4.  
 Dubitative subjunctive, see Deliberative.  
*dubitō*, *dubium est*, constr. with, 298.  
*dūc*, 116, 3.  
*dūcō*, accent of compounds of, in imper., 116, 3.  
*duim*, *duint*, 127, 2.  
*-dum*, 6, 3.  
*dum*, temporal with ind., 293; with subjv., 293, III, 2; in wishes and provisos, 310.  
*dummodo*, 310.  
*duo*, 80, 2.  
*duumvir*, gen. plu. of, 25, 6, *δ*).  
*dux*, decl., 32.

## E.

*ē*, stems, 51.  
*-ē*, ending of Greek nouns, nom. sing. in, 22; in dat., 5th decl., 52, 3.  
*-ē*, abl. of participles in *-āns*, *-ēns*, in, 70, 3.  
*ē*, *ex*, use, 142, 2.  
*ecquis*, 91, 6.  
*ēdic*, 116, 3.  
*edō*, 128.  
*ēdūc*, 116, 3.  
*ego*, 84.  
*egomet*, 84, 2.  
*-ēī*, gen. of 5th decl., 52, 1.  
*-ēis*, 148, 6, *δ*).  
*ējus*, as poss., 86, 1.  
 Elegiac distich, 369, 2.  
 Elision, 366, 7.  
 Ellipsis, 374, 1.  
*-ellus* (*a*, *um*), 148, 1.  
 Emphasis, 349.  
 Enclitics, accent of preceding syllable, 6, 3.  
 Endings, personal of verb, 96; in formation of words, 147 f.  
*enim*, 345.  
*-ēnsimus* (*-ēnsumus*), 79, N.  
*-ēnsis*, 151, 2; 152, 3.  
*ed*, 132; cpds., 132, 1.  
 Epexegetical genitive, 202.  
 Epistolary tenses, 265.

*epistula*, 9, 2.  
*epitomē*, 22.  
*epulum*, *epulas*, 60, 2.  
*equābus*, 21, 2, *e*).  
*equos*, 24.  
*-er*, decl. of nouns in, 23.  
*ergō*, 344, 1, *δ*).  
*-ernus*, 154.  
*-ēs*, ending of Greek nouns, nom. sing. in, 22.  
 —, gen. *-is*, decl. of nouns in, 40, 1, *a*).  
*esse*, 100; omitted, 116, 5.  
*est quī*, with subj., 283, 2.  
*et*, 341, 1, *a*; in enumerations, 341, 4, *c*).  
*et is*, 247, 4.  
*et . . . neque*, 341, 3.  
 Ethical dative, 188, 2, *δ*).  
*etiam*, in answers, 162, 5.  
*et nōn*, 341, 2, *c*).  
*etsī*, 'although', 309, 2; *etsī*, 'even if', 309, 2, *a*.  
*-ētum*, 148, 3.  
*-eus*, 151, 1.  
*ex*, 142, 2; with abl., instead of gen. of whole, 201, 1, *a*; with abl. of source, 215, 1.  
*exposcō*, constr., 178, 1, *a*).  
*existō*, 9, 2.  
*expectō*, 9, 2.  
*exterī*, *exterior*, 73, 2.  
*extrēmus*, 241, 1.

## F.

*fac*, 116, 3.  
*facile*, 77, 3.  
*facilis*, comp., 71, 4.  
*faciō*, 109, 2, *a*).  
 —, in imper., 116, 3.  
*falsus*, 73, 3.  
*famē*, 59, 2, *δ*).  
*familiās*, 21, 2, *a*).  
*fārī*, 136.  
*fās*, 58.  
*faucēs*, decl., 40, 1, *d*).  
 Fearing, verbs of, constr., 296, 2.  
*fēlix*, 70.  
 Feminine, see Gender.  
 Feminine caesura, 368, 3, *c*.  
*femur*, 42, 4.  
*-fer*, decl. of nouns in, 23, 2; adjs., 65, 1.  
*ferō*, 129.  
*ferus*, 75, 2.  
*-ficus*, comparison of adjs. in, 71, 5.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

*fidci*, 362, 1, b.  
*fidō*, 114, 1.  
*fidō*, with abl., 219, 1, a.  
*fidus*, 73, 3.  
*fierem*, *fieri*, 362, 1, c).  
 Fifth decl., 51 f.  
 Figures of rhetoric, 375.  
 — of syntax, 374.  
*filii*, 25, 3.  
*filia*, *filiiabus*, 21, 2, c).  
 Final clauses, see Purpose clauses.  
 Final consonant omitted, 8, 3.  
 Final syllables, quantity, 363, 364.  
*finis*, *finēs*, 61.  
 Finite verb, 95.  
*fiō*, 131.  
*fiō*, with abl., 218, 6.  
 First conj., 101.  
 First decl., 20 f.; peculiarities, 21.  
*flāgitō*, constr., 178, 1, a).  
*fodiō*, 109, 2, a).  
 Foot, in verse, 366, 2.  
 'For,' its Latin equivalents, 358, 1.  
*fore*, page 57, footnote 3.  
*fore ut*, 270, 3.  
*forem*, *forēs*, etc., page 57, footnote 2.  
*foris*, 228, 1, c).  
 Formation of words, 146 f.  
*fors*, *forte*, 57, 2, a.  
*fortior*, 69.  
*fortis*, 69.  
*fortūna*, *fortūnae*, 61.  
 Fourth conj., 107.  
 Fourth decl., 48; dat. in *-ū*, 49, 2;  
 gen. in *-ī*, 49, 1; dat. abl. plu. in *-ubus*,  
 49, 3.  
*fraude*, 220, 2.  
*frēnum*, plu. of, 60, 2.  
 Frequentatives, 155, 2.  
*frētus*, 218, 3.  
 Fricatives, 2, 7.  
*fructus*, decl., 48.  
*frūgi*, compared, 72; 70, 6.  
*frūgis*, 57, 6.  
*fruor*, with abl., 218, 1; in gerundive  
 constr., 339, 4.  
*fugiō*, 109, 2, a).  
*fuī*, *fuisti*, etc., for *sum*, *es*, etc., in com-  
 pound tenses, p. 60, footnote; p. 61,  
 footnote.  
*fungor*, 218, 1; in gerundive constr., 339, 4.  
*fūr*, decl., 40, 1, d).  
*fūrtō*, 220, 2.

Future tense, 261; with imperative force,  
 261, 3.  
 — time in the subjv., 269.  
 — perfect, 264; with future meaning,  
 133, 2.  
 — imperative, 281, 1.  
*futūrum esse ut*, with subjv., 270, 3.

## G.

*gaudeō*, 114, 1.  
 Gender, 13–15; in 1st decl., 20, 21; in  
 2d decl., 23; exceptions, 26; in 3d  
 decl., 43 f.; in 4th decl., 50; in 5th  
 decl., 53; determined by endings, 14;  
 by signification, 15, A; heterogeneous  
 nouns, 60.  
*gener*, decl., 23, 2.  
 Genitive, 17; in *-ī* for *-īi*, 25, 1 and 2; of  
 4th decl. in *-ī*, 49, 1; of 5th decl. in *-ī*,  
 52, 2; of 5th decl. in *-īi*, 52, 1; in *-ē*,  
 52, 3; of 1st decl. in *-āi*, 21, 2, b); of  
 1st decl. in *-ās*, 21, 2, a); gen. plu. *-um*  
 for *-ārum*, 21, 2, d); *-um* for *-ōrum*,  
 25, 6; gen. plu. lacking, 57, 7; syntax  
 of, 194 f.  
 — of characteristic, 203, 1.  
 — of charge with judicial verbs, 208.  
 — of indefinite price, 203, 4.  
 — of indefinite value, 203, 3.  
 — of material, 197.  
 — of measure, 203, 2.  
 — of origin, 196.  
 — of possession, 198.  
 — of quality, 203.  
 — of the whole, 201.  
 — appositional, 202.  
 — objective, 200.  
 — of separation, 212, 3.  
 — subjective, 199.  
 — with adjs., 204; with participles,  
 204, 1, a).  
 — with *causā*, *grātiā*, 198, 1.  
 — with verbs, 205 f.; of *plenty* and  
*want*, 212; with impers. verbs, 209.  
 — position of gen., 350, 1.  
*genus*, decl., 36; *id genus*, 185, 1.  
*-ger*, decl. of nouns in, 23, 2; adjs., 65, 1.  
 Gerund, 338; with object, 338, 5.  
 Gerundive, 337, 7.  
 Gerundive const., 339, 1–6; in passive  
 periphrastic conj., 337, 7 f.; gen. de-  
 noting purpose, 339, 6; with dat. of  
 purpose, 192, 3; 339, 7.



The references are to sections and paragraphs.

*gnārus*, not compared, 75, 2.  
 Gnomic present, 259, 1; perfect, 262, 1.  
*gradior*, 109, 2, c.  
 Grammatical gender, 15.  
*grātiā*, with gen., 198, 1; *grātia*, *grātia*, 61.  
 Greek nouns, 1st decl., 22; 2d decl., 27; exceptions in gender, 26, 1, c); 3d decl., 47; Greek acc., 180; Greek nouns in verse, 365.  
*grūs*, decl., 41, 2.  
*gu* = *gv*, 3, 3.  
 Guttural mutes, 2, 4.  
 — stems, 32.

## H.

*habēō*, with perf. pass. partic., 337, 6.  
*Hadria*, 21, 1.  
 Hard consonants, 2, 3, a), footnote 1.  
*haud*, use, 347, 2, a; *haud sciō an*, 300, 5.  
*havē*, 137, 5.  
 Hendiadys, 374, 4.  
*heri*, 232, 2.  
 Heteroclitics, 59.  
 Heterogeneous nouns, 60.  
 Hiatus, 366, 7, a.  
*hic*, 87; 246, 1; 246, 2.  
*hiems*, 35, footnote.  
 Historical tenses, 258; historical present, 259, 3; 268, 3; historical perfect, 262, B; historical infinitive, 335.  
*honor*, decl., 36.  
 Hortatory subjv., 274.  
*hortus*, decl., 23.  
*hōscine*, 87, footnote 2.  
*hostis*, decl., 38.  
*hūjusce*, 87, footnote 2.  
*humī*, 232, 2.  
*humilis*, comp., 71, 4.  
*humus*, gender of, 26, 1, b).  
 Hyperbaton, 350, 11, a).  
 Hypermeter, 367, 6.  
 Hysteron proteron, 374, 7.

## I.

*i*, 1, 1; becomes *j*, 367, 4; instead of *u* in some words, 9, 1.  
*i*-stems, 37; 39; not always ending in *-is*, 38, 3.  
*-ī*, gen. of 2d decl., nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* in, 25, 1 and 2.  
 — gen. of 4th decl., nouns in *-us*, 49, 1.  
 — gen. of 5th decl., nouns, 52, 2.

*i*-stem, *vīs*, 41.  
*ī*, in abl., 3d decl., 38, 1; 39.  
 — adjs., 67, 3, a; 70, 5.  
 — participles, 70, 3.  
 — patentials, 70, 5, c).  
*-ia*, 149.  
*iambus*, 366, 2.  
 Iambic measures, 370.  
 — trimeter, 370.  
*-iānus*, 152, 1.  
*-ias*, 148, 6, b).  
*-ibam*, in imperf., 116, 4, b).  
*-idō*, in future, 116, 4, b).  
*Ictus*, 366, 5.  
*-icus*, 151, 2; 152, 2.  
*id aetātis*, 185, 2.  
*id genus*, 185, 1.  
*id temporis*, 185, 2.  
*id quod*, 247, 1, b).  
 Ideal 'you,' see Indefinite second person.  
*idem*, 87; 248.  
*idem ac*, 248, 2.  
 Ides, 371, 2, c).  
*-idēs*, 148, 6, a).  
*-idēs*, 148, 6, a).  
*-idō*, 147, 3, c).  
*idōneus*, with rel. clause of purpose, 282, 3.  
*-idus*, 150, 3.  
*-ier*, inf. ending, 116, 4, a.  
*igitur*, 344, 1, c).  
*ignis*, decl., 38.  
*-ile*, 148, 3.  
*Ilion*, decl., 27.  
*-ilis*, 151, 2.  
*-ilis*, 150, 4.  
 Illative conjunctions, 344.  
*ille*, 87; 'the following,' 246, 2; 'the former,' 246, 1; 'the well-known,' 246, 3; position, 350, 5, b).  
*illūc*, 87, footnote 3.  
*-illus* (a, um), 148, 1.  
*-im*, in acc., 3d decl., 38, 1.  
*-im*, *-is* in subjv., 116, 4, d).  
*impedimentum*, *impedimenta*, 61.  
 Imperative, 281; tenses in, 94, 3; 281, 1; future indic. with force of, 261, 3.  
 — as protasis of a conditional sent., 305, 2; as apodosis, 30.  
 — sent. in indir. disc., 316.  
 Imperfect tense, 260; conative, 260, 3; with *jam*, etc., 260, 4.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

- Imperfect subjv. in conditional sent. referring to the past, 304, 2.
- Impersonal verbs, 138; gen. with, 209; in passive, 256, 3; 187, II, *b*; with substantive clauses of result, 297, 2; with infin., 327, 1; 330.
- impetus*, defective, 57, 4.
- Implied indir. disc., 323.
- imus*, 'bottom of,' 241, 1.
- in*, prep., 143.
- in* with abl. of time, 230, 2; 231.
- ina*, 148, 5.
- Inceptives, 155, 1.
- Inchoatives, 155, 1.
- Indeclinable adjs., 70, 6; 80, 6.
- nouns, 58; gender of, 15, 3.
- Indefinite pronouns, 91; 252.
- Indefinite second person, 280, 3; 356, 3; 302, 2.
- Indicative, 271.
- in apodosis of conditional sent. of 3d type, 304, 3 *a*) and *b*).
- indigeō*, constr., 214, 1, N. 2.
- indignus*, with abl., 226, 2; with rel. clause of purpose, 282, 3.
- Indirect discourse, 313 f.; implied indir. disc., 323; subordinate clauses in ind., 314, 3.
- questions, 300; in conditional sent. of 3d type, 322, *b*.
- reflexives, 244, 2.
- object, 187.
- inferum, inferior*, 73, 2.
- infimus*, 241, 1.
- Infinitive, in *-ier*, 116, 4, *a*; meaning of tenses in, 270; 326 ff.
- fut. perf. inf., 270, 4; periphrastic future, 270, 3.
- without subj. acc., 326–328; 314, 5.
- with subj. acc., 329–331.
- with adjs., 333.
- denoting purpose, 326, N.
- in abl. abs., 227, 3.
- in exclamations, 334.
- historical inf., 335.
- infiliās*, 182, 5.
- Inflection, II.
- Inflections, II ff.
- ingēns*, 73, 4.
- injuriā*, 220, 2.
- injussū*, 57, 1, 2, 119, 2.
- inl-* = *ill-*, 9, 2.
- innixus*, 218, 3.
- inops*, 70, 2.
- inquam*, 134.
- Inseparable prepositions, 159, 3, N.
- instar*, with gen., 198, 2; 58.
- Instrumental uses of abl., 213; 218 ff.
- Intensive pron., 88.
- Intensives (verbs), 155, 2.
- inter* to express reciprocal relation, 245.
- interest*, constr., 210; 211.
- interior*, 73, 1.
- Interjections, 145.
- Interrogative pronouns, 90.
- sentences, 162; particles, 162, 2; omitted, 162, 2, *d*); in indir. disc., 315.
- Intransitive verbs in passive, 256, 3; 187, II, *b*.
- inus*, 151, 2; 152, 1; 152, 3.
- iō*, verbs of 3d conj., 109.
- ipse*, 88; 249; as indir. reflexive, 249, 3.
- ipsius* and *ipsorum*, with possessive pronouns, 243, 3.
- ir*, decl. of nouns in, 23.
- Irregular nouns, 42; verbs, 124 f.
- is*, 87; 247; as personal pron., 247, 2.
- is*, 148, 6, *b*).
- is*, acc. plu., 3d decl., 37; 40.
- , *-ilis*, abl. of patrials in, 70, 5, *c*).
- istac*, 87, footnote 3.
- iste*, 87; 246, 4.
- istic*, 6, 4.
- istūc*, 6, 4; 87, footnote 3.
- ita*, in answers, 162, 5.
- itaque*, 344, 1, *a*); accent of, 6, 6.
- itāque*, 6, 6.
- iter*, 42, 1.
- itia*, 149.
- ium*, gen. of nouns in, 25, 2; ending of gen. plu., 3d decl., 37 f.; 39; 40; 147, 3, *b*); 148, 2.
- ius*, gen. and voc. sing. of nouns in, 25, 1 and 2; of adjs., 63, *a*; 151, 2; 152, 2; 152, 3; *-ius* for *-ius*, 362, 1, *a*).
- ivus*, 151, 2.
- J.
- j*, 1, 2; length of vowel before, 5, *A*, 1, *c*).
- jacō*, 109, 2, *a*); compounds of, 9, 3; 362, 5.
- jam*, etc., with present tense, 259, 4; with imperfect, 260, 4.
- jecur*, 42, 3.
- jocō*, 220, 2.
- jocus*, plu. of, 60, 2.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

*jubeō*, 295, 1, *a*; 331, II.

*jūgerum*, 59, 1.

*Jūpiter*, 41.

*jūrātus*, 114, 2.

*jūre*, 220, 2.

*jūs est*, with substantive clause, 297, 3.

*jussū*, 57, 1; 219, 2.

Jussive subjv., 275; equiv. to a protasis, 305, 2.

*juvat*, 175, 2, *c*).

*juvenis*, 38, 2; 73, 4.

## K.

*k*, 1, 1.

## L.

Labial mutes, 2, 4.

— stems, 31.

*Lacedaemoni*, 232, 4.

*laevum*, 185, 2.

*lapis*, decl., 33.

*largior*, 113.

Length of syllables, 5, *B*.

Length of vowels, 5, *A*.

*lentus*, 151, 3.

*leō*, decl., 35.

*Liber*, decl., 23, 2.

*liberō*, constr., 214, 1, N. 1.

*liberta*, *libertātus*, 21, 2, *c*).

*liberum*, gen. plu., 25, 6, *c*).

*licet*, 295, 6 and 8; with subjv., 308, *a*.

*licet*, adversative, 309, 4.

Lingual mutes, 2, 4.

*linter*, decl., 40.

Liquids, 2, 5.

— stems, 34.

*lis*, decl., 40, 1, *d*).

Litotes, 375, 1.

*littera*, *litterae*, 61.

Locative, 17, 1; in *-ae*, 21, 2, *c*); in *-i*, 25, 5; syntax, 232; apposition with, 169, 4; loc. uses of abl., 213; 228 f.

*locō*, *locis*, 228, 1, *b*.

*locus*, plurals of, 60, 2.

Long syllables, 5, *B*, 1.

— vowels, 5, *A*, 1.

*longius* = *longius quam*, 217, 3.

*longum est*, 271, 1, *b*.

*lubet*, *lubidō*, 9, 1.

*lūdī*, 230, 1.

*lūx*, 57, 7.

## M.

*magis*, comparison with, 74.

*māgnopere*, compared, 77, 1.

*māgnus*, compared, 72.

*male*, comparison, 77, 1.

*maledicēns*, 71, 5, *a*).

*mālim*, 280, 2, *a*.

*māllēm*, 280, 4.

*mālō*, 130; with inf., 331, IV, and *a*; with subjv., 296, 1, *a*.

*malus*, comparison, 72.

*māne*, 58.

Manner, abl. of, 220.

*mare*, 39, 2; *marī*, 228, 1, *c*).

*mās*, decl., 40, 1, *d*).

Masculine, see Gender.

Masculine caesura, 368, 3 *c*.

*māteriēs*, *māteria*, 59, 2, *a*).

*mātūrē*, compared, 77, 1.

*mātūrus*, compared, 71, 3.

*māximē*, compared with, 74.

*maxumus*, 9, 1.

Means, abl. of, 218.

*medius*, 'middle of,' 241, 1.

*mēd*, 84, 3.

*Mediae* (consonants), 2, 3, *b*), footnote 2.

*mei*, as objective gen., 242, 2.

*melius est*, 271, 1 *b*).

*memini*, 133; constr., 206, 1, *a*; 2, *a*.

*memor*, 70, 2.

*-men*, *-mentum*, 147, 4.

*mēnsis*, 38, 2, footnote 1.

*mentem* (in *mentem venire*), 206, 3.

*-met*, 6, 3; 84, 2.

Metrical close of sent., 350, 12.

*metuō*, 296, 2.

*mī*, dat., 84, 1; voc., 86, 2.

*mī*, voc. of *meus*, 86, 2.

Middle voice, verbs in, 175, 2, *d*).

*mīles*, decl., 33.

*militiae*, 232, 2.

*mille*, *millia*, 80, 5.

*minimē*, in answers, 162, 5, *b*).

*minimum*, 77, 3.

*minus* = *minus quam*, 217, 3.

*miror*, 113.

*mīrus*, 75, 2.

*miscēre*, with abl., 218, 5; with dat., 358, 3.

*miserēor*, with gen., 209, 2.

*miserēscō*, with gen., 209, 2.

*miseret*, constr., 209.

*modium*, gen. plu., 25, 6, *a*).

*modo*, in wishes and provisos, 310.

*monēō*, 103; constr., 178, 1, *d*).

months, decl., 68, 1; 70, 5, *a*); names, 371, 1.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

Moods, 94, 2.

— in independent sentences, 271 f.

— in dependent clauses, 282 f.

*morior*, 109, 2, c).

*Mora*, 366, 1.

*mōs*, decl., 36; *mōrēs*, 61.

*mōs est*, with substantive clause, 297, 3.

*muliebres secus*, 185, 1.

*multum*, 77, 3; compared, 77, 1.

*multus*, compared, 72; with another adj.,

241, 3.

*mūs*, decl., 40, 1, d).

*mūtāre*, with abl., 218, 5.

Mutes, 2, 3.

Mute stems, 30.

## N.

*n adulterinum*, 2, 6.

*-nam*, 90, 2, d.

Nasals, 2, 6.

Nasal stems, 35.

*nātū*, 57, 1; 73, 4, footnotes, 4, 5; 226, 1.

Natural gender, 14.

*nātus*, constr., 215.

*nāvis*, 41, 4.

*-ne*, 6, 3 f; 162, 2, c); 300, 1, b); *-ne ...*

*an*, 162, 4; in indir. double questions, 300, 4.

*nē*, in prohibitions, 276; with hortatory

subjv., 274; with jussive, 275; with concessive,

278; with optative, 279; in

substantive clauses, 295 f.

*nē*, 'lest', 282, 1; 296, 2.

*nē nōn* for *ut* after verbs of fearing, 296, 2, a.

*nē ... quidem*, 347, 1.

*nec*, 341, 1, d); *nec usquam*, 341, 2, d).

*necesse est*, 295, 8.

*necne*, 162, 4.

*nefās*, 58.

Negatives, 347, 2; two negatives strengthening the negation, 347, 2.

*nēmō*, 57, 3; 252, 6.

*nēquam*, 70, 6; compared, 72.

*neque*, 341, 1, d); *neque* in purpose clauses, 282, 1, c.

*nequēd*, 137, 1.

*nēquiter*, compared, 77, 1.

*nesciō quis*, 253, 6; *nesciō an*, 300, 5.

Neuter, see Gender.

*neuter*, 66; 92, 1.

*nēve* (*neu*), in purpose clauses, 282, 1, d.

*nihil*, 58.

*nihil est cūr, quārē, quān*, 295, 7.

*nisi*, 306, 1 and 4.

*nisi forte*, 306, 5.

*nisi sī*, 306, 5.

*nisi verō*, 306, 5.

*nītōr*, constr., 218, 3.

*nix*, decl., 40, 1, d).

*nōlī*, with inf., in prohibitions, 276, c.

*nōlim*, 280, 2, a.

*nōllem*, 280, 4.

*nōlō*, 130; with inf., 331, IV and a; 270, 2, a; with subjv., 296, 1, a.

*nōmen*, decl., 35; *nōmen est*, constr., 190, 1.

Nominative, 17; 170; used for voc., 171, 1; nom. sing. lacking, 57, 6.

Nones, 371, 2, b).

*nōn*, in answers, 162, 5, b); with poten.

subjv., 280; with deliberative, 277.

*nōn modo* for *nōn modo nōn*, 343, 2, a.

*nōnne*, 162, 2, a); 300, 1, b), N.

*nōn quia*, with ind., 286, 1, c; with subjv., 286, 1, b).

*nōn quān*, with subjv., 286, 1, b).

*nōn quod*, with ind., 286, 1, c; with subjv., 286, 1, b).

*nostrī*, as objective gen., 242, 2.

*nostrum*, as gen. of whole, 242, 2; as possessive gen., 242, 2, a.

Nouns, 12 ff.; 353; derivation of, 147 f.

— in *-is* not always *i*-stems, 38, 1.

— of agency, force, 353, 4.

— used in plu. only, 56.

— used in sing. only, 55.

— used only in certain cases, 57.

— indeclinable, 58.

— with change of meaning in plural, 61.

— syntax, 166 f.

— predicate, agreement of, etc., 167 f.

— appositives, agreement of, etc., 169 f.

Noun and adj. forms of the verb, 95, 2.

*nōvī*, as pres., 262, A.

*novus*, compared, 73, 3.

*-ns*, decl. of nouns in, 40, 1, c).

*nūlla causa est cūr, quārē, quān*, 295, 7.

*nūllus*, 66; 57, 3; 92, 1.

Number, 16; 94, 4.

*num*, 162, 2, b); 300, 1, b).

Numerals, 78 f.; peculiarities in use of, 81.

*nūper*, compared, 77, 1.

*-nus*, 151, 2.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

## O.

- o-, stems in, 23.
- o, instead of u in some words, 9, 1; 9, 4.
- Object, direct, 172 f.; indirect, 187 f.
- Objective gen., 200.
- Oblique cases, 17, 2.
- obliviscor*, constr., 206, 1, b; 2.
- ōdi*, 133.
- olle*, archaic for *ille*, 87.
- olus (a, um), 148, 1.
- om, later -um in 2d decl., 23.
- on, Greek nouns, 2d decl. in, 27.
- Onomatopœia, 375, 4.
- opera*, *operæ*, 61.
- opinione* with abl., 217, 4.
- opis*, 57, 6; *opēs*, 61.
- oportet*, 295, 6 and 8.
- oportuit*, with pres. inf. 'ought to have,' 270, 2; with perf. inf., 270, 2, a.
- Optative subjv., 272; 279; substantive clauses developed from, 296.
- optimātēs*, decl., 40, 1, d).
- optumus*, 9, 1.
- opus est*, 218, 2.
- or, 147, 2.
- Oratio Obliqua, 313 f.
- Ordinals, 78, 1; 79.
- oriundus*, constr., 215, 2.
- orō*, with acc., 178, 1, a).
- Orthography, peculiarities, 9.
- ortus*, constr., 215.
- ōs*, 57, 7.
- os*, 42.
- os, later -us in 2d decl., 23.
- ōs, later -or in 3d decl., 36, 1.
- , -ōs, Greek nouns, 2d decl. in, 27.
- ōsus, 151, 3.
- Oxymoron, 375, 2.

## P.

- paenitet*, with gen., 209.
- palam*, 144, 2.
- Palatal mutes, 2, 4.
- Parasitic vowels, 7, 3.
- parātus* with infin., 333.
- pariō*, 109, 2, a).
- pars*, *partēs*, 61.
- parte*, 228, 1, b.
- partem*, 185, 1.
- Participial stem, 97, III; formation, 119.
- Participles, in -āns and -ēns, 70, 3; syntax, 336 ff.

- Participles, fut. act., 119, 4; denoting purpose, 337, 4.
- perf. act., how supplied, 356, 2.
- perf. pass., 336, 3; as pres., 336, 5.
- pres. partic., 336, 2; with conative force, 336, 2, a.
- perf. pass., with active meaning, 114, 2; with noun equivalent to abstract noun, 337, 5; with *habēō*, 337, 6.
- with *videō*, *audiō*, *faciō*, etc., 337, 3.
- of deponents, 112, b.
- Particles, 139 f.; 341 f.
- Partitive apposition, 169, 5.
- Partitive gen., so called, 201.
- Parts of speech, 10.
- parum*, comparison, 77, 1.
- parvus*, comparison, 72.
- Passive, verbs in, with middle meaning, 175, 2, d); 256; constr. of passive verbs of saying, etc., 332, and note; how supplied when missing, 356, 1.
- patior*, 109, 2, c); 113; with inf., 331, III.
- Patrial adjs., 70, 5, c).
- Patronyms, 148, 6.
- paulum*, 77, 3.
- paulus*, 9, 2.
- pelagus*, gender of, 26, 2.
- penātēs*, decl., 40, 1, d).
- Pentameter, dactylic, 369.
- Penult, 6, 2.
- per* with acc. of time and space, 181, 2.
- Perfect active ptc., how supplied in Latin, 356, 2.
- Perfect tense, 262; 268, 1.
- stem, 97, II; formation, 118.
- in -āvi, -ēvi, -īvi contracted, 116, 1.
- historical perf., 262.
- with force of pres., 262; 133, 2.
- Periodic structure, 351, 5.
- Periphrastic conj., 115; 269, 3; in conditional sentences of the 3d type, 304, 3, b); in indir. disc., 322; in passive, 337, 7, b, 1.
- fut. inf., 270, 3.
- Persons, 95, 4; 2d sing. of indefinite subject, 356, 3.
- Personal pronouns, 84; 242; as subject, omission of, 166, 2; as objective genitives, 242, 2.
- endings, 96.
- piget*, with gen., 209.
- Place whence, 229; place where, 228.
- placitus*, 114, 2.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

*plēbēs*, 59, 2, *d*); *plēbī*, 52, 2.  
 Plenty and Want, verbs of, constr., 212, cf. 218, 8.  
*plēnus*, 218, 8, *a*.  
 Pleonasm, 374, 3.  
*plērdque*, 6, 5.  
 Pluperfect tense, 263; 287, 2; 288, 3; with imperfect meaning, 133, 2.  
 Plural, 16; in 5th decl., 52, 4; of proper names, 55, 4, *a*); of abstract nouns, 55, 4, *c*); nouns used in, only, 56; with change of meaning, 61; stylistic use, 353, 1; 2.  
*Pluralia tantum*, 56; 81, 4, *b*).  
*plūs*, 70; 70, 4; = *plūs quam*, 217, 3.  
 Polysyndeton, 341, 4, *b*).  
*poscō*, 178, 1, *a*).  
 Position of clauses, 351, 3.  
 — of words, 348; 350; 351.  
 Possessive dat., 190; gen., 198; contrasted with dat. of poss., 359, 1.  
 Possessive pronouns, 86; 243; = objective gen., 243, 2; position of, 243, 1, *a*.  
*possum*, 126; with present infin. 'I might,' 271, 1, *a*).  
*post*, 144, 1; in expressions of time, 357, 1.  
 Post-positive words, 343, 1, *c*).  
*posteaquam*, 287, 1, 4.  
*posterus*, *posterior*, 73, 2.  
*postquam*, 287; separated, 287, 3; with imperf. ind., 287, 4; with subjv., 287, 5.  
*postremus*, 241, 2.  
*postridiē*, with gen., 201, 3, *a*.  
*postulō*, constr., 178, 1, *a*.  
 Potential subjv., 272; 280.  
*potior*, with gen., 212, 2; with abl., 218, 1; in gerundive constr., 339, 4.  
 —, adj., 73, 1.  
*potius*, compared, 77, 1.  
*potui*, *poteram*, in apodosis of conditional sent. of 3d type, 304, 3, *a*); in indir. disc., 322, *c*.  
*potui*, with pres. inf. = 'could have,' 270, 2.  
*potuerim*, in dependent apodosis, 322, *c*.  
*pōtus*, 114, 2.  
*praesēns*, 125.  
*prānsus*, 114, 2.  
*precī*, -em, -e, 57, 5, *a*.  
 Predicate, 163.  
 — gen., 198, 3; 203, 5.

Predicate nouns, 167; 168; in acc., 177; predicate nouns or adjs. attracted to dat., 327, 2, *a*; to nom., 328, 2.  
 — adjectives, 232, 2; 177, 2.  
 Prepositions with acc., 141; with abl., 142; as adverbs, 144; inseparable prepositions, 159, 3, *N*.; position, 350, 7; prepositional phrases as attributive modifiers, 353, 5; anastrophe of, 144, 3; 141, 2; 142, 3; usage with abl. of sep., 214 f.; with abl. of source, 215.  
 Present tense, 259; gnomic, 259, 1; conative, 259, 2; historical, 259, 3; with *jam*, etc., 259, 4.  
 — stem, 97, 1; formation, 117.  
 — perfect, 262.  
 Price, indefinite, special words in gen., 203, 4.  
 — abl. of, 225.  
*prīdiē*, with gen., 201, 3, *a*; with acc., 144, 2.  
 Primary tenses, see Principal tenses.  
*primus*, 'first who,' 241, 2.  
*princeps*, decl., 31.  
 Principal parts, 99; list, p. 251.  
 — tenses, 258 f.  
*prior*, compared, 73, 1.  
*prius*, compared, 77, 1.  
*priusquam*, with ind., 291; with subjv., 292; separated, 291.  
*procul*, 144, 2.  
 Prohibitions, method of expressing, 276.  
 Prohibitive subjv., 276.  
 Prolepsis, 374, 5.  
 Pronominal adjs., 253.  
 Pronouns, 82 f.; personal, omission of, as subject, 166, 2; syntax, 242 f.; personal, 242 f.; possess., 243 f.; reflex., 244 f.; reciprocal, 245 f.; demonstrative, 246 f.; relative, 250 f.; indef., 252 f.; position, 350, 5; 355.  
 Pronunciation, Roman, 3.  
*prope*, compared, 77, 1.  
 Proper names, abbreviated, 373.  
 — nouns, 12, 1.  
*propior*, compared, 73, 1; with acc., 141, 3.  
*proprius*, with dat., 204, 2, *a*; with gen., 204, 2.  
 Prosody, 360 f.  
*prōsum*, 125, *N*.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

Protasis, 301; denoting repeated action, 302, 3; without *sī*, 305; of indef. 2d sing., 302, 2.  
 Provisos, 310.  
*proximē*, -us, with acc., 141, 3.  
*prudēs*, 70.  
*-pte*, 86, 3.  
*puet*, with gen., 209.  
*puer*, decl., 23.  
 Purpose, how denoted, 282; 338, 3; 339, 2, 6; 340, 1; 191; 337, 4.  
 Purpose clauses, 282; independent of principal verb, 282, 4; 339, 6; 340, 1.

## Q.

*-qu-*, both letters consonants, 74, a.  
*quaerō*, 300, 1, b), N.  
*quaesō*, 137, 2.  
 Quality, gen., 203; 224, 3; abl., 224.  
*quam*, in comparisons, 217, 2; with superl., 240, 3.  
*quam sī*, 307, 1.  
*quam ut*, with subjv., 284, 4.  
*quamquam*, with ind., 309, 2; with subjv., 309, 6; = 'and yet', 309, 5.  
*quamvis*, with subjv., 309, 1; 6; denoting a fact, 309, 6.  
*quandō*, 286, 3, b).  
 Quantity, 5.  
 — of syllables, 5, B; 363 f.  
 — of vowels, 5, A; 362; in Greek words, 365.  
*quasi*, 307, 1.  
*quatiō*, 109, 2, a).  
*-que*, accent of word preceding, 6, 3; 6, 6; 341; 1, b); 2, a); 4, c).  
*quēō*, 137, 1.  
 Questions, word, sentence, 162 f.; rhetorical, 162, 3; double (alternative), 162, 4; indirect, 300; questions in indir. disc., 315.  
*quī*, rel., 89; interr., 90; indef., 91; for *quis* in indir. questions, 90, 2, b); with *nē*, *sī*, *nisi*, *num*, 91, 5; in purpose clauses, 282, 2; abl., 90, 2, a).  
*quia*, in causal clauses, 286, 1.  
*quicum*, 89.  
*quicumque*, 91, 8.  
*quidam*, 91; syntax, 252, 3.  
*quidem*, post-positive, 347, 1.  
*quilibet*, 91.  
*quin*, in result clauses, 284, 3; in substantive clauses, 295, 3; 298; = *quī*

*nōn* in clauses of characteristic, 283, 4; with ind., 281, 3; in indir. disc., 322 and a; *nūlla causa est quin*, 295, 7.  
*quinam*, 90, 2, d).  
*Quintilis* (= *Jūlius*), 371.  
*quippe quī*, 283, 3.  
*Quiritēs*, decl., 40, 1, d).  
*quis*, indef., 91; interr., 90; 90, 2, c); 252, 1; *nesciō quis*, 253, 6; with *nē*, *sī*, *nisi*, *num*, 91, 5.  
*quis* = *quibus*, 89.  
*quisnam*, 90, 2, d).  
*quispiam*, 91.  
*quisquam*, 91; 252, 4.  
*quisque*, 91; 252, 5.  
*quisquis*, 91, 8.  
*quivis*, 91.  
*quō*, in purpose clauses, 282, 1, a).  
*quoad*, with ind., 293; with subjv., 293, III, 2.  
*quod*, in causal clauses, 286, 1; in substantive clauses, 299; 331, V, a; 'as regards the fact', 299, 2.  
*quod audierim*, 283, 5; *quod sciam*, 283, 5.  
*quod sī*, 185, 2.  
*quom*, 9, 1.  
*quō minus*, 295, 3.  
*quoniam*, 286, 1.  
*quoque*, post-positive, 347.  
*-quus*, decl. of nouns in, 24.

## R.

*rapiō*, 109, 2, a).  
*rāstrum*, plurals of, 60, 2.  
 Reciprocal pronouns, 85, 2; 245; cf. 253, 3.  
 Reduplication in perf., 118, 4, a); in pres., 117, 7.  
*rēfert*, constr., 210; 211, 4.  
 Reflexive pronouns, 85; 244; 249, 3.  
*regō*, 105.  
*rēi*, 362, 1, b).  
*rēciō*, 362, 5.  
 Relative clauses, 311; 312; characteristic, 283.  
 — conditional sentences, 312, 2.  
 — pronouns, 89; 250 f.; = Eng. demonstrative, 251, 6; agreement, 250; fondness for subordinate clauses, 355.  
 — clauses with *dignus*, *indignus*, *idoneus*, 282, 3.  
 — of purpose, 282, 2; of result, 284, 2.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

Relative, taking acc. and infin. in indir. disc., 314, 4.

*reliqui*, 253, 5.

*rēmex*, decl., 32.

*reminiscor*, constr., 206, 2.

*reposcō*, constr., 178, 1, a).

*requiēs*, *requiem*, *requiētem*, 59, 2, c).

*rēs*, decl., 51.

Result, acc. of, 173, B; 176; clauses of, 284; 297; in dependent apodosis, 322, and a; sequence of tense in, 268, 6.

*revertor*, 114, 3.

Rhetorical questions, 162, 3; 277, a; in indir. disc., 315, 2.

Rhotacism, 8, 1; 36, 1.

*rogātū*, 219, 2.

*rogō*, constr., 178, 1, c); 178, 1, a).

Roman pronunciation, 3.

Root, 17, 3, footnote 1.

-*rs*, decl. of nouns in, 40, 1, c).

*rūre*, 229, 1, b.

*rūrī*, 228, 1, c.

*rūs*, 182, 1, b; 57, 7.

## S.

-*s*, decl. of monosyllables in, preceded by one or more consonants, 40, 1, b).

*s*-stems, 36.

*sacer*, 65; comparison, 73, 3.

*saepe*, compared, 77, 1.

*sāl*, 57, 7; *sālēs*, 61.

*salūbris*, 68, 3.

*salūtāris*, 73, 4.

*salvē*, *salvēte*, 137, 4.

*Samnītēs*, decl., 40, 1, d).

*sānē*, in answers, 162, 5.

*sapiō*, 109, 2, a).

*sciō*, *quod sciam*, 283, 5.

*scribere ad aliquem*, 358, 2.

*sē*, 244.

Second conj., 103; decl., 23; peculiarities, 25; second person indefinite, 280, 3; 356, 3; 302, 2.

Secondary tenses, see Historical tenses.

*secus*, compared, 77, 1.

*secus* (*virile secus*), 185, 1; 58.

*sēd*, 85, 3.

*sed*, 343, 1, a).

*sedile*, decl., 39.

Semi-deponent verbs, 114.

Semivowels, 2, 8.

*senex*, 42; compared, 73, 4.

Sentences, classification, 160 f.; simple and compound, 164; sentence-structure, 351; sentence questions, 162, 2.

*sententiā*, 220, 3.

Separation, dat. of, 188, 2, d); gen., 212, 3; abl., 214.

Sequence of tenses, 267; 268.

*sequor*, 113.

*servos*, 24.

*sēsē*, 85.

*Sextilis* (= *Augustus*), 371.

Short syllables, 5, B, 2; vowels, 5, A, 2.

*sī*, with indir. questions, 300, 3; in protasis, 301; omitted, 305.

*signifer*, decl., 23, 2.

*silentiō*, 220, 2.

*silvestris*, 68, 3.

*similis*, with dat., 204, 3; with gen., 204, 3; comp., 71, 4.

*sī minus*, 306, 2.

*simul*, 144, 2.

*simul ac*, 287, 1; 2.

*sī nōn*, 306, 1 and 2.

*sin*, 306, 3.

Singular, second person indefinite, 280, 3; 356, 3; 302, 2.

*sinō*, with inf., 331, III.

Smelling, verbs of, constr., 176, 5.

Soft consonants, 2, 3, b), footnote 2.

*socer*, decl., 23, 2.

*socium*, gen. plu., 25, 6, c).

*sōl*, 57, 7.

*soleō*, 114, 1.

*sōlus*, 66; *sōlus est quī* with subjv., 283, 2.

Sonant consonants, 2, 3, b), footnote 2.

*Sōracte*, 39, 2.

Sounds, classification, 2.

— of the letters, 3.

Source, abl., 215.

Specification, abl. of, 226.

*spēi*, 362, 1, b.

Spelling, see Orthography.

Spirants, 2, 7.]

Spondaic verses, 368, 2.

*sponte suā*, 220, 3.

*spontis*, -*e*, 57, 2, b.

Stem, 17, 3.

—, verb, 97, 117.

Style, hints on, 352 f.

*su* = *sv*, 3, 3.

*sub*, with acc. and abl., 143.

Subject, 163; nom., 166; acc., 184; subject acc. of inf., 184; omitted, 314, 5.



The references are to sections and paragraphs.

Subjective gen., 199.

Subjunctive, tenses in, 94, 3.

— in independent sentences, 272; by attraction, 324; tenses of, 266 f.; method of expressing future time in, 269; volitive (hortatory, jussive, prohibitive, deliberative, concessive), 273 f.; optative (wishes), 279; potential, 280; in clauses of purpose, 282; of characteristic, 283; of result, 284; of cause, 286; temporal clauses with *postquam*, *posteaquam*, 287, 5; temporal clauses with *cum*, 288–290; with *antequam* and *priusquam*, 292; with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, 293, III, 2; substantive clauses, 294 f.; indir. questions, 300; in apodosis of first type conditions, 302, 4; jussive subjunctive as protasis of condition, 305, 2; with *velut*, *tamquam*, etc., 307; with *neccesse est*, *oportet*, etc., 295, 6 and 8; with *licet*, 308, a; 309, 4; with *quamvis*, *quamquam*, *etsi*, *cum*, 'although', 390 f.

*sublātus*, p. 99, footnote.

*subm* = *summ*-, 9, 2.

Subordinate clauses, 165.

Substantive clauses, 294 f.; without *ut*, 295, 8; of result, 297; introduced by *quod*, 299.

*subter*, 143, I.

Suffixes, 17, 3, footnote 1; 147 f.

*sui*, 85; as objective gen., 244, 2; = possessive gen., 244, 2.

*sum*, 100.

*summus*, 'top of', 241, I.

*sunt qui*, with subjv., 283, 2.

*suōpte*, *suāpte*, 86, 3.

*supellex*, 42, 2.

*super*, 143, I.

*superus*, compared, 73, 2.

Superlative lacking, 73, 4; force of, 240, 2.

Supine, 340.

Surd consonants, 2, 3, a), footnote 1.

*sūs*, decl., 41.

*sustulī*, p. 99, footnote.

*suus*, 86, I; 244; *suus quisque*, 244, 4, a.

Syllaba anceps, 366, 10.

Syllables, 4; quantity of, 5, B.

Synapheia, 367, 6.

Synaeresis, 367, 1.

Synchysis, 350, II, d).

Syncope, 7, 4; 367, 8.

Synecdochical acc., 180.

Synzesis, 367, 1.

Syntax, 160 f.

Systole, 367, 3.

## T.

*taedet*, 209.

*talentum*, gen. plu., 25, 6, a).

*tamen*, 343, I, f.

*tameſi*, 309, 2.

*tamquam*, *tamquam si*, 307.

*tantōn*, 6, 4.

*-tās*, 149; gen. *-tātis*, decl. of nouns in, 40, I, e).

Tasting, verbs of, constr., 176, 5.

*tēd*, 84, 3.

Temporal clauses, 287 ff.

*temporis* (*id temporis*), 185, 2.

*tener*, 64.

Tenses, 94, 3; 257 ff.; of inf., 270; of inf. in indir. disc., 317; of participles, 336; of subjv., 266; sequence of, 266; in indir. disc., 317; 318.

Tenuēs (consonants), 2, 3, a), footnote 1.

*tenuis*, position, 142, 3.

Terminations, 17, 3.

*-ternus*, 154.

*terrā marique*, 128, I, c.

*terrestris*, 68, 3.

Tetrameter verses, 366, II.

Thesis, 366, 6.

Third conj., 105; 109 f.; decl., 28 f.; gender in, 43 f.

*-tim*, 157, 2.

Time, at which, 230; during which, 181; 231, I; within which, 231.

*timeō nē* and *ut*, 296, 2.

*-tinus*, 154.

*-tiō*, 147, 3.

Tmesis, 367, 7.

*-tor*, use of nouns in, 353, 4.

*tōtus*, 66; 228, I, b).

*trabs*, decl., 31.

*trāditur*, *trādītum est*, 332, N.

*trāns*, constr. of verbs compounded with, 179.

Transitive verbs, 174.

*trēs*, 80, 3.

*tribus*, decl., 49, 3.

Trimeter verses, 366, II.

*trīnī*, 81, 4, b).

*triumvir*, gen. plu. of, 25, 6, b).

Trochee, 366, 2.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

-trum, 147, 4.  
tū, 84.  
tūdō, 149.  
tūi, as objective gen., 242, 2.  
tūra, 147, 3, a).  
tūs, 57, 7.  
-tus, 147, 3; 151, 4.  
tussis, decl., 38.  
tūte, tūtemet, 84, 2.

U.

u, instead of i in some words, 9, 1; instead of o, 9, 1; 9, 4.  
u, becomes v, 367, 4.  
ū-stems, 48.  
ū-stems, 41.  
-ū, dat. sing., 4th decl., 49, 2.  
ubi, with ind., 287, 1; 2; with gen., 201, 3.  
-ubus, dat. plu., 4th decl., 49, 3.  
ūllus, 66.  
ulterior, compared, 73, 1.  
ultimus, 241, 2.  
-ulus, 150, 2; (a, um), 148, 1.  
-um, 1st decl., gen. plu. in, 21, 2, d); 2d decl., 25, 6.  
-undus, -undī, in gerund and gerundive, 116, 2.  
ūnus, 66; 92, 1; ūnus est quī, with subjv., 283, 2.  
-us, neuter nouns of 2d decl. in, 26, 2.  
ūsque ad, 141, 1.  
ūsus est, with abl., 218, 2.  
ut, temporal, 287, 1; 2; ut, utī, in purpose clauses, 282; in result clauses, 284; in substantive clauses, 295 f.; substantive clauses without, 295, 8; with verbs of fearing, 296, 2.  
ut nē = nē, 282, 1, b).  
ut nōn instead of nē, 282, 1, c; in clauses of result, 284, 297.  
ut quī, introducing clauses of characteristic, 283, 3.  
ut sī, 307, 1.  
uter, 66; 92, 1.  
ūter, decl., 40, 1, d).  
utercumque, 92, 2.  
uterlibet, 92, 2.  
uterque, 92, 2; 355, 2.  
utervis, 92, 2.  
ūtīlius est, 271, 1, b).  
utinam, with optative subj., 279, 1 and 2.  
ūtor, with abl., 218, 1; in gerundive constr., 339, 4.

utrdque, 6, 5.  
utrum . . . an, 162, 4; 300, 4.

V.

v, 1, 1.  
v, becomes u, 367, 5.  
valē, 363, 2, b).  
Value, indefinite, in gen., 203, 3.  
vannus, gender of, 26, 1, b).  
vās, 59, 1.  
-ve, 6, 3; 342, 1, b).  
vel, 342, 1, b); with superl., 240, 3.  
velim, 280, 2, a.  
vellem, 280, 4.  
velut, velut sī, 307, 1.  
venter, decl., 40, 1, d).  
Verbs, 94 f.; personal endings, 96; dependent, 112; archaic and poetic forms, 116, 4; irregular, 124; defective, 133; impersonal, 138; with substantive clauses of result, 277, 2; omission of, 166, 3; transitive, 174; used absolutely, 174, a; passives used as middles, 175, 2, d); of smelling and tasting, constr., 176, 5; not used in passive, 177, 3, a; intransitives impersonal in passive, 187, II, b; 256, 3; compounded with preps., constr., 187, III; of judicial action, constr., 208; derivation of, 155 f.; inceptive or inchoative, 155, 1; frequentative or intensive, 155, 2; desiderative, 155, 3; denominative, 156; agreement of, 254 f.  
Verb stems, 97; formation of, 117 f.  
vereor, 113; 296, 2.  
Vergilius, gen. of, 25, 1.  
vērō, 343, 1, f); in answers, 162, 5.  
Verse, 366, 3.  
Verse-structure, 366 f.  
Versification, 361.  
versus, 141, 2.  
vērum, 343, 1, b).  
vescor, with abl., 218, 1.  
vesper, decl., 23, 2.  
vesperī, 232, 2.  
vestrī, 242, 2.  
vestrum, as gen. of whole, 242, 2; as possessive gen., 242, 2, a.  
velō, with inf., 331, II.  
vetus, 70; compared, 73, 3.  
vī, 220, 2.  
vicem, 185, 1; vicis, vice, 57, 5, b).

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

- victor*, decl., 34.  
*viden*, 6, 4.  
*videō*, with pres. partic., 337, 3.  
*vigil*, decl., 34.  
*violenter*, 77, 4, a.  
*vir*, decl., 23.  
 —, gen. plu. of nouns compounded with, 25, 6, *δ*).  
*virile secus*, 185, 1.  
*virus*, gender of, 26, 2.  
*vīs*, decl., 41.  
 Vocative case, 17; 19, 1; 171; in *-ī* for *-ie*, 25, 1; position of, 350, 3.  
 Voiced sounds, 2, 3, a.  
 Voiced consonants, 2, 3, *δ*).  
 Voiceless consonants, 2, 3, a.  
 Voices, 94; 256; middle voice, 256, 1.  
 Volitive subjunctive, 272 f.  
*volnus*, 9, 1.  
*volō*, 130; with inf., 331, IV and a; 270, 2, a; with subjv., 296, 1, a.  
*volt*, 9, 1.  
*voltus*, 9, 1.  
*voluntate*, 220, 2.  
*-volus*, comparison of adjs. in, 71, 5.  
 Vowels, 2, 1; sounds of the, 3, 1; quantity of, 5, A; contraction of, 7, 2; parasitic, 7, 3.  
 Vowel changes, 7.  
*vulgus*, gender of, 26, 2.  
*-vum*, *-vus*, decl. of nouns in, 24.  
 W.  
 Wish, clauses with *dum*, etc., expressing a, 310.  
 Wishes, subjunctive in, 279; see Optative subjunctive.  
 Word-formation, 146 f.  
 Word-order, 348 f.  
 Word questions, 162, 1.  
 X.  
*x*, 2, 9.  
*-x*, decl. of monosyllables in, preceded by one or more cons., 40, 1, *δ*).  
 Y.  
*y*, 1, 1.  
 'You,' indefinite, 356, 3; 280, 3; 302, 2.  
 Z.  
*z*, 1, 1; 2, 9.  
 Zeugma, 374, 2, a).

## Latin Composition.

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, Cornell University. 16mo, cloth, 172 pages. Price, 80 cents.

THIS book has been prepared with the conviction that the primary function of Latin Composition in secondary schools is to extend and strengthen the pupil's knowledge of Latin grammar. Accordingly, the lessons are devoted mainly to exercises in applying the principles of the various case and mood constructions recognized in our Latin Grammars. In order that the writing of continuous discourse may not be neglected, passages of simple English narrative, involving the principles covered in the previous exercises, are frequently introduced.

Grammatical references are to Bennett, Allen & Greenough, and Harkness.

The illustrative examples given at the beginning of each lesson have been drawn with great care from Latin literature—mainly from Cicero's speeches. The English sentences set for translation into Latin have also, in most cases, been suggested by passages occurring in the works of classical authors.

**E. B. Lease**, *Assistant Professor of Latin, University of Michigan*: Bennett's Latin Prose Composition has just the qualities such a work should have—clearness, simplicity, and directness of statement. All in all, it seems to be the best book for its purpose yet published.

**J. Edmund Barss**, *Hotchkiss School, Lakeville, Conn.*: I have been using Bennett's Latin Composition with a class reading Virgil. I have found it a thoroughly usable book, both with the author's and with other standard grammars; and I am especially pleased with the successful union of interest with practical fitness in the sentences.

**A. E. Briggs**, *Principal of High School, Chelsea, Mass.*: Bennett's Latin Composition commends itself highly to me. The ground covered, the excellent arrangement for progressive grammatical study, the numerous well-chosen examples, the fertile vocabulary, and the choice of sentences prove that the author knows the need of our pupils, and, better yet, how to supply them.

**Professor S. C. Mitchell**, *Richmond College, Va.*: It is the most sensible and helpful book of its kind that has come into my hands.

**C. P. Howland**, *Drury College, Springfield, Mo.*: We are using the book with great satisfaction with pupils who are reading Cæsar and Cicero.

## A Latin Grammar.

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, Cornell University. 12mo, cloth, 265 pages. Price, 80 cents.

**I**N this book the essential facts of Latin Grammar are presented within the smallest compass consistent with high scholarly standards. It covers not only the work of the preparatory school, but also that of the required courses in college and university. By omitting rare forms and syntactical usages found only in ante-classical and post-classical Latin, and by relegating to an Appendix theoretical and historical questions, it has been found possible to treat the subject with entire adequacy in the compass of 250 pages exclusive of Indexes. In the German schools, books of this scope fully meet the exacting demands of the entire gymnasial course, and those who have tried Bennett's Grammar find that they are materially helped by being relieved of the mass of useless and irrelevant matter which forms the bulk of the older grammars.

**Professor William A. Houghton, Bowdoin College, Brunswick, Maine :**

The Grammar proper is admirably adapted to its purpose in its clearness of arrangement and classification, and in its simplicity and precision of statement, giving definitely just what the pupil must know, and not crowding the page with a mass of matter that too often disheartens the young student instead of helping him. I trust it will come into general use, for I think for the reasons just given, and because of its moderate compass and attractive appearance, students are likely to get more practical grammatical knowledge out of it than they generally do from the larger grammars.

**Professor Alfred M. Wilson, Lewis Institute, Chicago, Illinois :** I have examined it very carefully, and I can say, truly and with pleasure, that my first impressions have become positive convictions as to the very great value and utility of the book. I am daily using it with increasing delight and satisfaction. It is clear, concise, and independent.

**The Critic, Feb. 29, 1896.** The book is a marvel of condensed, yet clear and forcible, statement. Just enough examples are given to illustrate each principle without discouraging the pupil by their number and variety. The ground covered in the treatment of forms and syntax is adequate for ordinary school work and for the use of freshmen and sophomores in college.

## Appendix to Bennett's Latin Grammar.

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, Cornell University. For university work. 12mo, cloth, 232 pages. Price, 80 cents.

THE purpose of this book is to give such information regarding the history and development of the Latin language as experience has shown to be of service to advanced students.

The subjects treated are the Latin Alphabet, Pronunciation, Hidden Quantity, Accent, Orthography, The Latin Sounds, Inflections, Adverbs and Prepositions, and Syntax. Of these subjects, those of Hidden Quantity, Inflections, and Syntax receive special attention; and the results of recent investigation are set forth fully and clearly, but in compact form.

**Professor Edouard Wölfflin**, in the *Archiv für Lateinische Lexikographie und Grammatik*. February, 1896. Auf geringem Raume ist viel wissenschaftliches zusammengedrängt, und zwar mit praktischem Geschicke; zwei längere Listen geben die lateinischen Wörter von bestrittener Quantität und Orthographie, wobei die Ansätze von Marx oft berichtigt sind. . . . Die deutsche Wissenschaft wird sich nur freuen dass das amerikanische Schulwesen ein so brauchbares Hilfsmittel gewonnen hat.

**Professor Hermann Osthoff**, *University of Heidelberg*: Steht auf der Höhe des heutigen Wissens.

**Professor Harry Thurston Peck**, *Columbia College, N.Y.*: It is no exaggeration to say that so compact, helpful, and practical a collection of indispensable information cannot be found elsewhere in any language whatsoever. Even in Germany, the home of classical enchiridia, nothing has yet appeared that is so satisfactory. Professor Bennett seems to divine by instinct just what questions arise in the mind of the student, and he here answers them in advance in a delightfully lucid and simple fashion. . . . Everywhere the best authorities are cited; and it is certain that to many teachers, as well as students, the mere perusal of this little manual will open up many new vistas, and will put them in touch with the most scholarly doctrine of the day. In fact the book is one that no progressive instructor can afford to be without, as it summarizes an immense amount of information that is of the utmost practical importance.

## Complete Edition.

BENNETT'S Latin Grammar and Appendix in one volume. 12mo, half leather, 265 + 232 pages. Price, \$1.25.

## *Caesar's Gallic War.*

Revised Edition, with Indicated Quantities, Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, Table of Idioms, Key to the English Pronunciation of Proper Names, Illustrations, and Maps. Edited by Professor FRANCIS W. KELSEY, University of Michigan. 12mo, half-leather, 584 pages. Price, \$1.25.

**I**N this revised edition many changes and additions have been made, rendering the book, without question, the best-equipped text of Caesar's Gallic War published for school use.

The Introduction and Notes have been rewritten, and the Vocabulary has been enlarged. A Key to the English Pronunciation of Proper Names has been added, and several of the plans have been replaced by new ones.

The Text has been reprinted from new plates which are cast from type larger than that used in the old book. The most important change in this new edition is the marking of the long vowels. This has been done in the belief that if pupils are taught to pronounce accurately in the first years of their Latin reading, and have enough practice in pronouncing, they will hardly experience difficulty afterward.

Two editions of the Text only, one with and one without marked quantities, have been prepared, and either of these will be furnished free to schools using the book.

**William F. Bradbury**, *Principal of Latin School, Cambridge, Mass.*: It is a work of art in every respect.

**Dr. Richard M. Jones**, *Head-Master William Penn Charter School, Philadelphia, Pa.*: I congratulate you, as the first in this country to embody the modern idea of a school edition of Caesar, upon your pluck in determining to retain your place at the head of the Caesar column, and upon the resources and enterprise which will enable you to stay there. I have, therefore, taken great pleasure in placing the book upon our order list for next autumn.

**Mary B. Rockwood**, *Girls' Latin School, Baltimore, Md.*: I could hardly have believed so much improvement possible in so excellent a work.

**James B. Smiley**, *West High School, Cleveland, O.*: In its revised form, Kelsey's Caesar seems to me to be the best edition which we have. The typography is excellent and the marking of long vowels is an added improvement.

**Geo. W. Rightmire**, *North High School, Columbus, O.*: In style and matter it is ahead of any text-book I have seen. Next year I shall endeavor to have every Caesar pupil in my classes supplied with it.

---

## *Selected Orations and Letters of Cicero.*

---

With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary by Professor FRANCIS W. KELSEY. 12mo, half leather, 518 pages. Illustrated. Price, \$1.25.

THE Orations given in this edition are the four against Catiline, those for the Manilian Law, Archias, Marcellus, and the fourth oration against Antony. These are edited with a view to showing their value as examples of oratory, rather than as offering mere material for grammatical drill. The student's attention is directed to the occasion and circumstances of their delivery, as well as to the motive and method of presenting the matter contained in them. Modes of legal procedure, the Constitution and form of government in Cicero's time, and the whole environment of the orator, are brought into clear view, and made a reality to the student.

The letters are selected with reference to the light they shed on Cicero as a man rather than as a politician. They afford pleasant glimpses of his private life, and help to make real the pupil's conception of the times in which he lived. As material for short exercises for sight translation or rapid reading they will be found of special value.

A Table of Idioms and Phrases presents in form convenient for use, constructions that deserve special attention.

**Professor F. M. Austin, Wilbraham Academy, Mass.:** I like the Cicero more the longer I use it. It is certainly all one could ask in the way of a text-book in Cicero and is superior to any text of that author that I have ever used.

**T. J. Bassett, DePauw University, Indiana:** After a careful examination of Kelsey's Cicero, I wish to say that I regard it as the very best edition which I have yet seen.

**S. F. Cutler, Principal of High School, Great Barrington, Mass.:** I can hardly speak too highly of Kelsey's Cicero. It is superior to any other edition that I have seen.

**Gertrude Ashmore, Principal of High School, Hannibal, Mo.:** We are greatly pleased with Kelsey's Cicero which we introduced into our school this year.

**Professor J. E. Goodrich, University of Vermont:** I do not see that anything has been omitted which such a text-book should supply. I shall be pleased to recommend it.



## Selections from Viri Romæ.

With Notes, Exercises, Maps, and a Vocabulary by Professor JOHN C. ROLFE, University of Michigan. 16mo, cloth, 301 pages. Price, 75 cents.

URBIS ROMÆ VIRI ILLUSTRÉS is a compilation from Cicero, Livy, Valerius Maximus, and other Roman writers. It is admirably adapted to help the pupil over the difficult transition from the introductory Latin book to Cæsar or Nepos.

The advantage in its use lies in the fact that it is full of variety and interest, and that it gives the pupil a sketch of Roman history from Romulus to Augustus in an attractive form, together with many allusions to the customs of Roman life.

In the present edition the quantities of all the long vowels, including "hidden quantities," are marked; exercises for translation of English into Latin, based on the text, are given.

Thirty-nine pages of the book have been prepared for reading at sight. The other selections are annotated with grammatical and explanatory notes.

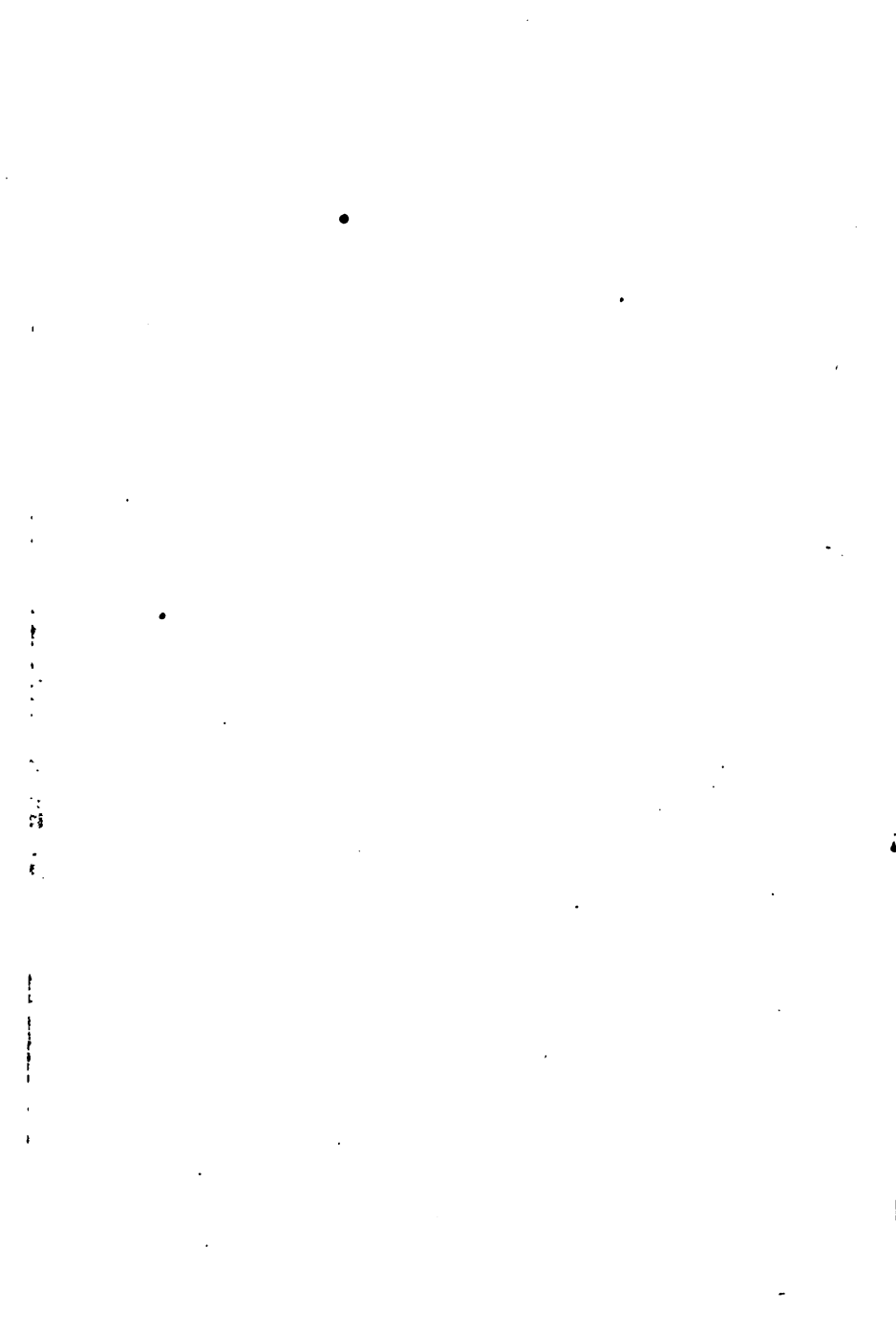
**Isaac B. Burgess**, *The Morgan Park Academy, University of Chicago* :

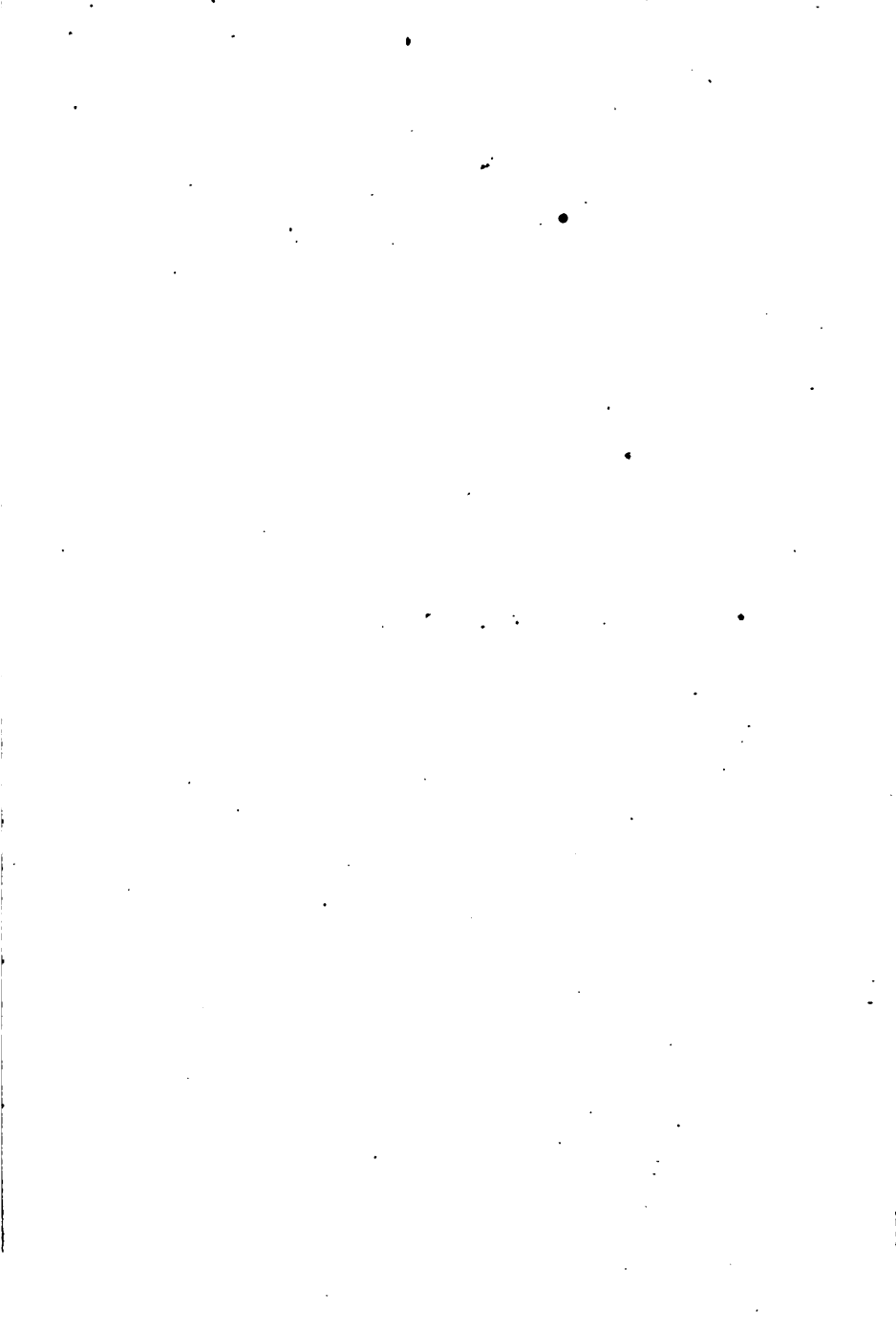
After considerable class-room use, I take pleasure in commending the edition of Viri Romæ by Professor John C. Rolfe. The notes and vocabulary show care and accuracy. The marking of all long vowels is very valuable in elementary work. The hints for translation into Latin admirably cover a good deal of ground in a little space, and the exercises for translation from English into Latin save a teacher much work.

**L. C. Hull**, *Lawrenceville School, New Jersey* : Rolfe's edition of Viri Romæ is an excellent book; attractive, scholarly, and able to stand the test of class-room use. I have been compelled to let the management of the class that is using the book pass into the hands of another teacher; so that I have missed most of the pleasure that has come from its adoption here. But I can vouch for its excellence.

**George H. Browne**, *Cambridge, Mass.* : Every time I have looked over Rolfe's Viri Romæ I have admired the aim and method of its editor more and more, and cannot commend too highly the success he seems to me to have attained. After using, I expect to make the same report.

**Professor J. H. Dillard**, *Tulane University, New Orleans, La.* : It gives in excellent form, with judicious notes and timely suggestions, correct material for easy work in reading Latin. I should like to commend also the careful marking of the long vowels.





998D  
net,

